

1st Review  
2013-2017



## Contents

<b>Foreword by the Mayor, Cllr. E. Nel .....</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>Foreword by the Municipal Manager, Mr. J. Jacobs.....</b>	<b>ii</b>
<b>Hessequa 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation Integrated Development Plan .....</b>	<b>1</b>
2012 – 2017 and Beyond .....	1
Legislative Framework .....	2
A New Policy Framework .....	12
Hessequa Vision & Developmental Focus Areas.....	14
Hessequa Vision Statement for 2012-2017 and Beyond .....	18
Hessequa Key Performance Areas .....	19
Alignment of Priorities - National, Provincial and Local .....	20
Inter-Governmental Relations Overview .....	26
Pre-Determined Objectives – Background.....	27
Introduction .....	27
Process Explanation .....	27
Pre-Determined Objectives – The Building Blocks for Performance Management .....	27
IDP Implementation Plan (iMAP) .....	28
Institutional Overview.....	34
Analysis of Hessequa – Our People.....	35
Analysis of Hessequa – Our Economy.....	65
Analysis of Hessequa –Our Environment.....	70
<b>Developmental Focus Areas .....</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>Focus Area 1: An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce And Transparent Financial Practices .....</b>	<b>82</b>
Performance Management.....	82
Financial Management.....	87
Operation Clean Audit – MGRO .....	117
Supply Chain Management .....	134
<b>Focus Area 2: Effective Communication and Participation.....</b>	<b>138</b>
Public Participation .....	138
Communications Strategy.....	150
<b>Focus Area 3: Maintenance and Development of all Services.....</b>	<b>164</b>
Streets, Storm water, Parks & Resorts .....	164
Water Services Delivery, Resources & Infrastructure Planning.....	176

Waste Management .....	193
Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) Project Planning .....	218
<b>Focus Area 4: Development of Safe and Integrated Human Settlements .....</b>	<b>227</b>
Spatial Development Framework .....	227
Development of Sustainable Human Settlements.....	228
Disaster Management.....	249
Firebreak Program 2012 - 2017 .....	261
<b>Focus Area 5: Human Development Initiatives to Enhance the Social Well-Being of All Our People .....</b>	<b>262</b>
Introduction .....	262
Hessequa Thusong Service Centre Strategic Plan for 2012/13.....	263
Plan of Action to address community needs .....	271
<b>Focus Area 6: Limiting the Impact of Our Presence in the Natural Environment and Re-Establishing a Heritage of Preservation.....</b>	<b>274</b>
Environmental Management – Way Forward.....	274
<b>Focus Area 7: To Stimulate Economic Growth for the Benefit of All Local Communities .....</b>	<b>277</b>
Economic Development Planning .....	277
Framework for Economic Development 2013 – 2014 .....	278
<b>Integrated Area Plans.....</b>	<b>283</b>
Integrated Area Plans.....	284
Albertinia.....	284
Gouritsmond .....	295
Heidelberg.....	304
Jongensfontein.....	314
Melkhoutfontein.....	323
Riversdale.....	334
Slangrivier .....	349
Stilbaai.....	358
Witsand .....	370

## Foreword by the Mayor, Cllr. E. Nel

As I tried to gather my thoughts for the writing of this foreword for the Integrated Development Plan, my head was filled with mixed thoughts about the eight months that I have been privileged to be the mayor of Hessequa Municipality. Ever since we took up this great responsibility of stewardship, I have been confronted with the immense sense of so much that needs to be done, but our actions are limited by time and resources.

It is within the balance of “what can we do with what we have”, where the 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation IDP played an immense role to give the organisation direction when the seas of operational activities flooded our diaries. As the IDP facilitated the process for the development of our vision and strategic direction, a calming sense of purpose continued to help make difficult decisions in the preparation for the coming financial years. Our commitment to a dedicated multi-year budget creates the environment where we can plan more strategically and embark on this voyage of service delivery to our communities.



Another factor, that was key in the IDP process, was the development of Pre-Determined Objectives. As the challenge was placed at our door by the Auditor General, the Hessequa IDP responds with a clear direction as targets have been set for our term of office to which we wholeheartedly commit. The Democratic Alliance and its coalition partners commits to bring change to all our communities, but not in the form of empty promises. The road ahead has been planned within the capacity we have and where resources are needed, we commit to do the best we can to realise our vision where everyone in our communities can experience the change we all desire. Everyone want the sense of security that a house brings to a household, services that can be trusted not to break down continually or threaten our health and living in a community of people who are proud of what they have.

We acknowledge the importance of communication and participation of our communities in the processes of local government. We trust that in the coming years the relationship between communities and government will be rebuilt through the newly established ward committees and sectoral representative platforms. Much needs to be done and I am excited to continue on this road towards the goal of being an accountable and efficient, local government.

*Emor Nel*



## Foreword by the Municipal Manager, Mr. J. Jacobs

Hessequa has the history of a municipality that aims to be an excellent local government. As communities suffer the negative effects of very real economic strain, the municipality finds itself in a place where the sustainability of our budgets is becoming a very real challenge. Within this context, the 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation Integrated Development Plan played an immensely important role to keep decision making objective. Simply stated, it is of no use setting goals, if we know it is impossible to reach.



The IDP facilitated the development of a set of strategic objectives and a roadmap at the hand of pre-determined objectives to ensure that focused impacts can be made in the coming 5 years. At the hand of area based planning methodologies the IDP has restructured planning in such a way that the reader will be able to see exactly what will be happening in his/her community within the coming years. This was strengthened by the commitment of council to approve a three year budget. This allows for the improvement of all processes that influence service delivery to the public and can the way forward be communicated better to all communities.

The development of a new ward committee structure ensures the beginning of a new relationship with all communities as we are committed to the inclusion of residents in municipal processes. Several representative platforms are in the process of being constituted and this serves as proof of our commitment of including as many role-players in all processes as possible.

However, it is important to note that Hessequa is experiencing serious pressure on its sources of income together with rising cost factors. Objective planning needs to be continued throughout the cycle of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation IDP, together with proper monitoring of progress on goals. The management of organisational performance in delivery on the goals set out in the IDP is of utmost importance to ensure the continued delivery of services to our communities in a manner that enhances their quality of life.

The IDP started to facilitate a renewed process of joint planning with all spheres of government to ensure that people are placed first when it comes to client services. Pro-active action plans are formalised to limit the impact of disasters on our residents and all of these strategic issues find their origin in the IDP.

One fact continues to surface in the content of the IDP and it tells us that our future is in the hands of all. Communities need to pick up their responsibility to join government forces and make the Hessequa dream a reality. The diverse nature of the Hessequa region is an asset and it needs to be considered something to be proud of. As Hessequa Municipality reaches for new heights, we look forward to a strengthened commitment of accountability to communities. I trust that the 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation IDP will be the foundation of a responsible, accountable and efficient local government, called Hessequa!

Johan Jacobs




# 2012-2017 & Beyond



## Legislative Framework

### Introduction

The first piece of legislation that provided guidance for the transformation is the highest level of legislation namely the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (1996). The Constitution mandates local government to do the following:

	<p><b>DEFINITION OF MUNICIPAL OBJECTIVES</b></p> <p>In the Constitution (Act 108 of 1996) the objectives of a municipality or local government structure are described as follows:</p> <p>152. (1) The objects of local government are -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>(a) To provide democratic and accountable government for local communities;</li><li>(b) To ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner;</li><li>(c) To promote social and economic development;</li><li>(d) To promote a safe and healthy environment; and</li><li>(e) To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government.</li></ul> <p>(2) A municipality must strive, within its financial and administrative capacity, to achieve the objects set out in subsection (1).</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Municipalities are no longer merely responsible for infrastructure, administration and regulations. They now have a **developmental role** and are described as an organ of state whose task it is to improve the quality of communities living within their boundaries. In other words, municipalities are much more responsible for **people**. As with all spheres of government, local government must also promote the Bill of Rights, which reflects the nation's values about human dignity, equality and freedom and uphold the principles enshrined in the Constitution.

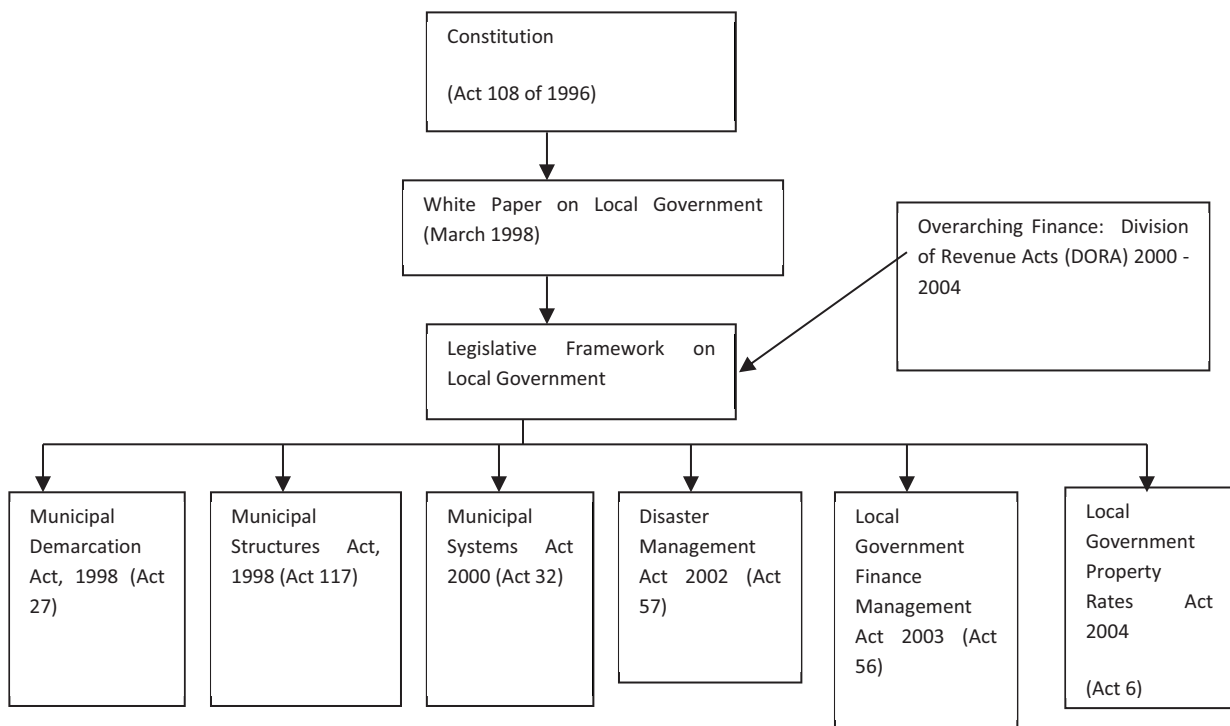
It is important to note that this responsibility was given to local government with the understanding that all three spheres of government will jointly strive to improve the wellbeing of communities. (Remember that the three spheres of government are local, provincial and national.)

The idea that the three levels of government should work together is also referred to as **cooperative governance**. What do you think of this cooperative idea? Do you think it's empowering? Does it encourage representation and democracy? How does the word 'cooperation' make you feel: good, worried, anxious or excited?

Central to this framework is the **White Paper on Local government (WPLG – March 1998)**. The White paper gave a clearer description of the new constitutional mandate of local government that replaces the traditional roles of municipalities with the requirements of developmental local

government. This places municipalities at the cold face of national efforts to rectify political, social and economic injustices of the past and wage the war against poverty.

In the following figure you will find an overview of all the pieces of legislation that form part of the legislation framework that determines the nature, functioning and practices of municipalities.



The above diagram is supported by Table 1 below and it provides an overview of the legislative outputs (pieces of legislation that was developed).

The intention of all the legislative outputs is to shape and influence the nature of local government.

TABLE 1: LEGISLATIVE OUTPUTS	
Legislation	Key issues relevant to the IDP process
Municipal Systems Act (MSA 32 of 2000)	<p>Sets out the principles, mechanisms and processes required for municipalities to shift into a new position within the landscape of development. Included in these mechanisms is the Integrated Development Planning process and Performance management systems.</p> <p>It also describes the legal nature of municipalities and the implications for the way that municipalities interact with communities, stakeholders and other spheres of government. Chapter 4 &amp; 5 of the Act is discussed in much greater detail in Learning unit 3: Integrated Development Planning.</p>



Municipal Demarcation Act 27 of 1998	<p>The Municipal Demarcation Act of 1998 gives effect to Section 155 (3) (b) of the Constitution that determines three categories of municipalities (see the section explaining the issues guided by the Municipal Structures Act below).</p> <p>The demarcation process dramatically reduced the number of municipalities in the country from 843 to 283 (made up of 6 metro municipalities, 46 district municipalities and 231 local municipalities – all of which we’ll discuss in more detail further on.)</p>
<p>The Municipal Structures Act (117 of 1998), together with</p> <p>The Municipal Structures Amendment Act (33 of 2000)</p>	<p>These two Acts guides the establishment of municipalities as provided for in the Constitution.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>Category A municipality</u>: A municipality that has exclusive municipal executive and legislative authority in its area. (This is called a metro municipality.)</li> <li>• <u>Category C municipality</u>: A municipality that has municipal executive and legislative authority in an area that includes more than one municipality. (This is called a district municipality.)</li> <li>• <u>Category B municipality</u>: A municipality that shares municipal executive and legislative authority in its area with a Category (C) municipality within whose area it falls. (This is called a local municipality.)</li> </ul> <p>These Acts offers criteria and procedures for the various categories and outlines the powers and functions of municipalities as provided for in the Constitution. The allocated powers and functions influence the content of the IDP and identify key issues that would require alignment of strategies and actions.</p>
Municipal Finance Management Act, No 56 of 2003	<p>The Act clarifies the requirements of transparent and accountable practices in government and specifically in local government. The Act reiterates the requirements for public participation and the commitment to effective utilisation of resources. The Act determines the manner in which municipalities can dispose of capital assets. It is particularly the financial cycle (schedule requirements) that influences the development and review cycle of the IDP to ensure a process of mutual influence. .</p>
Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002	<p>The Act provides for an integrated, co-ordinated disaster management policy in line with the MSA (2000) requirement for IDPs to include a disaster management plan to identify and deal with risks.</p>
Intergovernmental Relations Framework	<p>The Act is a response to the limited successes in the alignment efforts among the three spheres of government. The act creates a framework to support</p>


Act 13 of 2005(IGR)	<p>intergovernmental cooperation and coordination as required by the “cooperative governance” defined by the Constitution.</p> <p>The implementation framework of the IDP depends on the ability to influence the investment and spending of other spheres of government, the Act also referred to IGR (2005) represents an important support mechanism to the IDP process. It provides for the obligation of all spheres to participate in the planning processes of the municipality and in turn allow their own planning processes to be influenced by municipal IDPs. Topic 3: Cooperative Governance offers a detailed description of the Act.</p>
Local Government Property Rates Act 6 of 2004	<p>The purpose of this Act is to regulate the power of a municipality to impose rates on property; to exclude certain properties from rating in the national interest; to make provision for municipalities to implement a transparent and fair systems of exemptions, reductions and rebates through their rating policies; to make provision for fair and equitable valuations methods of properties; to make provision for an objections and appeals process; to amend the Local Government Municipal Systems Act, 2000, so as to make further provision for serving of documents by municipalities; to amend or repeal certain legislation; and to provide for matters connected therewith.</p>

We have given you a brief overview of the Legislative Framework of the IDP and in the remaining Topics 2 to 5 we will unpack those elements most relevant to the Integrated Development Planning process.

### ***Defining the Institution: Municipality***

The discipline of organization development suggests that: “form follows function”. Once the “function” of an organization is established (what the organization needs to do) the “form” of the organization can be identified.

The form of the organization is concerned with **how** the organization should be **structured** to perform those functions. Let us look at a definition as described in Chapter 2 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act (32 of 2000):

	<p><b>DEFINITION OF A MUNICIPALITY</b></p> <p>A municipality is defined in the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is an organ of state within the local sphere of government;</li> <li>• It exercises legislative and executive authority within boundaries as determined by the Demarcation Board (Demarcation Act 1998);</li> <li>• It consist of (1) the political structures (2) administration and (3) communities of the municipality;</li> <li>• It functions within its area according to statutory and other relationships; and</li> </ul>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is a separate legal personality and this means that its community is not liable for the actions of the municipality.</li> </ul>
--	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

This definition of a municipality offers a description of a very unique organization. It is an institution with the following characteristics:

- It is located within a bigger system (autonomous yet interdependent)
- It faces unique managerial challenges by accommodating both political and administrative leadership
- The client or consumer (communities) is defined as part of the institution
- The relationship with other stakeholders is a key indicator in the success of the municipality.

The foundation of the responsibility of Municipalities is to give effect to the provisions of the Constitution to:

- Give priority to the basic needs of the local community
- Promote the development of the local community
- Ensure that all members of the local community have access to at least minimum level of basic municipal services.

(MSA 2000: Chapter 8)

### ***Powers and Functions***

The discussion regarding powers and functions is relevant in a number of ways namely:

- District and Local municipalities have to consider the work allocated to them within the legislative framework. In terms of measuring the performance of the municipality, management would have to reflect on the extent to which their organization is performing these tasks.
- The powers and functions refer to concurrent functions implying that different government institutions (different spheres) share responsibilities with regard to these tasks. A particular dilemma regarding power and functions is the shared roles between district and local municipalities.
- Ultimately the system of powers and functions reiterates the requirement for cooperative governance.

### **Allocation of Powers and Functions**

District and local municipalities obtain their powers and functions in a number of ways including:

- Allocation by the legislative framework (The Constitution and the Municipal Structures Act 33 of 2000)
- Authorization of national functions by the National Minister of Provincial and Local Government
- Adjustments of allocated functions by the Provincial Member of Executive Council (MEC) for Local Government
- Delegation or assignments by other spheres of government.

The information contained in the section relies mainly on practical experiences and information in a booklet published by the Department of Provincial and Local Government: *Questions & Answers Booklet – Implications of the National Government division of powers and functions for Water, sanitation, municipal health and electricity services between district and local municipalities (2003)*.

Learners should ensure that they have access to a copy of the document to supplement these extracts. The IGR practitioners Guide (2006) will in future be the key guiding tool regarding this issue.

### Legislative allocation of powers and functions

The Constitution [Chapter 7, Section 152 (1) and (2) as well as Section 153 (a) and (b)] entrench the obligations of local government by outlining the functions and services to be performed by local government. These powers and functions are shared among the various spheres of government and when consulting the constitution schedule 4 and 5 lists the given powers and functions in relation the shared responsibilities with national and provincial.

- Schedule 4, Part A describes local government functions over which the national government and provincial government levels *both* have legislative competence
- Schedule 5, Part A lists local government functions over which provincial government has *exclusive* legislative competence.

The division of powers and functions refers to how the functions will be divided between district and local municipalities. The key legislation to consult on this matter is the Municipal Structures Amendment Act 2000 (Act 33 of 2000). The allocation of a power and function implies both the authority function and the provider function.

The authority function includes:

- Making bylaws and regulating compliance;
- Developing and implementing policies;
- Deciding on tariffs and the allocation of equitable share;
- Planning the service levels; priorities and how service will be delivered;
- Identify and prioritise infrastructure requirements (capital projects); and
- Deciding on water services provider arrangements (means of service delivery).

For example if a municipality has the powers and functions for water and sanitation, it becomes the water service authority (WSA) and it has the right to be the water service provider (WSP). The water service authority might contract a water service provider to provide the given service. The water service provider does not become the authority but merely the provider.

The provider function includes:

- Daily operations and repairs
- Preventative and major maintenance
- Customer relations and communication
- Revenue collection and related financial management
- Health and hygiene awareness



- Providing information on the provision of the relevant service

### Process of authorisation

The process of authorization (the power of the **Minister of Provincial and Local Government** to allocate powers and functions to a local municipality) creates the possibility that local municipalities can become responsible for powers and functions belonging to district municipalities.

Authorization refers only to national functions namely:

- Potable water supply
- Domestic waste water disposal systems
- Municipal health services
- Bulk supply of electricity

The process of authorization is influenced by the capacity assessment reports compiled by the Demarcation Board.

The provincial MEC can also allocate other functions to local municipalities but this refers to powers and functions listed in part B of schedule 4 and 5 and it does not refer to the national functions referred to above. This process is referred to as *adjustment* and not *authorization*. Municipalities could also receive responsibilities via the process of *delegation or assignment*:

- *Delegation* implies that the municipality will exercise the power and function on behalf of national and province subject to the conditions placed on the delegation.
- When power is *assigned*, a municipality exercises the power and functions as if it is an original power or function.

The following table 2 provides an overview of the functions allocated to local government by different legislative documents. It also indicates the concurrency of the power with national and provincial spheres.

TABLE 2: FUNCTIONS AND POWERS OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT		
Powers and functions allocated to District municipalities	National and Provincial government have legislative competence	Provincial government has exclusive legislative competence
STRUCTURES ACT	CONSTITUTION: SCHEDULE 4	CONSTITUTION: SCHEDULE 5
Solid waste disposal sites in so far it relates to:  Waste disposal strategy  Regulation of waste disposal  Establishment, operation and	Air pollution  Building regulations  Child care facilities  Electricity and gas	Beaches and amusement facilities  Billboards and the display of advertisements in public places  Cemeteries, funeral parlours &

control of waste disposal	reticulation	crematoria
	Fire fighting services	Cleansing
Municipal roads which forms an integral part of a road transport system	Local tourism	Control of public nuisances
	Municipal airports	Control of undertakings that sell liquor to public
Regulation of passenger transport services	Municipal planning	Facilities for the accommodation, care and burial of animals
	Municipal health services	Fencing and fences
Municipal airports that serves the whole district	Municipal public transport	Licensing of dogs
	Municipal public works	Licensing and control of undertakings that sell food to the public
Fire fighting services	Pontoons, ferries, jetties, piers & harbours	Local amenities
	Storm water management systems (build up areas)	Local sport facilities
Establish, conduct and control fresh produce markets and abattoirs serving large parts of the district	Trading regulations	Markets
	Water and sanitation services (potable drinkable)	Municipal abattoirs
Establish, conduct and control of cemeteries and crematoria serving large part of the district	Water supply systems	Municipal parks and recreation
	Domestic waste water	Municipal roads
Promotion of local tourism	Sewage disposal	Noise pollutions
		Pounds
Municipal public works relating to district responsibility		Public places
		Refuse removal
		Refuse dumps
		Solid waste disposal
		Street trading
		Street lighting
		Traffic and Parking

The description of roles between district and local municipalities are not clearly defined in the legislation. The district municipality is intended to act as *co-ordinator* and a mechanism through which provincial and national government link to local government.

The district municipality is also responsible for assisting local municipalities with limited capacity, thus the role varies according to the capacity of the local municipality. The relationship with regard to issues of mutual interest is left to the intergovernmental relations framework and the alignment processes in the IDP.

Unfortunately, if these processes are not functional the IDP could result in fragmented planning, duplication or the exclusion of key issues as it is assumed to belong elsewhere. For example:

- The environmental dimension of the local IDPs is neglected as it is seen as a District Municipal role
- The delayed formulation distribution of District frameworks for example spatial development framework, environmental management plan, disaster management and waste management systems
- Strategies related to tourism in Local Municipal IDPs duplicate and /or contradict the strategies reflected in the District IDP.

In the following section we will search for practical options to avoid the situations described above.

#### Relevance of powers and functions for the IDP

We have now discussed the powers and functions of municipalities. Next we need to ask the question: What is the relevance of these powers and functions of the IDP process of the municipality?

- i. In order to **respond to community needs**, the planning outcomes of the **IDP need to be aligned with the legal responsibilities of the municipalities** as defined by the powers and functions. In the IDP Guide Pack II, p 6 we read:

*The IDP is the “Adoption of a framework for integrated development planning by each district municipality which binds both the district municipality and the local municipalities in the area and which is supposed to ensure proper consultation, co-ordination and alignment of the planning process of the district municipality and the various local municipalities.”*

The allocation of resources should be based on the strategic plan namely the IDP. If the content of the IDP is not in line with the powers and functions, such resource allocations would be unacceptable in terms of the Municipal Finance Management Act, No 56 of 2003.

Therefore prioritization, identification of projects and the linkage of the IDPs financial requirements with the municipal budget process require synergy between the IDP process and the powers and functions.

Questions during the prioritization process should include the extent to which the community needs relate to the given powers and functions.

- i. The above result in the **need for a “referral system”** that enables municipalities to channel development needs to the appropriate authorities. For example: issues such as tarring of roads.
- ii. The concurrent nature of the powers and functions, with reference to the legislative functions of national and provincial government, requires municipalities to **plan within the given frameworks**. This practically means that during the discussion of each issue in the planning process the question should emerge: “What does the national and/or provincial legislative or planning requirements say about this issue?” Also see number **v(c)** below in this regard.

Secondly, the issue of the **funding stream** emerge. Depending on the nature of the development issue the municipality might have powers and functions but the financial resources reside with a different sphere or department. This strengthens the need for cooperative governance both in determining the strategic direction and in the compilation of budgets and funding strategies.

- iii. Municipalities who functions within this framework **improve the quality of their public participation processes**.
- iv. This **division of powers and functions influences the alignment efforts** between Local and District municipalities. Considering the lack of clarity in terms of roles one can expect that the alignment process do not add the intended value. The IDP process institutionalizes a mechanism where clarity should be created through a dialogue namely the **District Framework**.

The intention of the framework is to create a dialogue among municipalities which includes:

- (a) The framework should **unpack the areas of interdependencies** between the district and local municipalities as created by the powers and functions. Ultimately the alignment needs to clarify what we need from each other in order to deliver the intended services.
- (b) The framework considers the benefit of **“collective” bargaining**. The District Municipality might have better negotiating power with a particular provincial department or corporate service provider - the pressure from a single local municipality versus the pressure of 5–6 combined municipalities.
- (c) The framework considers the principle of **“economy of scale”** with regard to incorporating the binding legislative and planning requirements of provincial and national spheres in the integrated development planning process. The total of the individual effort of each local municipality in summarizing the relevant legal and sector requirements that should influence the planning process will far outweigh the single effort by the District. As the same documentation will be relevant to all it seems logical to allocate this work to one party.



## A New Policy Framework

### Introduction

In South Africa we boast in a democratic existence that celebrates the “voice” of the voting booth as compared to previous regimes where the voice of the minority ruled. As the democratic process makes its mark every 5 years in a local government context, the outcomes might bring change in a policy framework or strengthen the existing. During the 2011 elections, Hessequa Municipality experienced a trying time of stability as the “voice” of the voting booth was indecisive. This then resulted in coalitions being formed and in the end, a new council.

A policy framework for a governing body is of utmost importance, as it communicates the approach that the governing body will employ during the development phase of objectives. It creates the scope or the spectrum which guides an institution to identify areas of importance to the governing body. The following diagram shows it graphically.

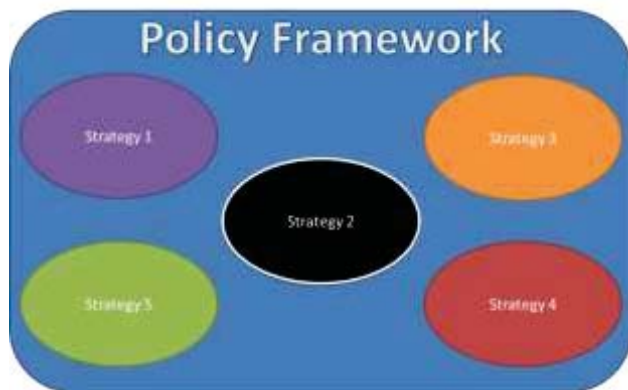


Figure 1 - The Essence of a Policy Framework

The governing coalition in office since August 2011, expressed the need to review and maybe, the redesign of the policy framework as it was set in place by previous governing parties. There are key sets of circumstances that created the need for governing policy review.

- The condition of the world economy created an environment where operating costs have escalated to an extent where decisions need to be made in terms of funding allocations
- Furthermore the need was identified to talk about the need for reconsideration of what the roles of a municipality needs to be when costs of services are considered
- The new governing body were in the opposition seats for a long time and need to make changes according to what they find to be better in service of the communities they serve.
- Another motivation for policy change is due to the fact that the municipality did relatively well for the last few years in terms of service delivery when compared to municipalities across the country. However, in terms of management of the municipality, it is of great concern to the new governing coalition; there is still room for improvement. This improvement aims at the changing of Hessequa into an example of a well-managed local government.

An interesting, but challenging, process initiated to look at the management of the organisation of Hessequa and strategically develop policies that would safeguard the sustainability of Hessequa and its people in difficult times. Several governing policies were identified as tools for bringing change to the “status quo” of service delivery and in mitigation of current threats to the existence of Hessequa Municipality. The following sets of guiding policies are summaries of in depth discussions between not merely the governing coalition, but the senior management at the time was included in these discussions to ascertain the feasibility of it.

### ***Sustainability Policy***

- A balanced approach to development of the economy, the social fabric of our communities and the responsible utilisation of natural resources.
- Decision making considers the interests of ALL people as Hessequa is a region with different communities and inevitably, different needs.
- Responsible financial planning to enhance affordability to the residents
- Delivery of services in a realistic manner to informed communities
- A more holistic view of the housing need in Hessequa
- Spatial development that considers the socio-economic realities of communities
- Sensitive reconsideration of current use of municipal assets.

### ***Vulnerable Groups***

The following people groups are identified and recognised as vulnerable people groups (*alphabetically ordered*):

- Farm Workers
- People affected by HIV/Aids
- People with disabilities
- Senior Citizens
- Women
- Youth

### ***Communication***

- Realistic and open communication with the public concerning issues that impact them as residents in an understandable way.
- Response to issues raised by the public, to give a sense that someone is listening to their concerns.
- Development and inclusion of representative platforms for focused discussions concerning governing issues.

### ***Financial Policy***

- No new appointments to be made, unless it is of utmost necessity due to affordability
- All financial contributions from property sales to be deposited into the Capital Replacement Fund.
- Strengthened approach to maintenance of existing infrastructure through a larger contribution to maintenance in operational budgets
- Broadening the Indigent Help safety net as far as possible

## Hessequa Vision & Developmental Focus Areas

### **Introduction**

The Hessequa Municipality embarked on the 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation IDP Process with a clear set of principles in mind as the Strategic Framework was being developed. One very important principle that was identified as a lesson learnt from the previous two generations of IDP's, was the need to move away from "wish lists". In the past all inputs was received and ended up in a document that was non-fundable with the given financial capacity of Hessequa. Even though the IDP's did include the plans for the different services, it was still amounting to an immense "need" in terms of funding to resolve of the issues raised by planning within the different services of the municipality. The clear need for "feasible" and "sustainable" plans to be located in the IDP document became very clear. The principle of "Outcomes Based Planning" was chosen to enhance the quality of the IDP to a standard where a person can look at the document and clearly see what is going to be done in his/her community and in which financial year.

Two other principles were also identified and are evident from the last sentence of the previous paragraph. The second being the principle of the planning being able to reflect a specific area/community's reality in terms of needs. The third principle is the multi-year commitment about what is going to be done in a given area/community. This would give the reader a clearer view of what the municipality is planning for implementation in his/her community. Immediately the credibility of the IDP in the eyes of the community is restored and the community can begin to feel a sense of accountability being given from the municipality through clear commitments in service delivery.

Even though these principles find their value in the IDP, the change it demands is not found in the IDP process alone, but in all three of the main municipal processes. As a result of these principles, the management of the complete institution is challenged and shaken into a place where the Planning, Budgeting, Monitoring and Evaluative processes are integrated into a synchronised flow of information which is generated from planning, guiding implementation and generated by implementation for evaluative purposes.

### **Outcomes Based Planning**

As it was stated in the previous section, the need to be clearer on specific outcomes about what the resident can expect to be done during the elected Council's term of office, an approach of Outcomes Based Planning is needed. This approach takes the Policy Framework and guides the Council in the development of creating Strategic Objectives. Each Strategic Objective is then considered to identify specific Impacts that Council would like to achieve during their term of office, in other words, over a term of 5 years. To achieve



one of these Impacts, certain Outcomes must be achieved over the 5 year term. Every Outcome is then broken down into specific annual outputs that need to be delivered individually over the five financial years. It continues to identify the Activities and Inputs that are needed to achieve every Output. The methodology is very simple in approach and can be explained at the hand of the above triangular figure which explains the steps at the hand of guiding questions.

### ***Process Integration***

It is within this background, as briefly highlighted in the previous section that the 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation IDP process found its point of departure.

The following diagram indicates the current process of planning in many local municipalities.

This layout of the budgetary cycle does look logical and systematic and it even includes the public's inputs as is required by legislation. However, there are several indirect issues that do not get addressed in this model. Indirect symptoms of this methodology that causes a municipality to step into an array of problematic scenarios.



Shortages in this model can be summarized as follows:

- This process clearly identifies the latent assumption that when something is in the IDP, it can be budgeted for. This creates the problematic scenario where every item needs to be “taken up into the IDP” for purpose of allowing it to be budgeted for. The issue is not to get items into the IDP, but more of getting issues forthcoming from planning into the budget.
- Due to the annual nature of the cycle it leaves the items from the previous year that didn't make the priorities of the previous year, to compete again against new priorities. This in effect causes some items to be shifted to outer years every year. It is a risk of getting used to moving certain items out of the annual investment and cause some items to become more and more expensive as they do need to get done one or another time, but the longer the wait, the larger the cost.
- Another risk that the municipality expose themselves to in this manner of going about their business concerning the budget process, is the competition of ad-hoc items that can cause items, which might come from proper sectoral or master planning documentation, to be left out as it might not seem as an immediate issue that needs attention. The fact is actually that municipalities invest a large amount of funds on master planning documentation and when



the identified issues is raised, it can get lost in the emotion of issues that might not be as important in terms of sustainable service delivery.

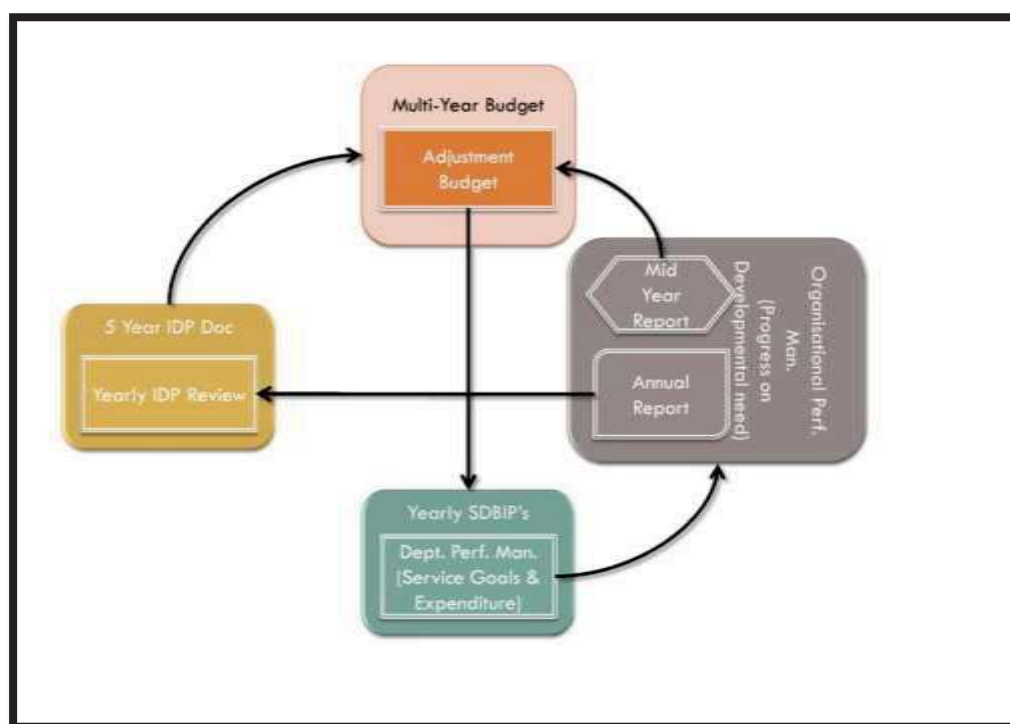
- Due to the annual nature of the cycle it brings the municipality in a short term planning culture. Pro-active investment is sacrificed for quick solutions.
- Even in the midst of municipalities strengthening their capacity in terms implementation, very little of operational information is used to plan ahead. Thus a proper evaluative process is difficult as impact on developmental cannot be measured with no multi-year planning that is in place.
- The final issue that needs to be considered is that in this methodology, no resident or investor can get a clear perspective about what are the municipality going to do in the medium term. Except for the interest groups, in general the public would not experience a council that is accountable to what they say they are going to do. In terms of Good Governance as a strategic objective, this process fails the public as inputs given only creates expectations in the hearts of the residents and when the following year little was implemented, the question is asked by the public why they are giving inputs at all as it is not being implemented. Obviously every input can't be satisfied, but at least in a different model people can see what the council commits themselves to over a period of time.

The following diagram displays a medium term planning cycle, integrating the different processes as legislation intended it to be.

First of all the process begins with a 3-5 year plan about what every line function is going to do strategically

concerning the identified issues pertaining to their field of responsibility. This allows a multi-year budget to be conceptualized.

When this is done the annual targets are set and transferred into the SDBIP process that serves the platform for Departmental Performance Management that compares predetermined



objectives to implementation reports. This serves as a source of performance information that guides the municipal performance evaluation, which in turn compares the outcomes of implementation to the developmental need that is experienced by the average resident walking the streets of the municipal area.

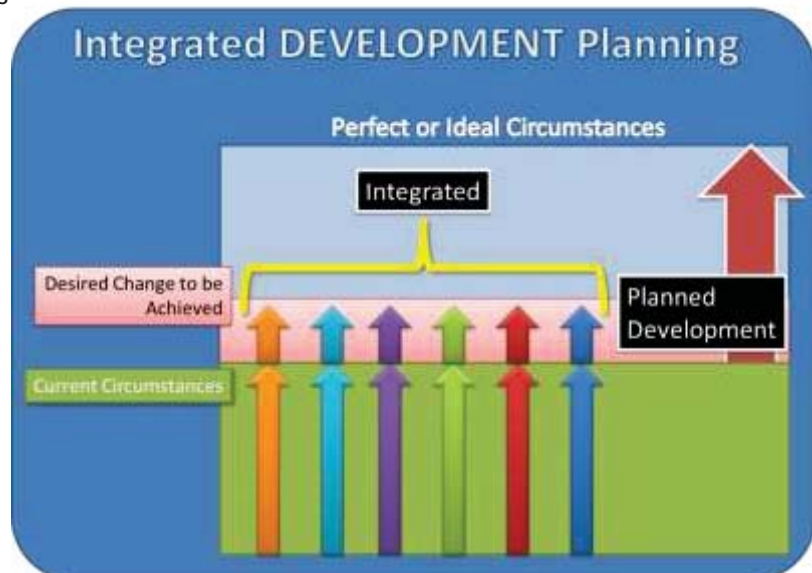
The performance reports generated by the performance management system bi-annually informs the adjustment budget after the second quarter of the financial year and at the end of the financial year it serves as departure point for the annual review of the IDP. This would then allow the review to actually fulfil its role of highlighting the differences between predetermined objectives and implementation.

However this methodology sounds ideal, it has very sensitive demands.

- First of all this model can only work where all the municipal line functions have a clear understanding about their challenges and have developed reachable targets for impacting their challenges within the municipal financial capabilities.
- A high risk for this model is that the municipal “culture” of how business is done, disrupts the flow of information from one process to the other
- It also takes for granted that each process is perfectly aligned to the other and know exactly what it can ask of the previous and what is expected by the next in terms of information.

### ***Integrated DEVELOPMENT Planning***

When the integration of process have been dealt with, it is important not to fall into a chaotic maze of managing each and every little activity that the municipality is already doing on a daily basis. This indirectly relates to the similar notion of trying to manage the performance of each and every person in service of the municipality through the formal Performance Management System. It becomes an immense task to



manage all the information and very confusing as different departments have different organisational layouts where one person might receive instructions from two people and of a varying nature. Even though it is possible, it creates a problem in terms of the original goal when we started to “plan”. It is supposed to be planning of a “developmental” nature. The goal is to create a plan for “calculated changes” to the current “Status Quo”.

The figure above explains this logic behind the concept of planning that considers the current realities and creates a base line from where the implementation of change departs from, to reach a calculated destination of service delivery.

## **HESSEQUA VISION STATEMENT FOR 2012-2017 AND BEYOND**

The first step that the new council took after it was inaugurated in September 2011 was to establish a medium to long term vision. The IDP coordinator facilitated a workshop with the governing coalition on the 28<sup>th</sup> of September 2011, with the aim of developing the vision on the foundation of clearly identified Strategic Objectives. In essence the vision statement then becomes an executive summary of that which the governing group would be aiming to achieve during their term of office and to create a sustainable governing environment for development in the future.

The Hessequa Municipality is at a place and time where serious decisions need to be made concerning service delivery within the scope of its tax base and rates payers. Municipal budgets are capped at a 6% growth rate on the one hand, but on the other hand costs are escalating in much larger percentages. Even though land sales boost infrastructure investment, since 2009 no major land sales realised in Hessequa as the global economic uncertainty caused the property market to come to a grinding halt in Hessequa. These are just to name a few realities that needed to be considered before a vision for the future could be conceptualised.

Even though the vision statement does not aim at a specific year in the long term future, it recognises the reality that a long term vision would not be attainable if the medium term responsibility in terms of mitigation for serious short term threats is not addressed. The sustainability of the municipality within the coming three years will be tested as the detail spelt out in the Institutional Overview would highlight. There are some serious issues that need attention over the medium term to secure a shure foothold in the longer term.

The vision then aims at a sustainable condition for Hessequa by stabilising the three pillars on which its existence depends. Our People, our Economy and our Environment. It promises benefit to everyone, responsibility in governance and leadership.

The vision for Hessequa Municipality as set out for 2012-2017 and beyond is:

***A CARING MUNICIPALITY WHERE EVERYONE REAPS THE  
FRUIT OF COST EFFECTIVE AND INNOVATIVE SERVICE  
DELIVERY, STIMULATED ECONOMIC GROWTH AND  
SUSTAINABLE USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES***

## Hessequa Key Performance Areas

As mentioned in the previous section, the vision was developed after serious considerations were given to the current circumstances presented to Hessequa Municipality. Analysis was done in terms of the institutional well-being to come to grips with what the municipality is facing. The financial state of the municipality was scrutinised. The economic realities in different sectors of the economy. The well-being of our people was placed under the “microscope”. A valuable resource in the sustainable development in Hessequa is our rich, bio diverse environment. An asset, but a very fragile one, as changes in climate and extreme weather conditions continues to challenge management of our environment. The Hessequa Council has set the following 7 Focus Areas ahead of themselves with specific impacts to be made:

- ***EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATION AND PARTICIPATION.***
- ***TO LIMIT THE IMPACT OF OUR PRESENCE IN THE NATURAL ENVIRONMENT AND RE-ESTABLISH A HERITAGE OF PRESERVATION.***
- ***MAINTENANCE AND DEVELOPMENT OF ALL INFRASTRUCTURE AND SERVICES.***
- ***DEVELOPMENT OF SAFE AND INTEGRATED HUMAN SETTLEMENTS.***
- ***HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INITIATIVES TO ENHANCE THE SOCIAL WELL-BEING OF ALL OUR RESIDENTS.***
- ***TO STIMULATE ECONOMIC GROWTH FOR THE BENEFIT OF ALL COMMUNITIES.***
- ***AN ACCOUNTABLE LOCAL AUTHORITY WITH A FIT FOR PURPOSE WORKFORCE AND TRANSPARENT FINANCIAL PRACTICES.***

As the heading for this section on focus areas read, these areas need to guide all planning and investments from the municipal budgets. The feasibility of any vision is located in the change that has been brought about by the set objectives after focused investment, based on a plan of change. This plan should inevitably be the Integrated Development Plan. It is an important reminder that a plan’s credibility is located in the implementability of its objectives. “Can we achieve what we want to achieve?” should be asked. If the answer is no to this question, a municipality is most definitely in a process of compliancy only and cannot claim, with any reasonable conviction, that the vision stated will become a reality. The 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation IDP of Hessequa Municipality departed on the principles that a vision that cannot be made a reality is not feasible, credible or responsible towards our communities who are expects an accountable government. Plainly stated, a government which does what it says it is going to do. The following section would look at the alignment of the objectives conceptualised on a local level with that of National and Provincial Government.

## Alignment of Priorities - National, Provincial and Local

The Hessequa IDP process acknowledges the strategic mandate placed on government as a whole and seeks to align its principles, strategies and targets accordingly. The strategic framework which was primarily considered in the development of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation IDP was the methodology found in the national and provincial outcomes based approach to service delivery.

After the national elections took place in 2009, the cabinet initiated a strategic process of review and specific strategic initiatives were identified in the form of the so called “12 Outcomes”. Each of these outcomes broken down into specific targets and goals to be achieved.

### 12 National Outcomes:

1. Improved quality of basic education.
2. A long and healthy life for all South Africans.
3. All people in South Africa are and feel safe.
4. Decent employment through inclusive economic growth.
5. A skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.
6. An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network.
7. Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.
8. Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life.
9. ***A responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system.***
10. Environmental assets and natural resources that is well protected and continually enhanced.
11. Create a better South Africa and contribute to a better and safer Africa and World.
12. An efficient, effective and development oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

The 9<sup>th</sup> Outcome identified, focused specifically on how the national government sees and desires local municipalities to perform in terms of being the service delivery institution closest to the public.

This Outcome is broken down in Outputs that identifies specific areas of delivery. Once more the outputs are focusing on a national level, but it addresses issues on a local level as well. Here are the 7 Outputs listed and a brief description of how the Hessequa IDP responded to these priorities in a tangible manner. It is important to note that these priorities cannot merely be placed in a table and compared with the identified objectives set on a provincial and local level, but proof of how it is being incorporated in specific targets of a local municipality alone can provide evidence to measure alignment.

1. Output 1: Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning and support

- 1.1. The targets within this outputs attempt to create a minimal set of compliancy measures for low capacity municipalities. Hessequa was not identified as a low capacity municipality and are therefore responsible for full compliancy to legislative and regulatory demands.
- 1.2. It includes the completion of the budget with the required reporting formats and even though the Hessequa Municipal finance team is under capacitated for the completion of these budget formats, Hessequa committed to compliancy and works hard to reach this goal.
2. Output 2: **Improve access to basic services.**
  - 2.1. this Output places specific targets on access to basic services within municipalities
  - 2.2. The Hessequa council does support the targets as these targets are already met within our urban areas, but being a rural municipality with a large portion of our residents living on farms, it is very difficult to gauge the compliancy to this output.
  - 2.3. In the area based planning section there is an overview of issues that have been identified in rural areas, but complete plans and interventions lack as no clear baseline has been established yet to quantise the need in the rural areas and propose specific interventions.
3. Output 3: Implementation of the **Community Work Programme**
  - 3.1. The aims of this output are supported by the Hessequa Municipality through the utilisation of the EPWP programme and other labour intensive programs of the Hessequa Municipality.
  - 3.2. Until now no clear guidance was given to local authorities concerning the specific program, but as mentioned above the aims of this program is supported and implemented through other job creation programmes availed to local municipalities
4. Output 4: Actions supportive of the **human settlement** outcomes
  - 4.1. The new Council of Hessequa Municipality identified a renewed commitment to the delivery of Integrated Human Settlements in the municipal area.
  - 4.2. Specific PDO's referring to this output have been identified and specific interventions will be identified and implemented within the capacity of the Hessequa Municipality
5. Output 5: **Deepen democracy** through a **refined ward committee** model
  - 5.1. Unfortunately the first year of the new Council were marked by the struggle to institute a new Ward Committee model which attempts to find representation of sectors within a the relevant ward.
  - 5.2. It still remains a target for the municipality to develop a level of participation of the public in municipal processes which will rebuild the constructive relationships between a local government and its communities
6. Output 6: Administrative and financial capability



- 6.1. This output gives specific targets in terms of the number of municipalities to enhance the credibility of their processes through the measurement of its Audit Report, collection rates, spending of funds, etc.
- 6.2. The Hessequa Council committed itself to move beyond these targets and developed several applicable PDO's. See the section on PDO's on page 26 for more information

**7. Output 7: *Single window of coordination***

- 7.1. This output identifies the need of a single space where all efforts of government needs to be focused. The Hessequa IDP interprets this goal into its own framework as being the facilitator or coordinator of all services rendered by government through effective partnerships and relations with National en Provincial Government Departments
- 7.2. The coordination role that Local Government is to play in its demarcated boundaries have be identified by the Council and specific targets have been set for delivery on this output through the strategic role a municipality can play in unlocking service constraints through collaboration.

Ultimately the Constitution of South Africa forms the basis of all alignment for a local government as the roles and responsibilities are clearly stated. The following table shows how Hessequa Municipality responds through its set of Strategic Objectives to the mandated strategic responsibilities identified on a national and provincial level.

Constitution Sect 152	Outputs for Local Government within "Outcome 9" - From Cabinet Lekgotla	Provincial 11+1 Objectives	Hessequa KPA's 2012-2017
To provide democratic and accountable government for local communities;	Output 6: Administrative and financial capability	A responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system.	An accountable local authority with a fit for purpose workforce and transparent financial practices
	Municipalities with unqualified audits to increase from 53% to 100%.		
	The average monthly collection rate on billings to rise to 90%.	An efficient, effective and development oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.	
	The percentage of municipalities with debtors more than 50% of own revenue to be reduced from 24% to 12%.		
	The percentage of municipalities that are overspending on opex to improve from 8% to 4%.		
	The percentage of municipalities under-spending on capex to be reduced from 63% to 30%.		
	The percentage of municipalities spending less than 5% of opex on repairs and maintenance to be reduced from 92% to 45%.		
To ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner;	Output 2: Improving Access to Basic Services	An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network.	Maintenance and development of all infrastructure and services
	In respect of this output the following targets for improving universal access are set for the period ending 2014:	Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.	
	Water: from 92% to 100%		Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life.
	Sanitation: from 69% to 100%		

	Refuse removal: from 64% to 75%		infrastructure and services
	Electricity: from 81% to 92%	Environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually enhanced.	
To promote social and economic development;	Output 3: Implementation of the Community Work Programme - Develop 'useful work' ranging from 1- 2 days a week or one week a month, targeting the poorest wards. The target is to implement the CWP in at least 2 wards. per local municipality. By 2014 at least 30% of all job opportunities must be associated with functional cooperatives at the local level.	Decent employment through inclusive economic growth.	Human development initiatives to enhance the social wellbeing of our residents
		A skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.	To stimulate economic growth for the benefit of all communities
To promote a safe and healthy environment; and	Output 4: Actions supportive of the human settlement outcomes	Improved quality of basic education.	Development of safe and integrated human settlement
	Overcome the apartheid legacy, actions supportive of the human settlement outcomes need to initiated such as increasing densities in metros and large towns, release of public land for low income and affordable housing on "well located land" with a 30 to 45 minute journey to work and services and using less than 8% of disposable income for transport by 2014.	A long and healthy life for all South Africans.	
	Grading and rezoning of informal settlements by municipalities is crucial.	All people in South Africa are and feel safe.	To limit the impact of our presence in the natural environment and re-

		Create a better South Africa and contribute to a better and safer Africa and World.	establish a heritage of preservation
To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government.	Output 5: Deepen democracy through a refined Ward Committee model	A responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system.	Effective communication and participation
	Strengthening our people-centred approach to governance and development is a core part of the building the developmental state in this country. Three important, but related, tasks must be undertaken:		
	Firstly, the legislative framework for Ward Committees and community participation must be reviewed and strengthened to broaden participation of various sectors and to propose revised / new responsibilities and institutional arrangements for Ward Committees.		
	Secondly, a new approach must be found to better resource and fund the work and activities of Ward Committees. The funding of local democracy and community participation cannot be a discretionary matter.		
	Lastly, various support measures must be put in place to ensure that at least 90% of all Ward Committees are fully functional by 2014.		

Figure 2 - Alignment of Strategic Objectives

## Inter-Governmental Relations Overview

### ***Introduction***

Hessequa Municipality forms part of the Western Cape and hosts several service delivery access points managed by other spheres of government which ranges from provincial departments, national departments and government funded service organisations.

No local municipality can function in isolation from the other two spheres of government being involved in its annual processes. Various platforms are maintained by the provincial sphere of government for coordination of oversight within local municipalities. Hessequa Municipality is committed to the development of strengthened service delivery through inter-governmental partnerships and continued collaboration for the good of our communities. Hessequa Municipality also serves as an agent for some functions allocated to provincial government. This have major implications on budgets and management processes that needs to be controlled well for reporting purposes to the relevant provincial department.

Continuous engagements based on technical sectors takes place throughout the year between national, provincial and local spheres of government. From an IDP perspective there are a few important engagements to highlight.

### ***District IDP Coordination***

The Eden District Municipality coordinates the strategic regional process and continues to facilitate important strategic issues on a district level through the gathering of role-players. There are also several technical committees in the district that creates joint planning platforms. Hessequa Municipality supports the processes initiated by the district municipality.

### ***Provincial IDP Forum***

The provincial department of Local Government (DPLG) facilitates quarterly meetings where regulatory information is shared and consulted with IDP representatives from all local municipalities in the province. It serves as an important platform for information sharing and more specifically providing the provincial department with a mandate to address certain IGR issues experienced by local municipalities. These sessions have always proven to be helpful and supportive of local municipality's processes

### ***Provincial IDP Indaba Programme***

As part of the oversight role Provincial Treasury needs to fulfil towards local municipalities two joint planning sessions is organised by DPLG. Both of these sessions aim at aligning the planning provincial government does in all its departments with the realities faced on a local level. Municipalities are given the opportunity to communicate the issues coming from their IDP processes and all departments on a provincial level commits to possible solutions. It has given local municipalities an opportunity to raise and discuss issues coming from our public participation processes in detail. Issues such as provincial roads maintenance, pedestrian safety, funding for backlogs in service delivery and many more have been raised.

### ***The LGMTEC Process***

The LGMTEC process is an IGR platform where Provincial Treasury portrays their direct oversight role towards the municipal budget. After the adoption of Draft IDP's and Budgets at the end of March every year, municipalities supply these documents to Provincial Treasury who in turn evaluate the credibility of the strategic plan and the financial plan for the local municipality. Many issues concerning compliancy and financial sustainability are considered and debated with a set of recommendations from Provincial Treasury to the local municipality as an outcome. Hessequa Municipality commits to this process and supports the oversight role of provincial government for transparency and accountability reasons.

## PRE-DETERMINED OBJECTIVES – BACKGROUND

### Introduction

Municipalities in South Africa have undergone radical changes in terms of legislative requirements and especially lower capacity local councils have struggled to implement the changes. Economic realities have also caused pressure on councils to be more responsible in terms of expenditure. Furthermore communities have grown tired of promises being made indirectly in terms of planning that have been communicated with them from the side of municipalities. This have been seen where communities publicly expressed their dissatisfaction with the delivery on promises made by councils by protests. Furthermore we see how other communities are not interested in any planning processes anymore as they experience it as “useless” exercises due to “nothing happening” after the inputs to the plans was given.

The concept of Strategic Objectives, or Pre-Determined Objectives (PDO's) strives to rectify this very issue. It is being requested by the Auditor General of South Africa that municipalities must set their targets in their planning and be able to annually prove to the external auditing process how delivery was done and progress made on these objectives that were made. This requirement forces a municipality to start and be accountable to its communities. It forces objective communication between the municipality and its communities as targets that are being set cannot be “unreal”. It should be achievable and implementable. No more “pies in the skies” to make use of the informal figure of speech. It also forces municipalities to take stock of their capacity to implement the changes promised. Ultimately it becomes a tool to make realistic promises to the communities on issues relating to them.

Even though it seems to promise much, there is still a mountain of problems on the doorstep of municipalities in South Africa. However, gradual overcoming of obstacles can be planned for and realistic targets can be identified and communicated with the residents.

### Process Explanation

1. After a set of Focus Areas have been identified, the vision is developed from it. In essence it becomes a summary of that what the council deems important for Strategic Change, instead of a completely irrational and unrealistic vision which isn't meaningful at all.
2. After the Focus Areas have been identified, each is then broken down into Strategic Objectives (PDO's) that need to be delivered during Council's term of office that is needed to make the desired Impact. This is the first set of Objectives that a municipality have direct control over. This means that the municipality commits to a specific set of deliverables to attain the change desired by the residents.
3. After the PDO's have been developed in terms of what Council want to see, the officials continue to break down all Strategic Objectives into annual Outputs that resembles the change that needs to be brought about annually to attain the objective of the 5 year term of the Council.
4. Then the annual Outputs are broken down into specific Activities/Actions that need to be done to realize the annual Output.
5. Finally of course, everything costs something and the needed resources are allocated to implement the actions. The resources are Human Resource, Financial Resource and Time.
6. At this point the credibility of the goals is able to be tested for the first time. If any of the resources are not going to be available for a specific action, the plan will inevitably fail. This is where the balancing act between Plans and Ability to implement can be calculated in the measurement of Confidence.

### Pre-Determined Objectives – The Building Blocks for Performance Management

To be able to complete the cycle of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation, a clear set of objectives need to be set. It also needs to cover all services of the municipality as evaluation cannot be done on just some of the service delivery functions of a municipality. This IDP review facilitated the development of these objectives and is looking closely to



ensure that in-year monitoring are aligned with these goals, together with the performance information that is submitted during the quarterly reports of the Performance Management Process.

The following set of Pre-Determined Objectives, page 29, have been identified and set as objectives as a “promise” to communities in Hessequa to be held accountable accordingly. They are sorted according to Department and secondly, the Line Function within the Department.

### **IDP Implementation Plan (iMAP)**

Annexure “A” is a document called iMAP, or IDP Implementation plan, and it creates the space for alignment between the PDO’s, the SDBIP and the Budget. The iMAP consists of all the goals set by Council for all services rendered and then it links all the departmental goals which is included in the “top-layer” of the SDBIP, which in turn reflects the basis of the Performance Management process of the relevant financial year. These projects and programmes identified in the iMAP is included in the performance agreements that is signed by senior managers and by the municipal manager. It then also includes a 5 year planning framework for all projects to ensure the outcomes that the Council is holding the municipal officials accountable too through the performance management process.

Hessequa Key Performance Areas	Department	Line Function	PDO#	Pre-Determined Objective	National KPA	NDP Target Area 1	NDP Target Area 2 (Additional 1)	NDP Target Area 3 (Additional 2)
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Corporate Services	Human Resource - Employment	1	Fill vacant budgeted posts to maintain a fit for purpose workforce	Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development.	Developing a capable and Development State		
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Corporate Services	Human Resource - Training	2	Capacitate the municipal workforce	Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development.	Developing a capable and Development State	Education, Training and Innovation	Fighting Corruption
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Office of the MM	Performance Management	3	To obtain a clean audit by end 2015	Good Governance and Public Participation.	Developing a capable and Development State	Fighting Corruption	
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Office of the MM	Risk Management	4	Management of Risks through the audit of identified internal controls	Good Governance and Public Participation.	Developing a capable and Development State	Fighting Corruption	Building Safer Communities
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Finance	Finance	5	Increase financial reserves with strict budgetary management and control	Municipal Financial Viability and Management.	Developing a capable and Development State	Economy and Development	
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Finance	Finance	6	Strengthen and implement financial and asset management	Municipal Financial Viability and Management.	Developing a capable and Development State	Economy and Development	

An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Finance	Finance	7	Implement financial reforms as required per MFMA	Municipal Financial Viability and Management.	Developing a capable and Development State	Economy and Development	
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Corporate Services	Legal Services	8	Continued support to internal departments to minimise external legal service cost	Good Governance and Public Participation.	Developing a capable and Development State	Fighting Corruption	Social Protection
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Corporate Services	Administration	9	Continued Management of Administrative Tasks	Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development.	Developing a capable and Development State		
An Accountable Local Authority with a Fit for Purpose Workforce and Transparent Financial Management Practices	Office of the MM	Information & Communications Technology	10	Implement IT Environmental controls to limit systems network downtime	Municipal Financial Viability and Management.	Developing a capable and Development State	Fighting Corruption	Economy and Development
Effective Communication & Participation	Corporate Services	Communication	11	Improve communication with all role-players	Good Governance and Public Participation.	Developing a capable and Development State	Fighting Corruption	Social Protection
Development of Safe Integrated Human Settlements	Socio economic, Housing & Community Safety	Disaster Management/ Law enforcement & Traffic Agency service	12	Render public safety services	Basic Service Delivery	Building Safer Communities	Social Protection	
Development of Safe Integrated Human Settlements	Socio economic, Housing & Community Safety	Integrated Human Settlements	13	Delivery of 450 low cost housing units by June 2017	Basic Service Delivery	Transforming Human Settlements	Social Protection	Nation Building and Social Cohesion

Development of Safe Integrated Human Settlements	Socio economic, Housing & Community Safety	Integrated Human Settlements	14	Provide 40 Gap housing opportunities by 2017	Basic Service Delivery	Transforming Human Settlements	Social Protection	Nation Building and Social Cohesion
Development of Safe Integrated Human Settlements	Town Planning & Environmental Services	Town Planning	15	Municipal planning in line with the Spatial Development Framework and other relevant planning legislation	Basic Service Delivery	Transforming Human Settlements	Building Safer Communities	Social Protection
Human Development Initiatives to enhance the Social Wellbeing of all our Residents	Socio economic, Housing & Community Safety	Library Services	16	Continued library service delivery in all communities and development of services to include specific rural areas and all rural schools	Basic Service Delivery	Education, Training and Innovation	Inclusive Rural Economy	Nation Building and Social Cohesion
Human Development Initiatives to enhance the Social Wellbeing of all our Residents	Socio economic, Housing & Community Safety	Social Development	17	Implement social development projects as planned and budgeted	Local Economic Development (LED).	Social Protection	Nation Building and Social Cohesion	Education, Training and Innovation
Limiting the Impact of Our Presence in the Natural Environment to Return to a Heritage of Preservation	Technical Services	Solid Waste Management	18	Development of waste recycling in all urban areas	Basic Service Delivery	Environmental Sustainability and Resilience	Economy and Development	
Limiting the Impact of Our Presence in the Natural Environment to Return to a Heritage of Preservation	Town Planning & Environmental Services	Environmental Affairs	19	Environmental integrity in line with the Environmental Management Framework	Basic Service Delivery	Environmental Sustainability and Resilience	Economy and Development	Education, Training and Innovation
Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Corporate Services	Property Management	20	Manage municipal properties	Basic Service Delivery	Economy and Development	Developing a capable and Development State	Building Safer Communities

Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Technical Services	Electrical Services	21	Continued electricity services to all users without unnecessary interruptions in the service with an annual up-time of more than 98%	Basic Service Delivery	Economy and Development	Transforming Human Settlements	Nation Building and Social Cohesion
Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Technical Services	Parks	22	Create additional cemetery space	Basic Service Delivery	Transforming Human Settlements	Social Protection	Economy and Development
Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Technical Services	Parks	23	Maintained recreational areas	Basic Service Delivery	Transforming Human Settlements	Nation Building and Social Cohesion	Economy and Development
To Stimulate Economic Growth for the Benefit of All Communities	Technical Services	Resorts	24	Upgrade and maintain Municipal Resorts to increase occupancy	Basic Service Delivery	Economy and Development	Nation Building and Social Cohesion	
Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Technical Services	Roads	25	Upgrade and maintain road infrastructure in terms of master planning	Basic Service Delivery	Economy and Development	Transforming Human Settlements	Nation Building and Social Cohesion
Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Technical Services	Sanitation	26	Attain Green Drop certification by 2015	Basic Service Delivery	Economy and Development	Building Safer Communities	Health Care for All
Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Technical Services	Solid Waste Management	27	Continued service delivery of refuse removal in urban areas in accordance with Service Standard	Basic Service Delivery	Economy and Development	Transforming Human Settlements	Health Care for All
Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Technical Services	Stormwater	28	Development of network to negate the negative impact of stormwater in all communities, especially flood prone areas	Basic Service Delivery	Economy and Development	Building Safer Communities	Transforming Human Settlements
Maintenance and Development of all Infrastructure and Services	Technical Services	Water	29	Attain Blue Drop certification by 2015	Basic Service Delivery	Economy and Development	Transforming Human Settlements	Health Care for All

To Stimulate Economic Growth for the Benefit of All Communities	Socio economic, Housing & Community Safety	Economic Development	30	Implement LED initiatives through the LED Strategy	Local Economic Development (LED).	Economy and Development	Inclusive Rural Economy	Nation Building and Social Cohesion
-----------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------	----------------------	----	----------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------------------



## INSTITUTIONAL OVERVIEW

As part of the IDP process, all strategic interventions were considered and resulted in focused objectives as set out in the section dealing with Pre-Determined Objectives. During this time the Council also revisited the institutional layout of management. The organisational structure which was carried over from the previous council was formed due to different circumstances that caused the structure to change and narrowing the top management level from the previous structure.

Council adopted this scaled down structure with the following changes as the formal organisational layout for the top layer of management as two senior managers left the service of Hessequa Municipality within the 2012/13 financial year:

1. Administration and Human Resource not being managed by an Acting Manager anymore, but being moved to the previous Manager Legal Services and Community Safety.
2. Community Safety being assigned to the Manager Socio-Economic Development and Housing to establish a one stop “Community Services” department
3. Electromechanical Services, Water, Sewerage and Sanitation Services being added to the Roads, Stormwater, Parks and Resorts to establish a “Technical Services” department
4. Cross-cutting processes like IDP, PMS, SDBIP and Annual Report to be established as a unit in the office of the Municipal Manager

The following diagram displays the organisation layout of management.

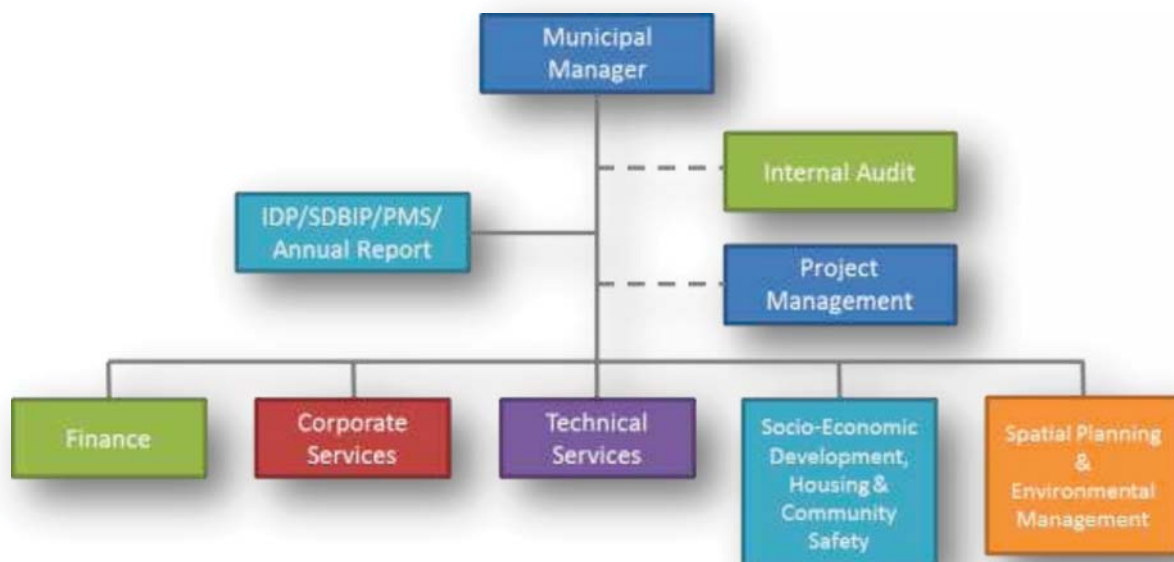


Figure 3 - Organisation Layout of Management

## ANALYSIS OF HESSEQUA – OUR PEOPLE

### ***Introduction & Important Notes***

The Hessequa Municipality is located along the southern shoreline of Africa from the Gourits River in the east to the Breede River on the western border. Towards the north the Langeberg mountain range forms a border between Hessequa and the Klein Karoo.

The geographical layout of Hessequa Municipality is one of the most unique in the Western Cape, as Hessequa is a region with many towns as a result of amalgamation that happened between 6 small municipalities in 2000. As it is titled, this profile of Hessequa is based on the 2011 national census of South Africa with the formal Supercross Datasets, provided by Statistics South Africa, of South Africa. This is the only source for the 2011 statistics used in this profile and the 2001 Supercross Datasets was used to include the 2001 census statistics. Only statistics released by Statistics South Africa through aforementioned datasets was used.

### ***Ward Based Information***

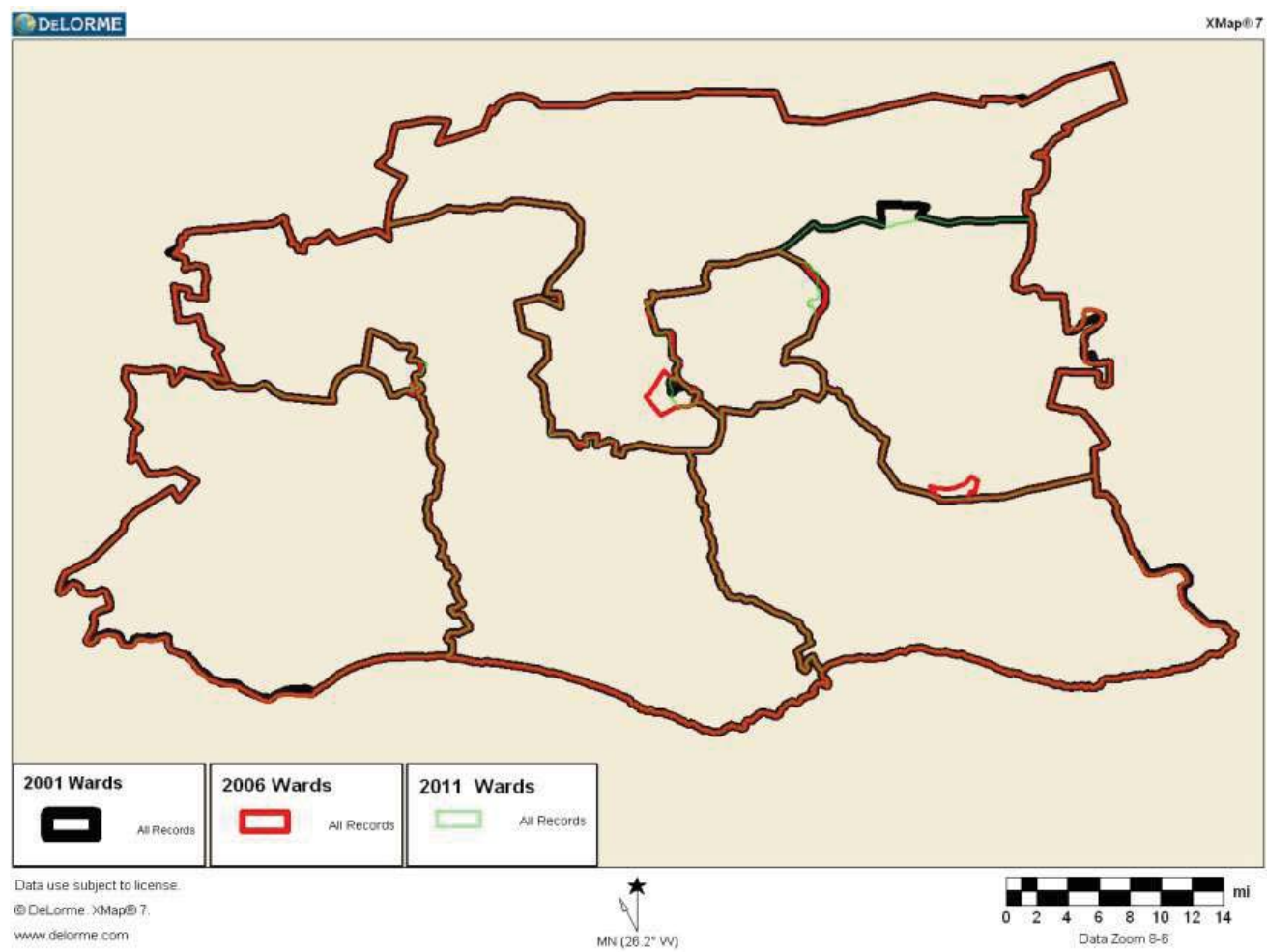
All of the statistics included in the profile referenced by ward. When electoral wards are used to sort statistics it is important to remember that ward demarcations change regularly. Due to Hessequa being a region, any changes in ward demarcations cause major changes in the statistics. Furthermore wards do not constitute of a specific community or area type, but in all cases wards include multiple communities and are it important to acquaint one with the demarcations of the wards to ensure a perfect understanding of the communities included in a certain set of ward information. On the positive side however, even though Hessequa experienced major changes in ward demarcations in 2011 from that what it was in 2006, the changes that was made returned basically to the same demarcations for 2001. This creates the perfect opportunity then to clearly compare wards with one another without considering the inclusion or exclusion of complete communities in the figures. The map on the next page clearly shows the 2001, 2006 and 2011 demarcations of wards. There are minor changes between 2001 and 2011, but all these changes are in the rural area and could only cause a fraction of a percentage variation.

During March 2013 all census information will be released in main and sub-place recodes, which means individual towns would be able to be profiled. This profile will be updated with a more detailed breakup of communities once released by StatsSA.

### ***Structure of the Profile***

The profile seeks to create an image of certain aspects at a time and is loosely structured by looking at the overall population profile first. Secondly a focus on the rural population that will quantify by ward the population located in non-urban environments. Thirdly the profile looks at the household profile of Hessequa which includes a services profile. The profile concludes with a detailed look at the economic profile of Hessequa based on **official definitions** and the labour force count or households.

Map of Hessequa Ward Demarcations for 2001, 2006 and 2011



## Population Profile of Hessequa

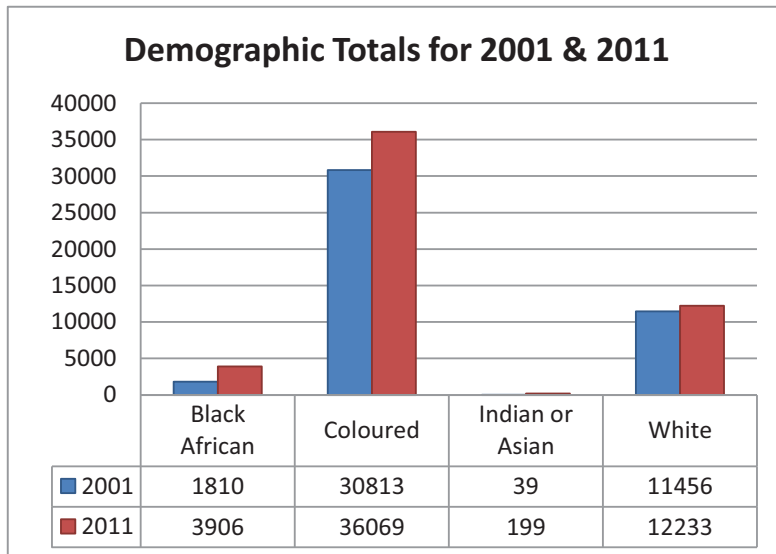


Figure 4 - Population Totals by Race

During 2007 StatsSA released a publication known as CS2007 which attempted to help municipalities with statistical information for planning as the 2001 Census information was aging rapidly. Hessequa objected strongly to the findings of this publication as it stated that the Hessequa population declined from 2001 – 2007 by almost 5 %. Hessequa did not accept this

information and with the 2011 Census information being released, we are glad to see that Hessequa is growing in terms of population and not getting less.

From this chart it is clearly visible that the Coloured population is by far the largest represented people group in Hessequa with Whites second and Black African third. Indian or Asian people are scarcely represented in Hessequa.

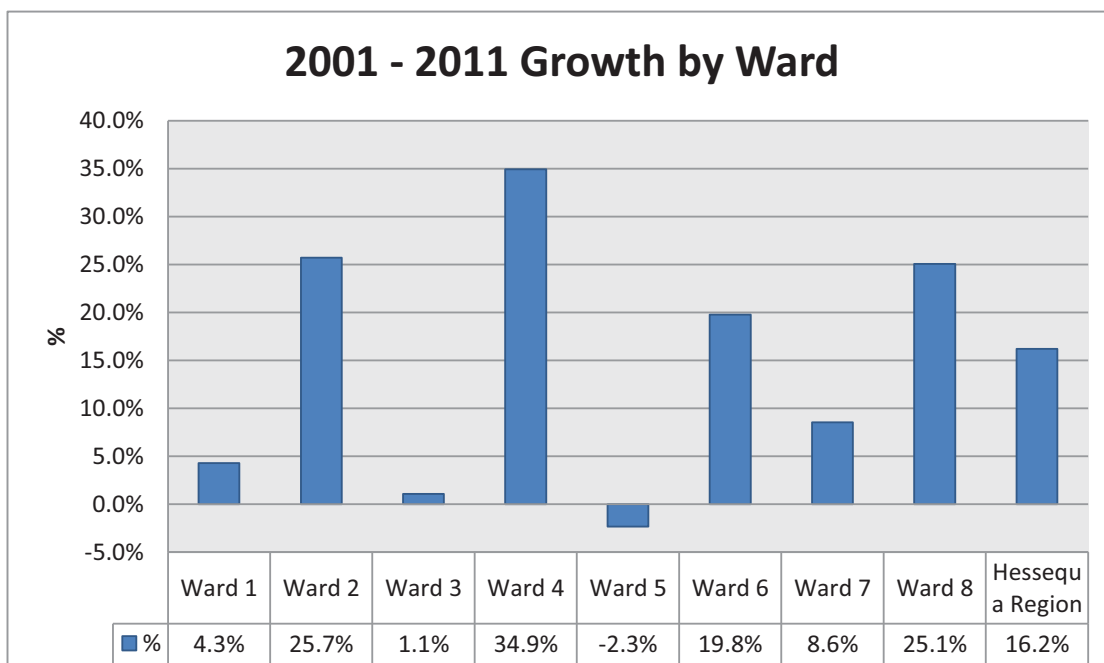


Figure 5 - Growth Rates of Wards

Figure 2 shows the growth rate of each ward with the Hessequa Region average on the right hand side of the chart.

It is clearly visible to see that Ward 4 experienced the largest growth of almost 35% since 2001 and Ward 2 second most with 25.7%. Ward 8 follows with 25.1% and on the other side of the spectrum it was surprising to see Ward 5 experiencing a negative growth of -2.3%. This seems like a somewhat problematic figure, but is confirmed in various other statistics that will be displayed in this profile. There is a close relation between Ward 4 & 5 as the ward demarcations literally divide a relatively high density community in two. With the implementation of a low-cost housing project within ward 4 which serve the community mentioned of ward 5 primarily. The IDP highlights this as an important issue which led to the IDP adopting area based planning, instead of ward based planning principles.

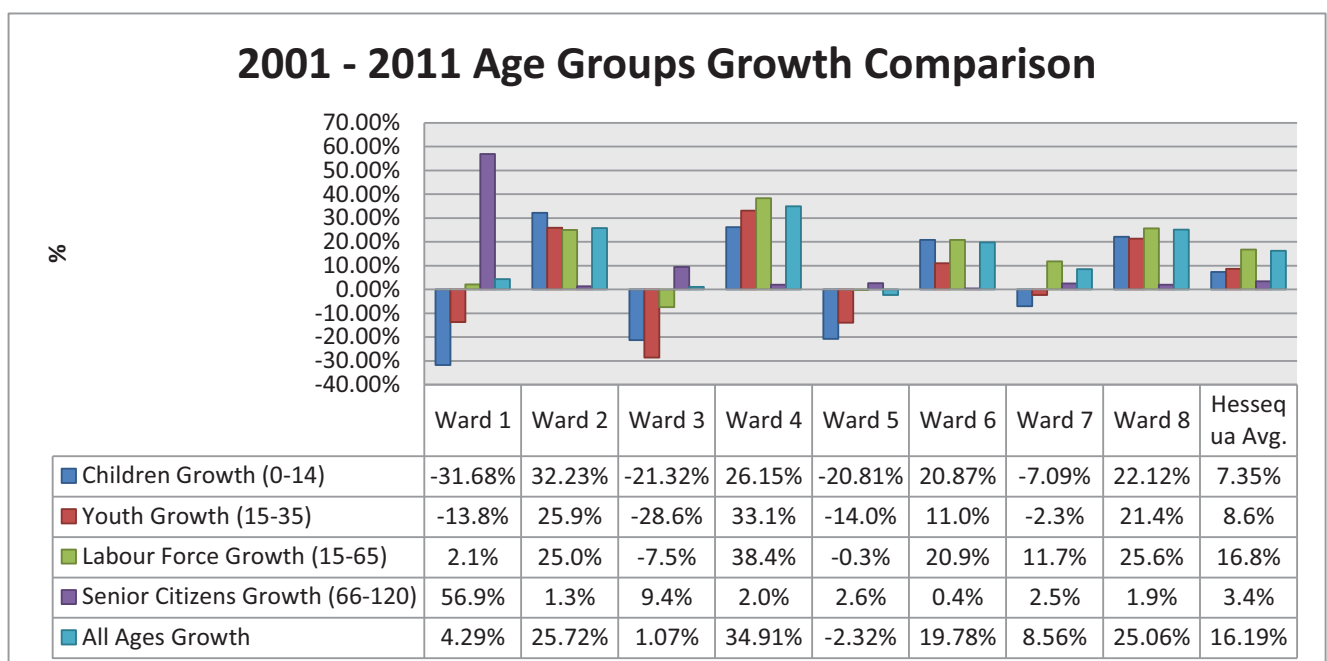


Figure 6 - Ward Growth by Age Groups

Figure 3 is very important to a region's profile as it shows in which age group the growth or decline happened. This starts to show what changes within the economic and social structure of a given ward is taking place. Please note that Figure 3 does not imply that children or senior citizens got more or less. It shows in which age group the growth or decline was the strongest or weakest. All the above mentioned information includes rural and urban areas. The following summary for each ward will reflect the findings of Figure 3.

#### Ward1 – Stilbaai, Melkhoutfontein, Gouritsmond & Rural Area

- Ward 1 experienced a below average growth in general and a sharp decline in ages 0 – 35. The labour force in general grew by 2.1%, which implies that the growth in the labour force was

primarily located between the ages of 35 – 65. Ward one shows the highest categorical growth in Hessequa with a growth of 56.9% in the senior citizen category.

- Ward 2 experienced an above average growth in general with the lowest growth in senior citizens in contrary to ward 1. It is important to note the large growth in children below the age of 14 in ward 2. This growth impacts various aspects of government services such health and education.
- Ward 3 showed a very slow growth rate over the last 10 years. A sharp decline in children and youth, as well as decline in residents of ages 36-65. The second highest growth rate for senior citizens, was recorded in Ward 3.
- Ward 4 displayed the highest growth in all of Hessequa over the last 10 years which is primarily in the labour force category. With Ward 4 being a mostly rural ward and including a low cost housing area of Heidelberg this could be due to various factors.
- Ward 5 is the only ward in Hessequa that showed an average growth that is negative over the last 10 years. Once again it is important to note that many people who would be classified as “backyard dwellers” would have moved to ward 4 due to the low-cost housing project. This creates a problem for planning as it is a high density community being cut in half by the demarcation of electoral wards.
- Ward 6 experienced a growth which is very close to the Hessequa average. It recorded the lowest growth in senior citizens and interestingly enough, a relatively low growth in the youth age group(ages 15-35). Ward 6 also consists of a relatively high density of rural population, ward 6 suffered the largest decline in rural population of all the wards in percentage. See page **Error! Bookmark not defined.** for more detail concerning rural/urban comparisons.
- Ward 7 counted a less than average growth from 2001-2011. The growth category is primarily the more senior component of the labour force. It recorded a negative growth for children and youth.
- Ward 8 experienced above average growth, except for senior citizens. It is interesting to note that the growth pattern is consistent over children, youth and the 36-65 age group of the labour force. This is a possible indication that the communities in ward 8 is stabilised and not experiencing so much migration as other communities in Hessequa.



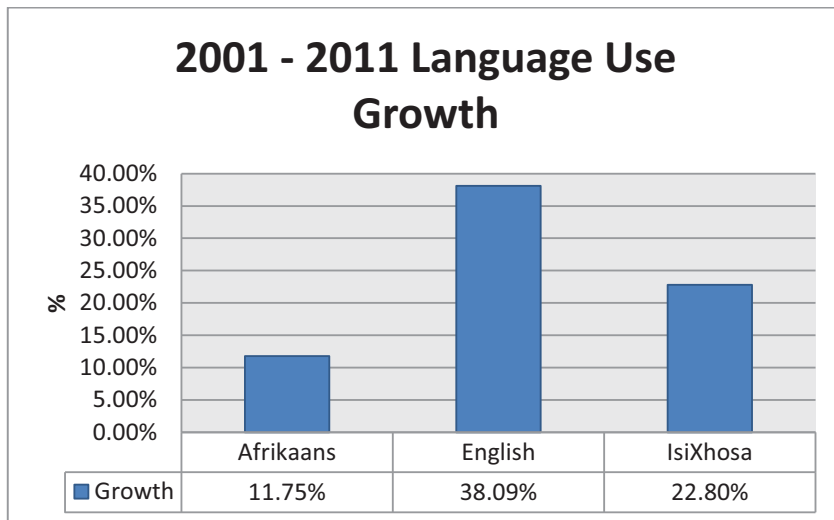


Figure 7 - Language Use Growth

Figure 4 shows the language growth in Hessequa, comparing the 3 main languages used in Hessequa. Figure 5 shows the percentage language use in Hessequa in relation to the other 8 official languages of South Africa (Other). Clearly Afrikaans is the language spoken the most to a total of 90%. English growing to 4% and IsiXhosa 2%.

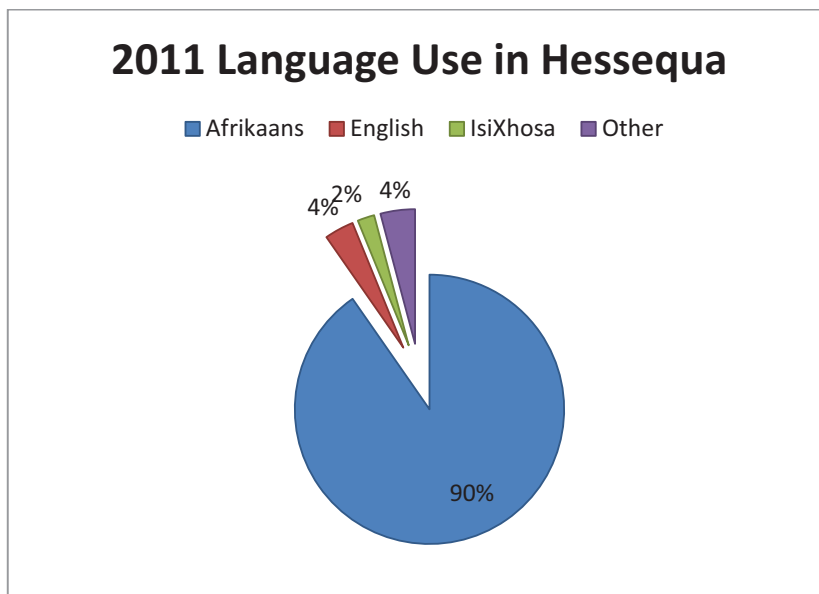


Figure 8 - Language Use Percentage

## 2001 - 2011 % Growth in Educational Levels per Ward

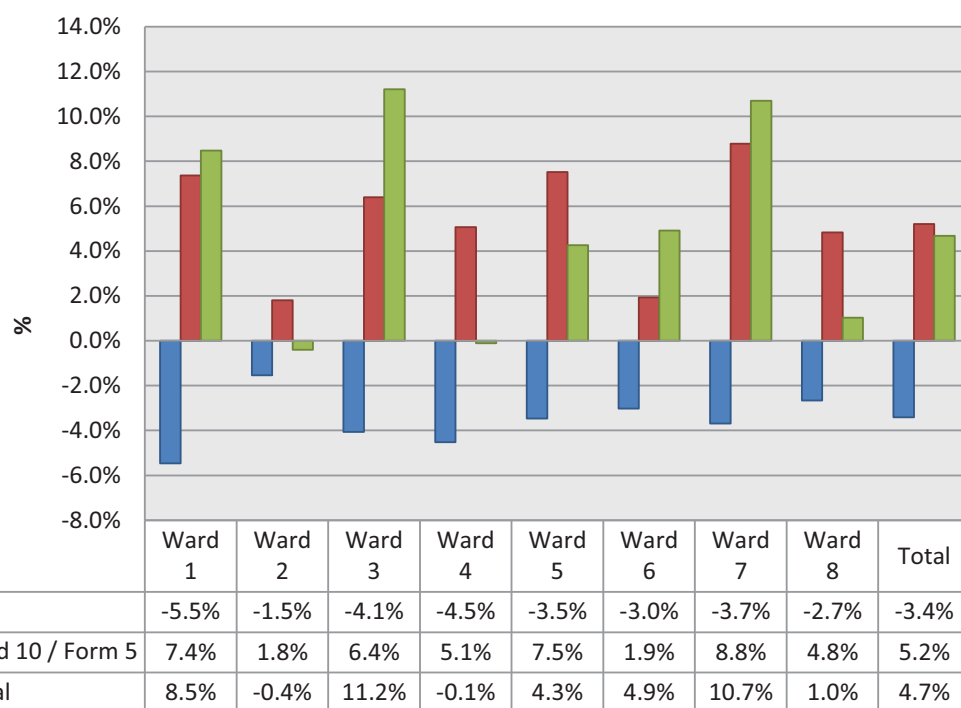


Figure 9 - Education Levels Growth

Education is one of the most important statistical analysis indicators to come to grips with what is going on in a community's well-being. Hessequa experienced a positive shift towards better educational levels per applicable person during the last 10 years across the region, however it is important to mention a fractional decline in education levels in Ward 2. This is really troublesome as it needs to be investigated as it is an isolated statistic within the region. The key indicators for educational levels are No Schooling & Grade 12(Matric). As development requires, no schooling should be in decline and the amount of children completing school should be getting better. This is the fact in Hessequa with an average growth of 5.2% in children finishing Grade 12.

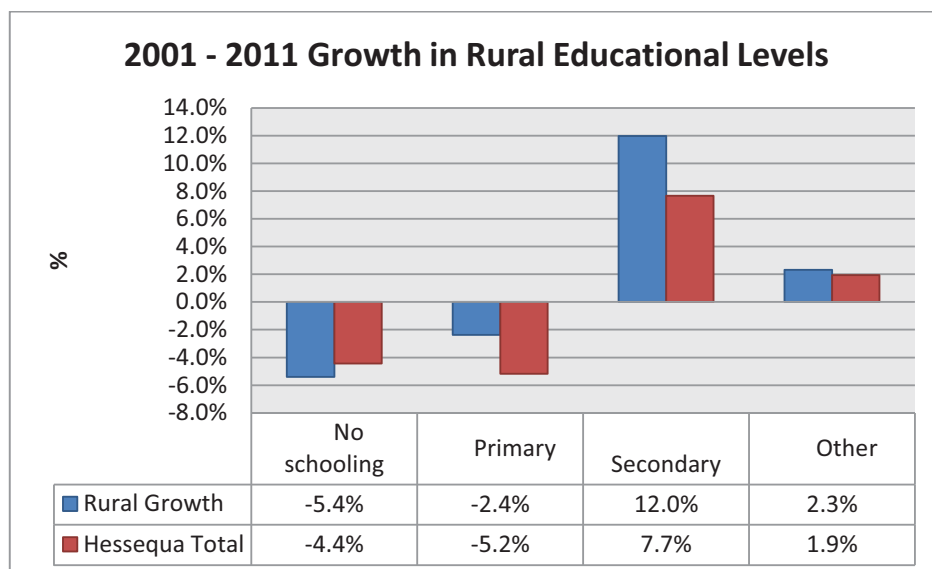


Figure 10 - Rural Educational Levels Growth

An important statistic to look at is the difference between the educational levels of people in the urban areas and that of those in the rural areas. Figure 7 clearly shows how far the rural resident in general is behind the urban resident who is exposed to much more opportunities. This information should be the starting point for various services of government to consider. In general one could say that the rural area are about 6-8 years behind in development to that of urban residents and is shown in Figure 8.

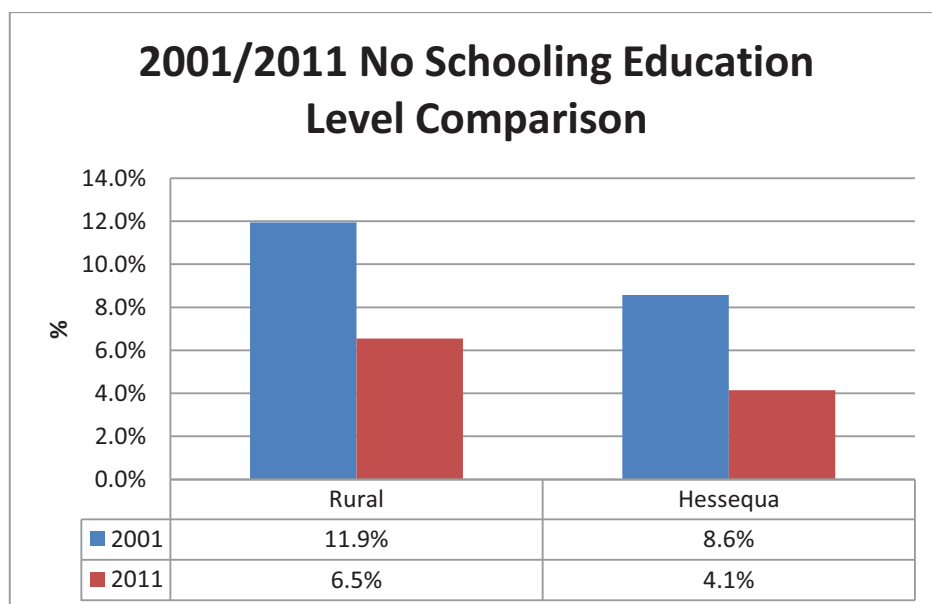


Figure 11 - Urban / Rural No Schooling Comparison

## Rural Profile

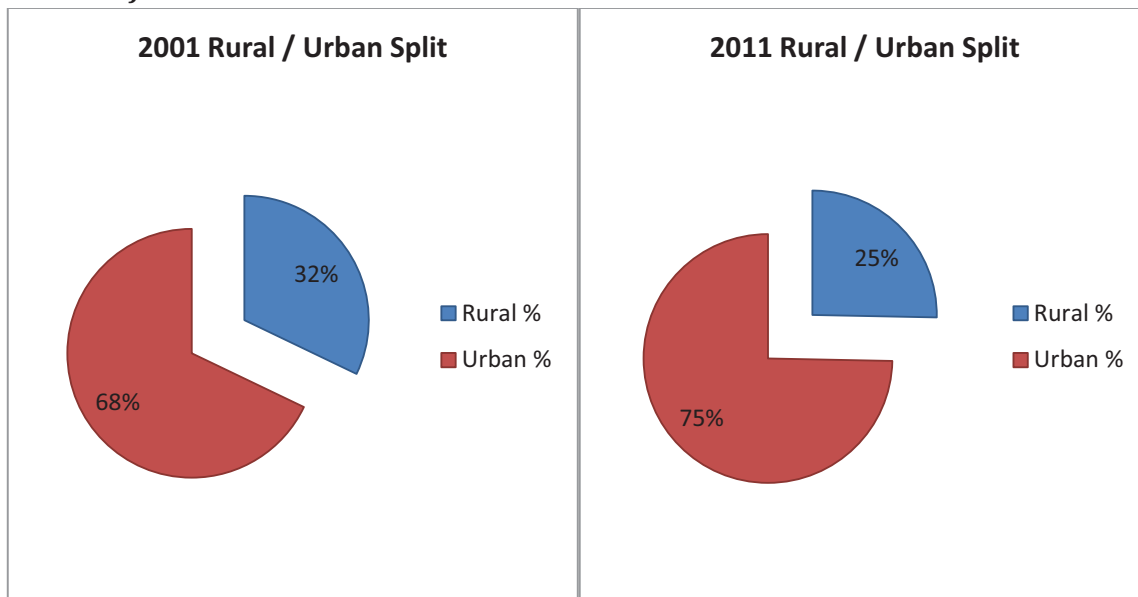


Figure 12 – 2001 & 2011 Rural / Urban Split

In Figure 9 we see the drastic decline in rural population from 2001 to 2011. The question remains, where are these people going? The general assumption is that when people leave the farm, they end up in informal structures in an urban environment and needs to be helped through the low cost housing schemes of the municipality. Other datasets have indicated that labour absorption in the commercial agricultural sector almost halved over the last 10 years. The population statistics really proves this to be true.

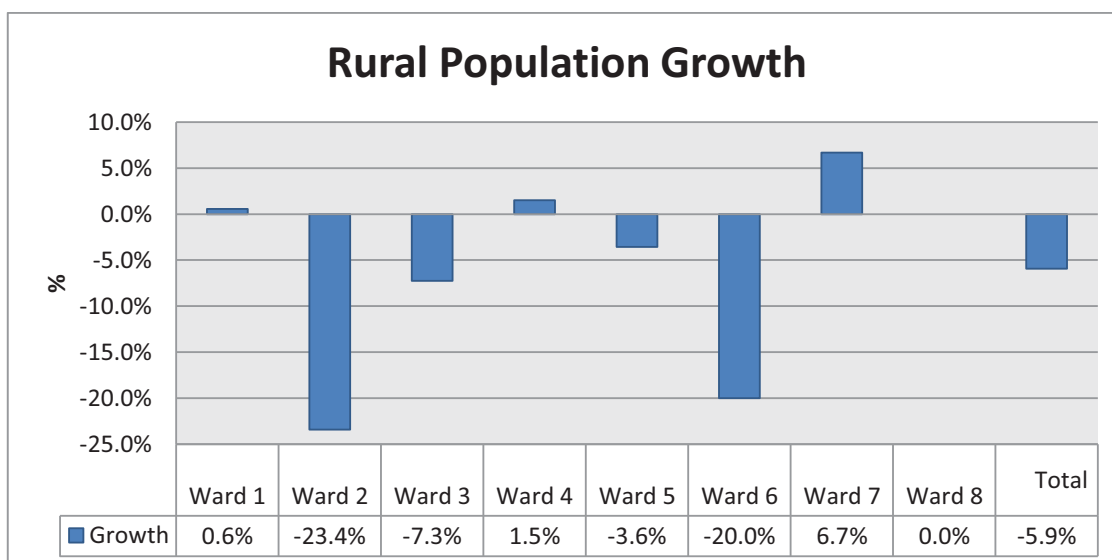


Figure 13 - Rural Population Growth

Figure 10 shows the growth in rural areas. Hessequa in general shows a negative growth of -5.9% in the rural areas. Ward 7 alone shows a reasonable amount of growth, but still far below the general growth rate of Hessequa of 16.2%

Table 1 gives a detailed breakup of gender and total population per ward for the rural and urban areas. The important column in Table 1 is the growth figures. We can see the negative growth of wards 2 and 6.

**Table 1- Rural/Urban Population Figures per Ward**

Urban / Rural Residents Split & Growth													
	Farms		Small Holdings		Rural Total		Total		Rural %		Growt h	Urban %	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011		2001	2011
Male													
Ward 1	943	954	0	0	943	954	3159	3273	29.9 %	29.1 %	-0.7%	70.1%	70.9%
Ward 2	732	586	364	0	1096	586	2784	3677	39.4 %	15.9 %	-23.4%	60.6%	84.1%
Ward 3	1530	1394	63	0	1593	1394	2389	2285	66.7 %	61.0 %	-5.7%	33.3%	39.0%
Ward 4	918	1394	0	73	918	1467	2745	4249	33.4 %	34.5 %	1.1%	66.6%	65.5%
Ward 5	0	0	183	76	183	76	2714	2766	6.7%	2.7%	-4.0%	93.3%	97.3%
Ward 6	919	597	405	218	1324	815	2829	3275	46.8 %	24.9 %	-21.9%	53.2%	75.1%
Ward 7	542	949	275	220	817	1169	2699	3146	30.3 %	37.2 %	6.9%	69.7%	62.8%
Ward 8	0	0	0	0	0	0	2084	2854	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	100.0 %	100.0%
Total	5584	5875	1290	587	6874	6462	21403	25525	32.1 %	25.3 %	-6.8%	67.9%	74.7%

Continued on next page.

Female													
Ward 1	825	931	0	0	825	931	3296	3471	25.0 %	26.8 %	1.8%	75.0%	73.2%
Ward 2	716	527	316	0	1032	527	2777	3808	37.2 %	13.8 %	- 23.3%	62.8%	86.2%
Ward 3	1458	1375	36	0	1494	1375	2398	2554	62.3 %	53.8 %	-8.5%	37.7%	46.2%
Ward 4	818	1247	0	79	818	1326	2759	4207	29.6 %	31.5 %	1.9%	70.4%	68.5%
Ward 5	0	0	193	85	193	85	3197	3011	6.0%	2.8%	-3.2%	94.0%	97.2%
Ward 6	912	589	159	200	1071	789	2719	3641	39.4 %	21.7 %	- 17.7%	60.6%	78.3%
Ward 7	562	870	275	192	837	1062	3070	3163	27.3 %	33.6 %	6.3%	72.7%	66.4%
Ward 8	0	0	0	0	0	0	2499	3263	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	100.0 %	100.0%
Total	5292	5539	979	556	6271	6095	22716	27117	27.6 %	22.5 %	-5.1%	72.4%	77.5%
Total													
Ward 1	1768	1885	0	0	1768	1885	6455	6744	27.4 %	28.0 %	0.6%	72.6%	72.0%
Ward 2	1449	1113	679	0	2128	1113	5560	7485	38.3 %	14.9 %	- 23.4%	61.7%	85.1%
Ward 3	2989	2770	99	0	3088	2770	4787	4839	64.5 %	57.2 %	-7.3%	35.5%	42.8%
Ward 4	1736	2642	0	152	1736	2794	5504	8456	31.5 %	33.0 %	1.5%	68.5%	67.0%
Ward 5	0	0	376	161	376	161	5911	5777	6.4%	2.8%	-3.6%	93.6%	97.2%
Ward 6	1831	1186	564	418	2395	1604	5548	6916	43.2 %	23.2 %	- 20.0%	56.8%	76.8%
Ward 7	1104	1819	550	412	1654	2231	5769	6309	28.7 %	35.4 %	6.7%	71.3%	64.6%
Ward 8	0	0	0	0	0	0	4584	6117	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%	100.0 %	100.0%
Total	10876	11414	2269	1143	13145	12557	44118	52642	29.8 %	23.9 %	-5.9%	70.2%	76.1%



### Household Profile of Hessequa

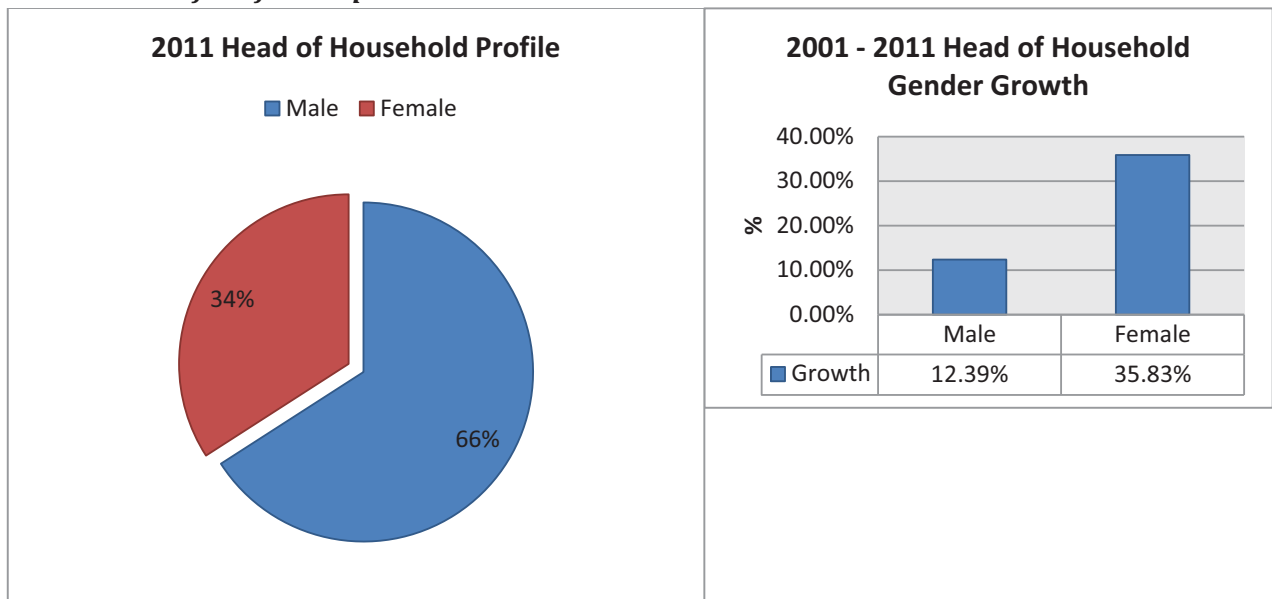


Figure 14 - 2011 Head of Household Profile & Growth Profile

Figure 11 contains information about the 2011 Head of Household Gender and we see that 66% of all households are headed by Males and 34% by Females. The adjointed figure displays the growth between Male and Female headed households and a significant growth in Hessequa was experienced in the number of Female Headed Households. The various factors influencing this growth can be debated; however this profile chooses not to read anything into the statistics.

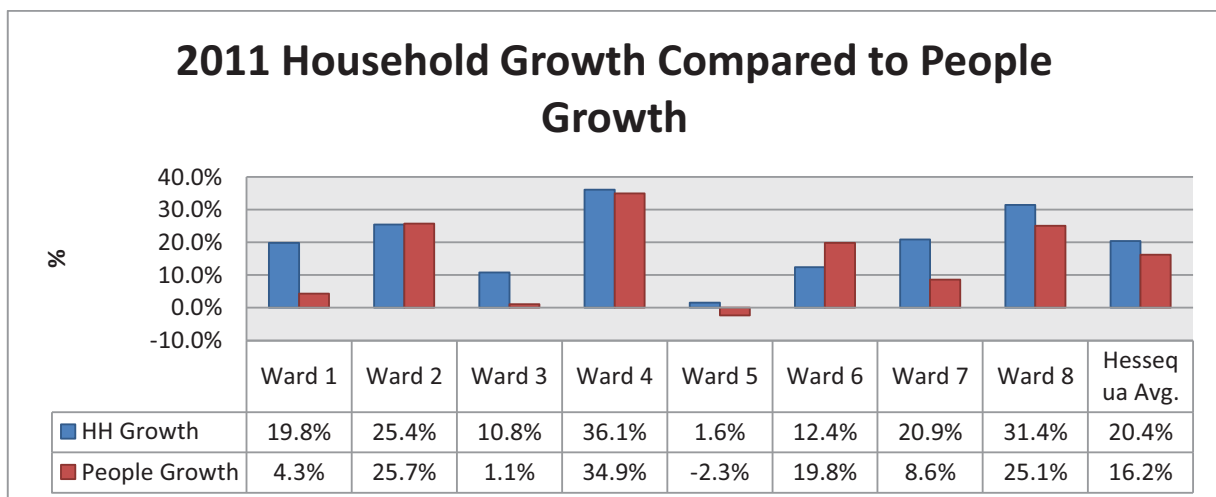
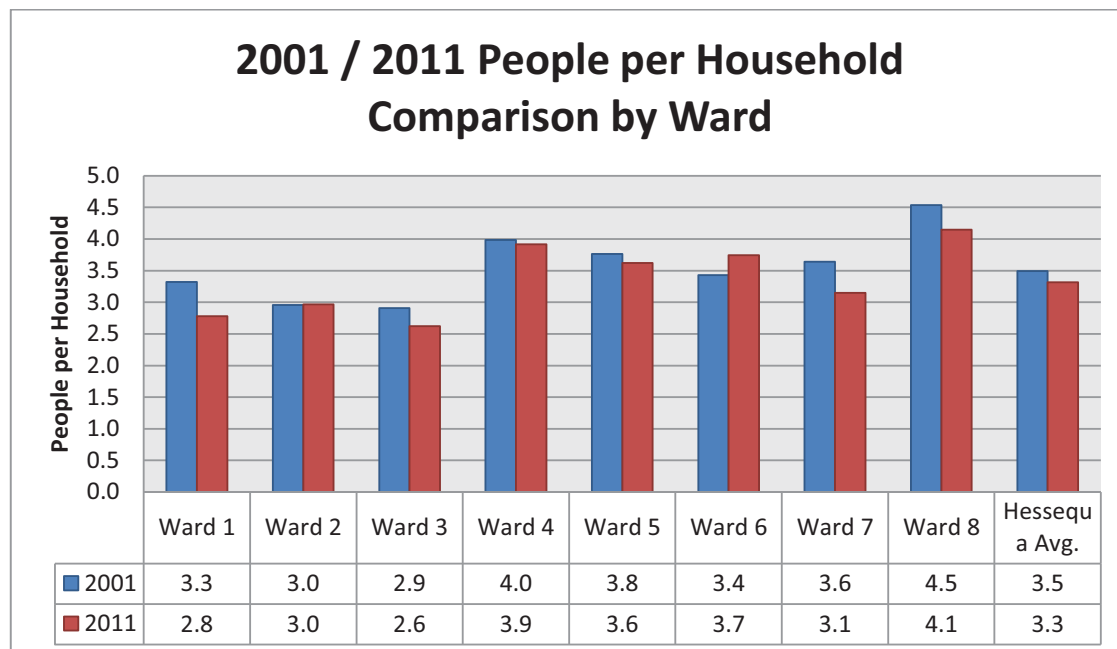


Figure 15 - Household Growth by Ward

Figure 12 compares the growth of population with the growth in households. Individual wards can immediately be identified where the amount of households grew notably. This would then be Ward 2, 4, 7 and 8. These are all wards where major low-cost housing projects influenced the way communities

grew. With ward 4 and 5 closely related, the migration of population is clearly visible between these wards.



**Figure 16 - Average Residents per Household per Ward**

To continue with the comparison between population and households, the average amount of people per household is also an important indicator to look at a community to understand the changes within any given area. Two wards do not show positive growth. Ward 2 indicates no growth or decline at all. It remains in 2011 on 3 residents per household in general, which is lower than the Hessequa average. Ward 6 experienced strong population growth, but not equal growth in households which results in an increase in the average household population from 3.4 to 3.7. A possible cause for this, when compared to other information in this profile, is that the immense movement from people from the rural area into an urban environment within the borders of ward 6. Ward 6 is surrounded geographically by the rural areas of ward 7, which would naturally result in people moving to ward 6 or 8 as the urban area of ward 7 mostly consists of middle to high income communities. For the region of Hessequa the average people per household decreased from 3.5 to 3.3.

### 2001 - 2011 Shift in Annual Household Income (Inflation not Considered)

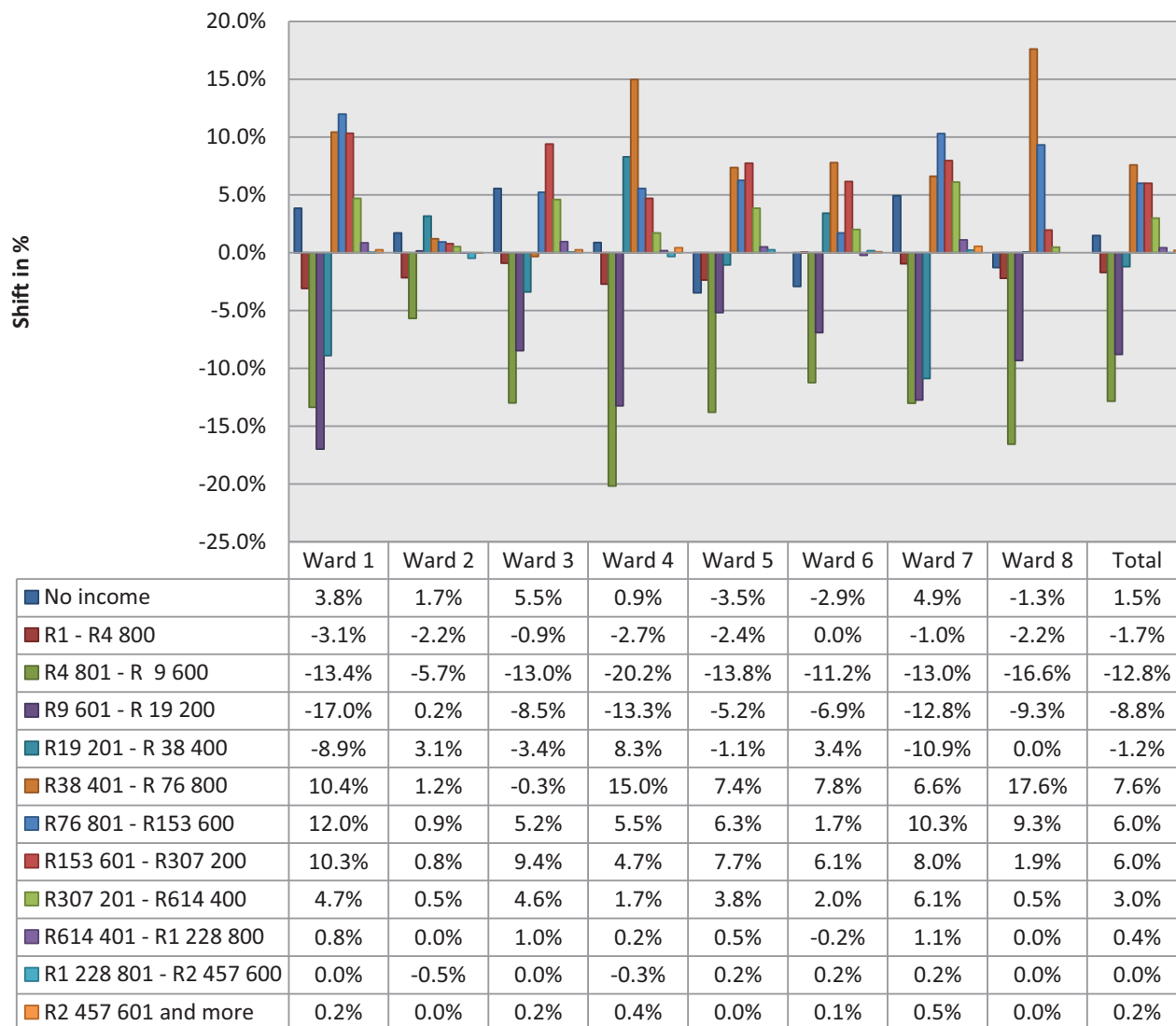


Figure 17 - Annual Household Income

The figure above does a comparison of annual household income between all households per ward, and in total, for 2001 and 2011. It is important to note that this figure does not represent the total amount per category, but rather the change in contribution to a particular income category. If a specific category's value is negative, it implies that the contribution in terms of households within that given category have decreased since 2001. The most notable change is the decrease in average households living in the smaller income categories and the larger portion of households who are forming part of the larger income categories. The graph in general shows a shift in all households towards the larger income categories. Even though the general picture looks good for Hessequa as the average household income have improved, this chart also shows a bit of a negative reality. Wards 1, 3 and 7 showed a very strong growth in the amount of households which do not have an annual income. The stranger aspect of this is that these 3 wards would in general always be considered to be the "higher income" wards. Secondly it can also be interpreted as a symptom of a semi-stagnant economy. It shows that those who do have a form of income have developed over the last 10 years, but it also shows the reality that new labour opportunities are not created.

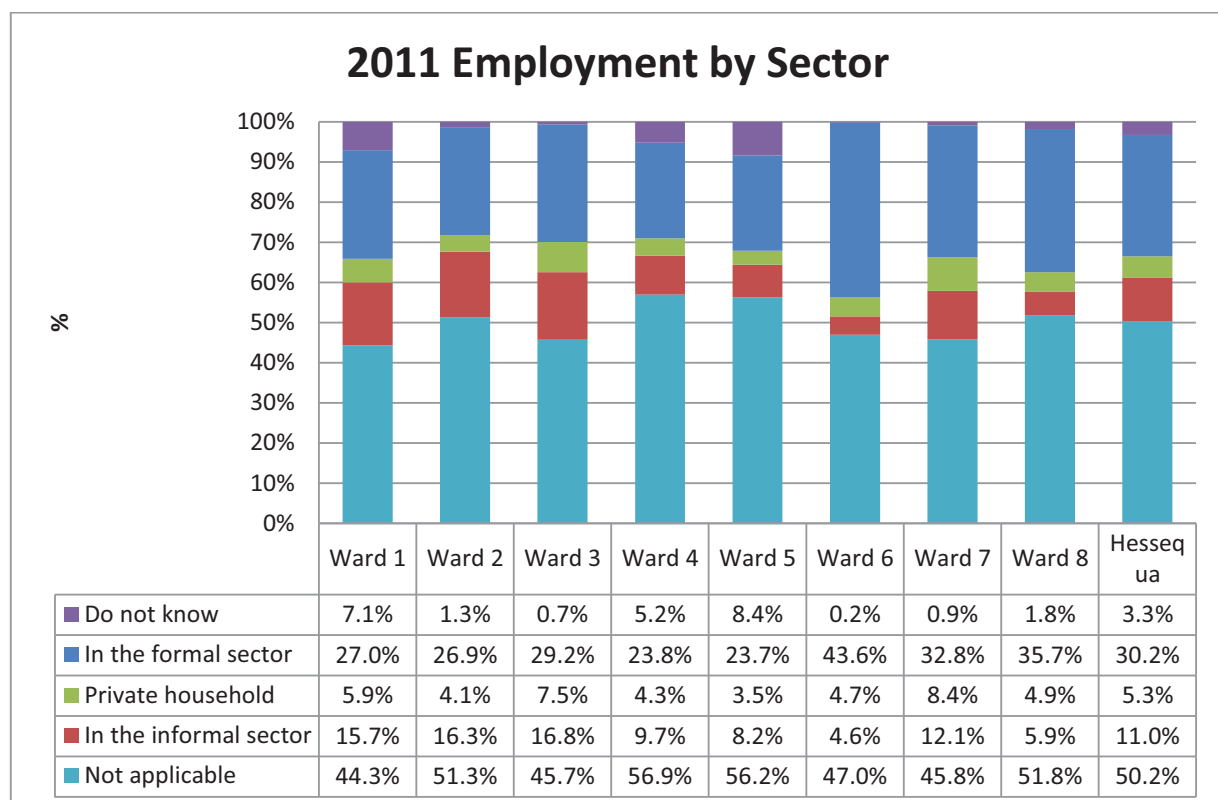
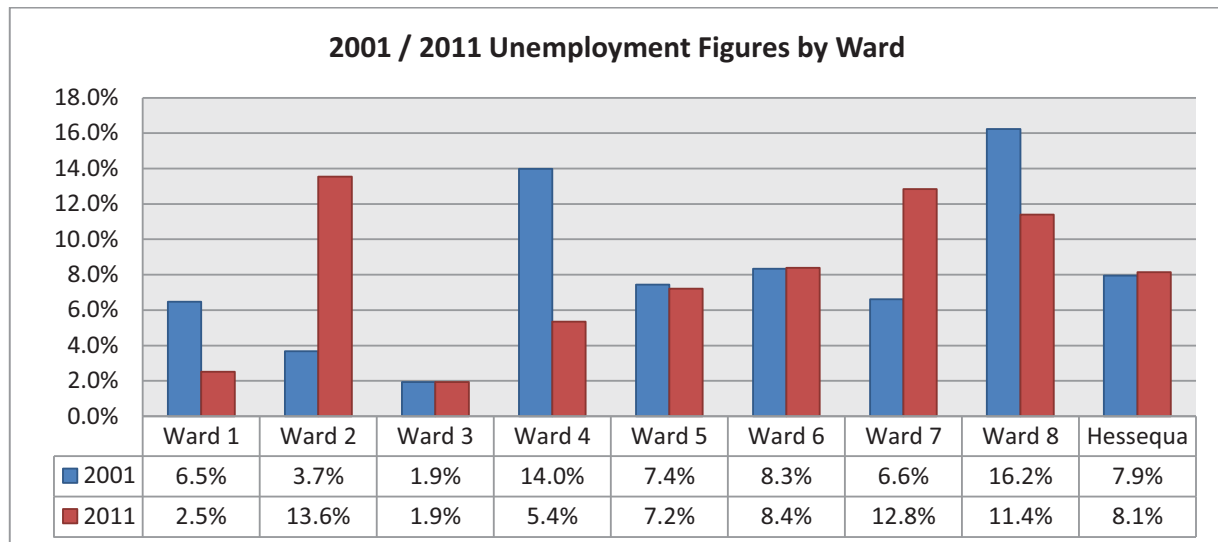


Figure 18 - Employment by Sector

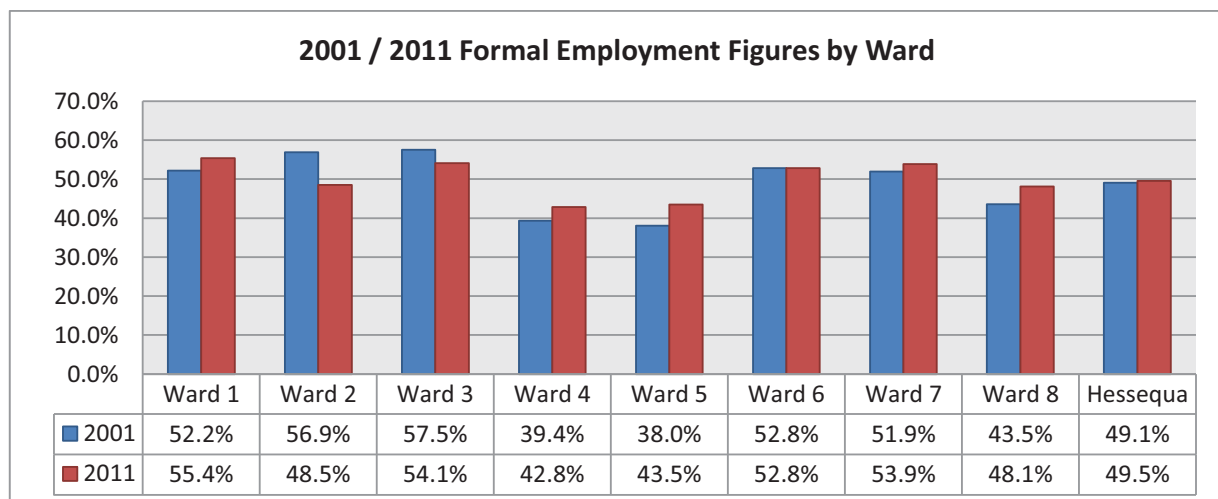
The above figure shows the employment percentages by employment sector. The low percentages in the formal sector is troublesome to note. A second issue that needs attention is the vast percentages of

people represented by the “not applicable” category. Also important to note is that these figures are all based on the official definitions of employment.



**Figure 19 - Unemployment Figures, Official Definition**

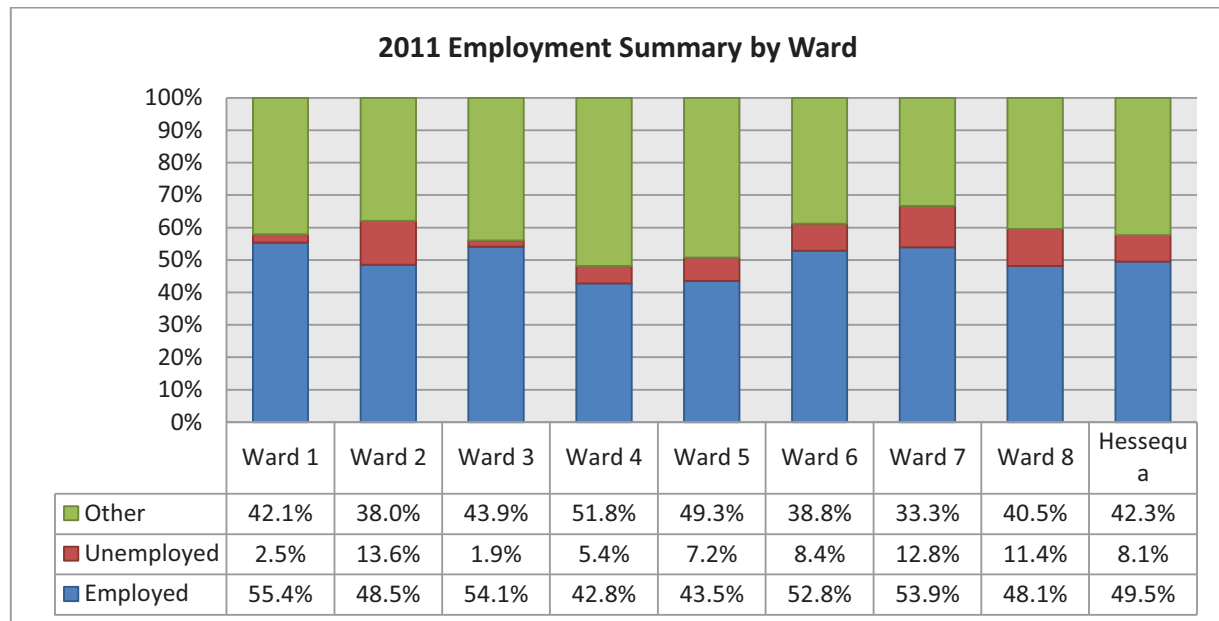
The official definition of unemployment could sometimes be a bit of a controversial subject, but these figures show clearly that in Hessequa unemployment went up in general to 8.1%. Ward 4 showed an immense decline in unemployment, which is comforting to see, but in ward 2 and 7 these figures are troublesome to note a strong growth in unemployment.



**Figure 20 - Formal Employment**

The figure above shows the percentage of population per ward who is formally employed, irrelevant of which sector. This seems to be in contrast to the unemployment growth and decline on the previous page, which is a clear indicator of economic activity which does not form part of the formal economy. An informal economy that might possibly be employing people, or being economic inactive. The following

figure shows this phenomenon in a more summarised manner. Vast amount of people within the communities of Hessequa cannot be categorised as employed or unemployed.

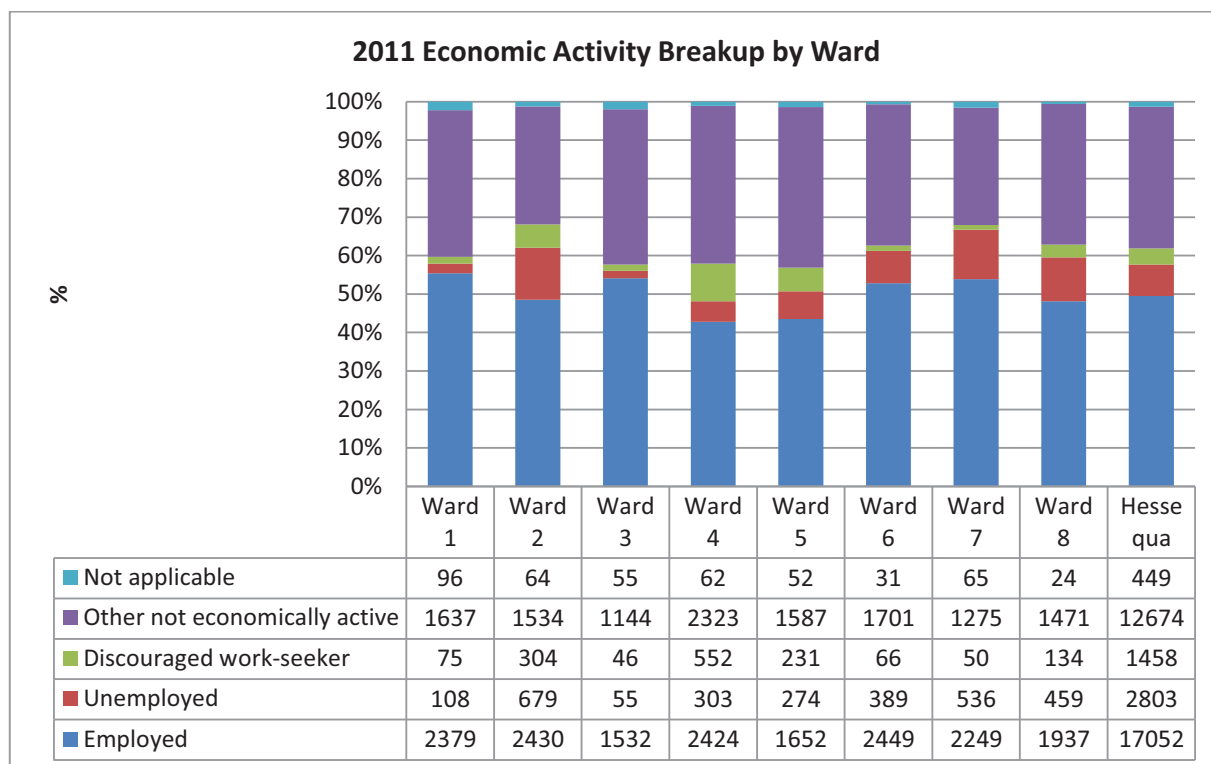


**Figure 21 - Employment Summary by Ward**

One of the most important outcomes of this profile is Figure 31. It highlights the inefficiency of the conventional “employed/unemployed” measurement. It shows that more than 42% of the labour force cannot be categorised either employed, or unemployed.

There are various factors that are playing a role in these figures. Social grants are possibly the biggest factor, but another phenomenon is that of informal trade. The so-called “informal economy” has become a method of survival for households to secure their own livelihood.

As a result of this inefficiency of measurement, a well-defined project to quantify the reality of the informal economy is advised.



**Figure 22 - Economic Activity by Ward**

It is important to note the breakup of the composition in economic activity. As councillors and officials, many excuses and complaints are heard about the conditions in which people live. The fact is however, when a clear framework is given, such as the formal definitions of employed, unemployed, etcetera, it is hard to argue the statistics coming from a census, or even a statistically sound sample survey. There are various factors influencing this reality which is displayed in the figure above, but this profile does not seek to engage these factors, but would like to create the platform for robust debate concerning this information and the factors which shape our communities.



### Household Tenure Status

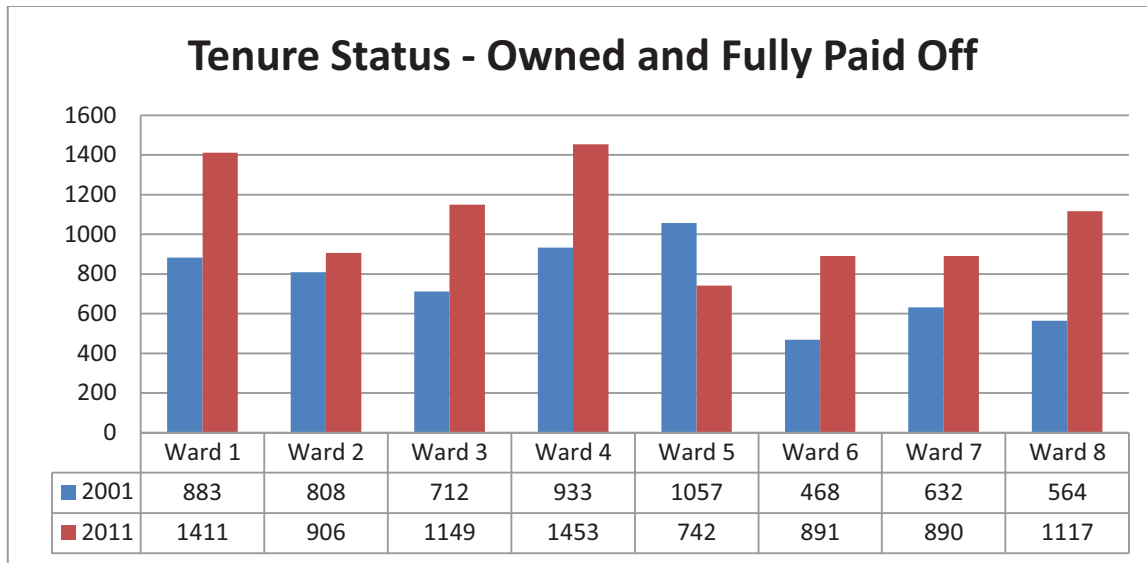


Figure 23 - Tenure Status, Owned and Paid Off Fully

The figures containing information of tenure status can be confusing, as it does not represent percentages that can be compared to one another. It is important to then look at each figure on its own and look at the amounts. The graphs only display the numbers graphically and does not illustrate the statistics within the context of the other indicators listed in this section. Figure 14 shows that the amount of fully paid off households increased in every ward throughout Hessequa region.

Figure 15 shows the amount of people living in a residential unit which is owned but not yet paid off. The statistics differ depending on ward.

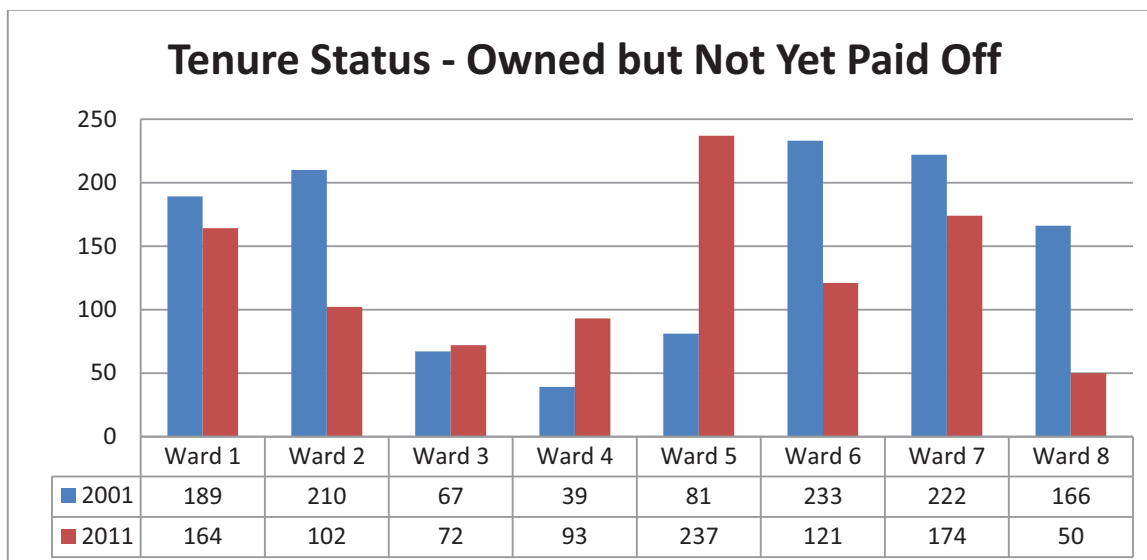
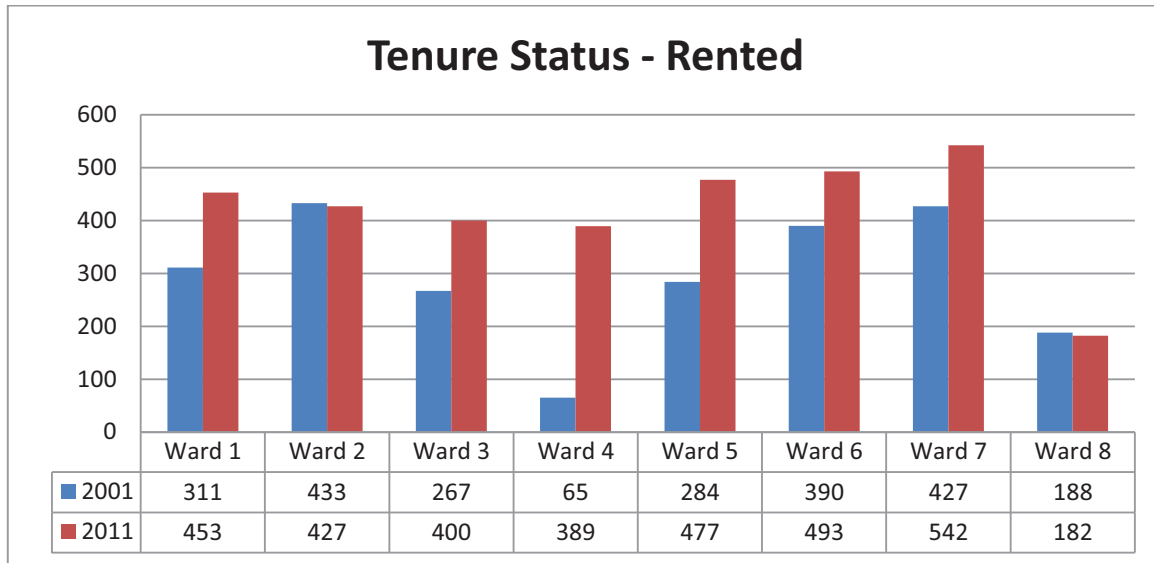
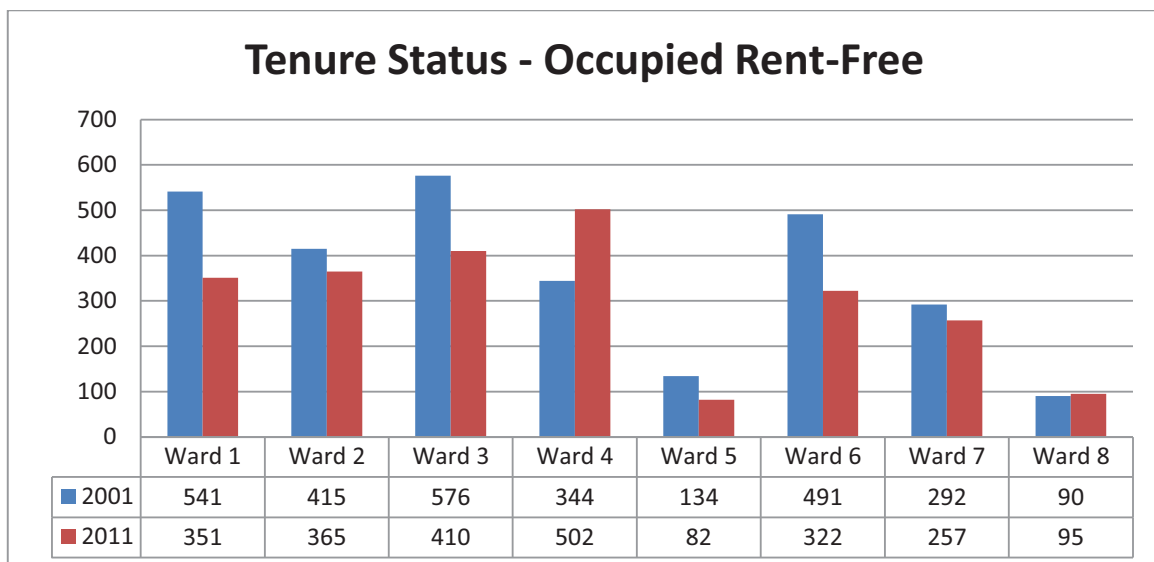


Figure 24 - Tenure Status, Owned but not yet Paid Off



**Figure 25 - Tenure Status - Rented**

Figure 16 shows the amount of households making use of rental units. Once again we see the impact of a population that is growing in general with a sharp increase in demand for rental units. However this is not true for communities in Ward 8 and 2. This could be due to 2 very large low-cost housing projects being completed in these wards with people receiving ownership of their houses.



**Figure 26 - Tenure Status - Occupied Rent Free**

Figure 17 shows the amount of households being occupied by residents without paying any rent. The amount differs vastly between wards with wards 4 being affected the most.

### Household Services Profile of Hessequa

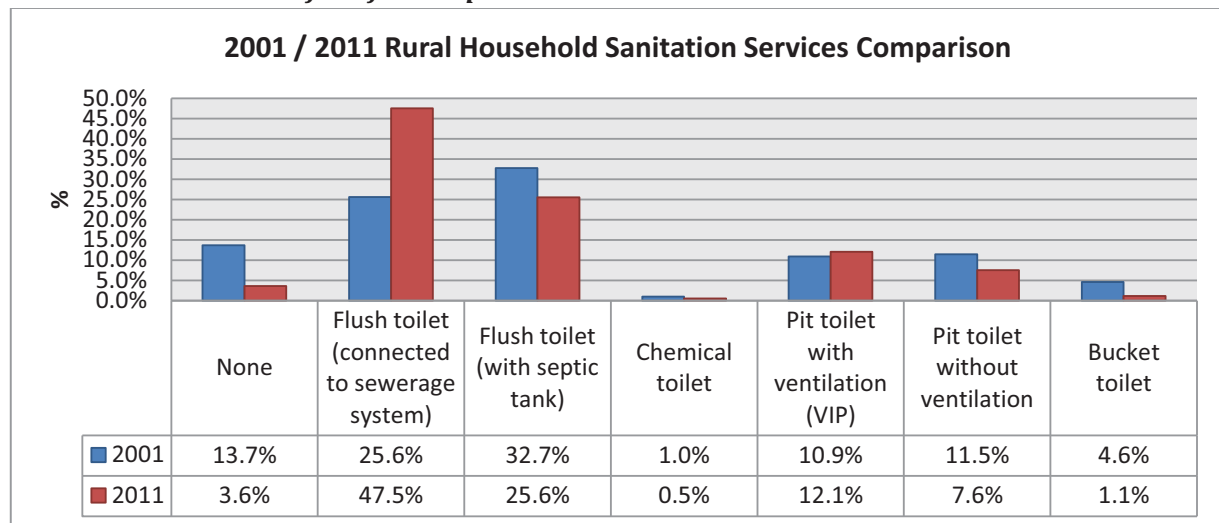


Figure 27 - Rural Household Sanitation Services

As already mentioned, Hessequa consists of large rural areas and would it be important to separate the services profile between rural and urban. Many times the services profile differs vastly between urban and rural areas and if it is not separated, the general standard of service delivery, in urban areas specifically, would be negatively affected. On the other hand it might be interpreted that most areas do not have service delivery issues, but the rural households in general are far worse off than the average urban household in terms of services rendered. We do however see a vast improvement in rural sanitation services from 2001. The amount of households making use of a flush toilet system doubled and the amount of households making use of illegal bucket systems are less than a quarter of what was in 2001

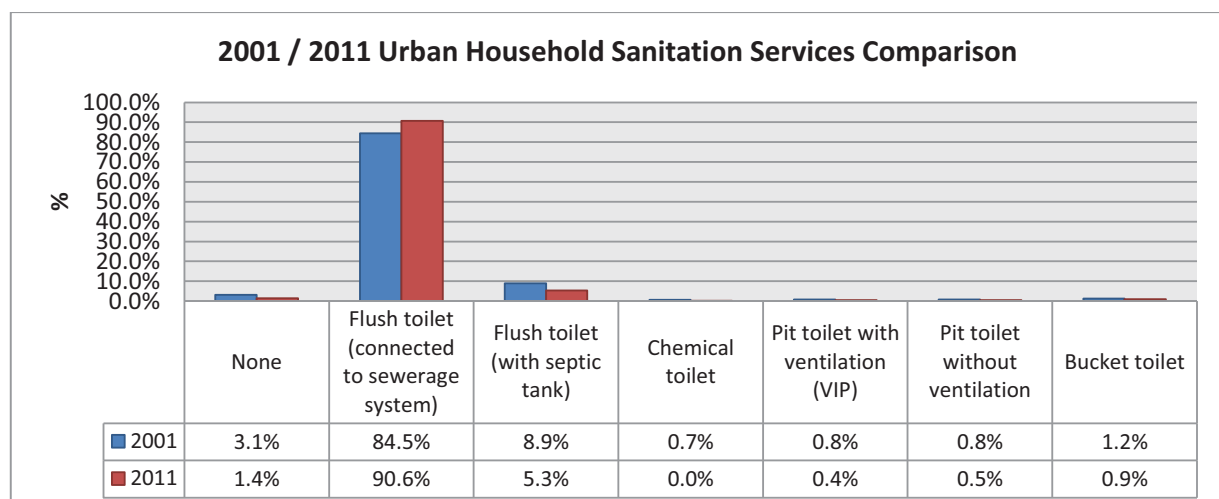
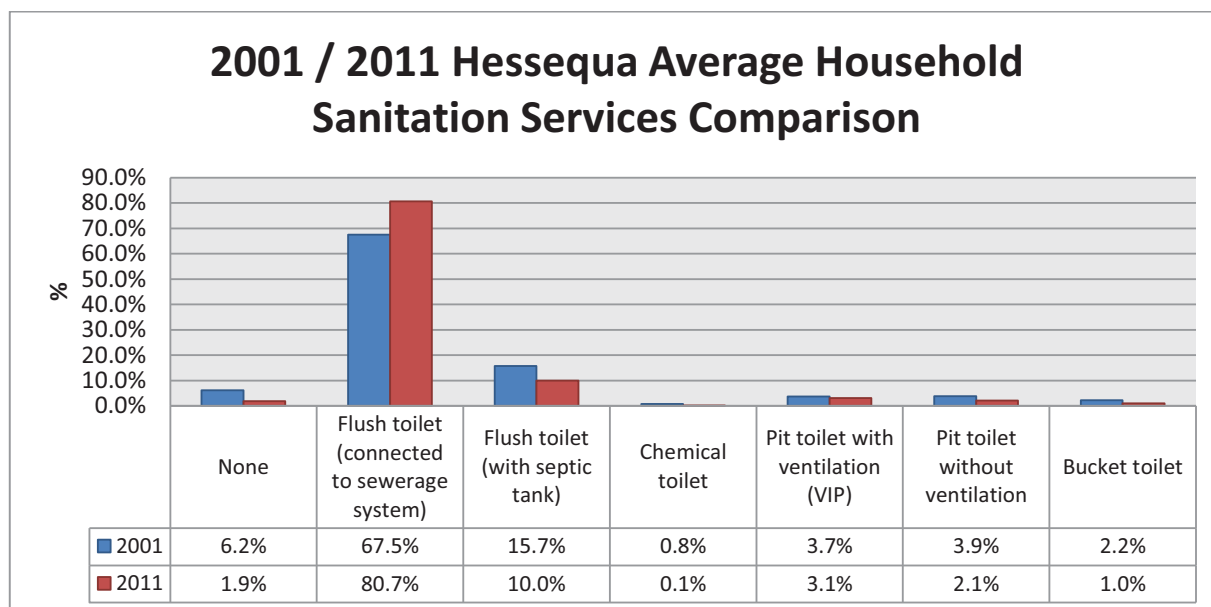


Figure 28 - Urban Household Sanitation Services

In terms of urban areas, a growth to almost 91% for water born sanitation systems realised by 2011.



**Figure 29 - Hessequa Average Household Sanitation Services**

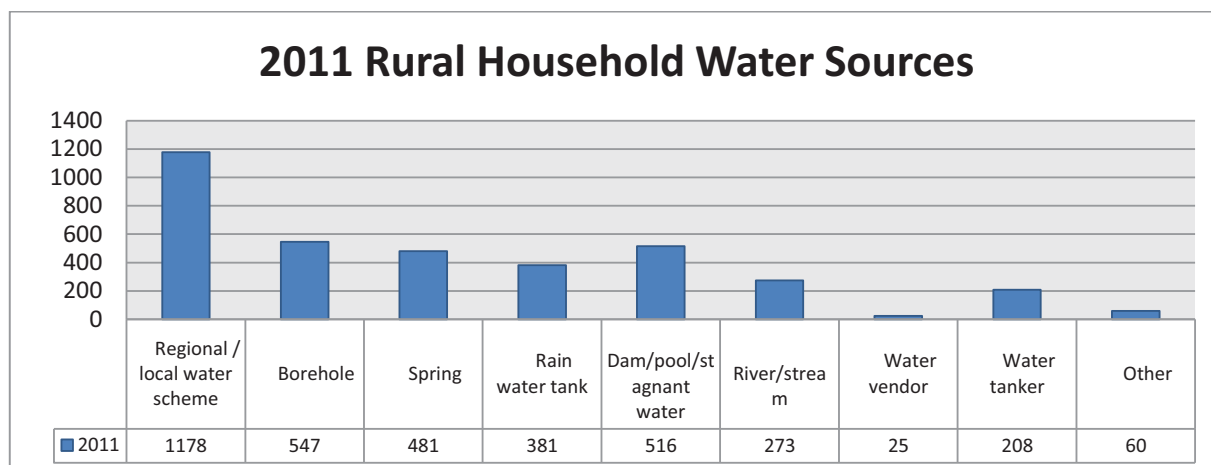
Figure 20 shows the general figures for the Hessequa region and immediately it is clear how the realities of the rural areas almost vanish as the overall picture does look good. In other words, it remains important to separate urban and rural figures when it comes to services rendered as the municipality is only directly responsible for the urban residents. This should be used to measure performance of a local council, but on the other hand the importance of development in rural areas can be isolated and focused on as an issue that needs desperate attention.

For more detailed information about sanitation services broken down in ward levels as well, please refer to Table 2 on the following page.

Table 2 - 2001 / 2011 Detailed Household Sanitation Services Comparison

2001 / 2011 Detailed Household Sanitation Services Comparison																		
	Ward 1		Ward 2		Ward 3		Ward 4		Ward 5		Ward 6		Ward 7		Ward 8		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
<b>Rural</b>																		
None	65	44	128	18	85	29	37	22	21	0	70	7	89	11	0	0	496	133
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	42	292	70	103	181	291	58	526	36	23	314	94	228	414	0	0	929	1743
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	294	232	249	132	287	236	221	44	21	0	93	212	24	80	0	0	1189	937
Chemical toilet	0	3	0	0	6	10	28	3	0	0	0	0	3	4	0	0	37	20
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	97	46	35	82	172	134	24	91	18	11	39	48	12	31	0	0	397	443
Pit toilet without ventilation	62	45	151	32	81	110	84	26	6	1	3	45	30	18	0	0	417	277
Bucket toilet	6	18	42	0	60	7	0	4	0	2	25	4	33	5	0	0	167	41
<b>Total</b>	566	696	675	371	872	829	451	725	102	48	545	415	420	582	0	0	3631	3667
<b>Urban</b>																		
None	6	28	9	12	27	2	30	49	45	2	128	29	6	34	31	8	282	166
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	1232	1530	955	2054	732	933	679	1118	960	1407	933	1324	1145	1280	961	1418	7596	11064
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	139	123	212	80	3	76	53	164	371	99	3	11	0	86	18	13	799	652
Chemical toilet	3	0	0	1	0	0	50	0	3	1	0	0	3	1	0	0	59	3
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	3	1	6	2	3	2	55	34	6	7	0	3	0	0	0	3	73	52
Pit toilet without ventilation	0	2	18	1	0	0	45	30	3	5	3	8	3	3	0	9	72	59
Bucket toilet	0	14	0	1	9	0	15	9	81	24	0	47	3	4	3	10	111	110
<b>Total</b>	1383	1729	1201	2151	774	1016	927	1434	1468	1547	1067	1433	1160	1422	1013	1474	8993	12206
<b>Total</b>																		
None	71	73	137	30	112	32	67	72	66	2	198	37	95	46	31	8	778	299
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	1274	1822	1026	2157	913	1224	737	1644	996	1431	1247	1418	1373	1693	961	1418	8526	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	433	355	462	213	290	312	274	209	392	99	96	223	24	167	18	13	1988	1589
Chemical toilet	3	3	0	1	6	10	78	3	3	1	0	0	6	6	0	0	96	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	100	47	41	84	175	136	79	126	24	18	39	51	12	31	0	3	470	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	62	47	169	33	81	110	129	56	9	6	6	53	33	21	0	9	489	336
Bucket toilet	6	32	42	1	69	7	15	14	81	27	25	51	36	8	3	10	278	151
<b>Total</b>	1949	2425	1876	2522	1646	1845	1379	2160	1570	1595	1612	1848	1580	2004	1013	1474	12624	15873

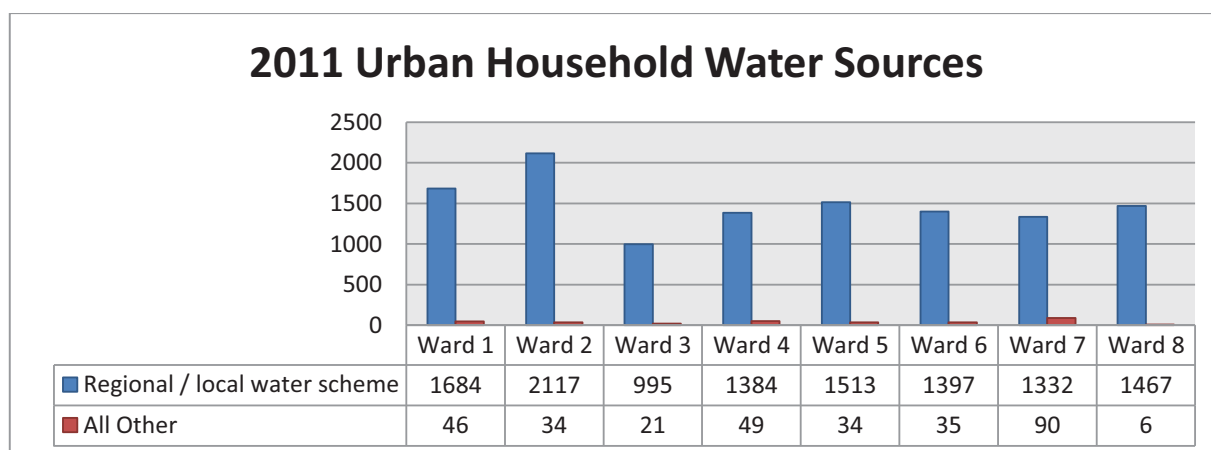
Table 2 displays the amounts of households per category, per ward and also for rural, urban and the Hessequa region. Here the decline in rural households are clearly visible with a total of 3631 of the 2001 total of 12 624, which was roughly a third of all households of Hessequa. This number increased barely to 3667, but equates only to about a quarter of the 15 873 households of 2011.



**Figure 30 - Rural Household Water Sources**

Figure 21 clearly shows the backlogs in terms of water services in the rural areas. Various sources are made use of by households in the rural area. When compared to urban water services, Figure 22 shows the number of households making use of water provided by a services operator.

These figures only denote the 2011 information as a comparison between 2001 and 2011 is not possible due to the indicators being very different from one another. During the 2001 census questions about how far the water source was away from the household was included, but in the 2011 census no reference to distance was made part of the questionnaire.



**Figure 31 - Urban Household Water Sources**

On the following page a detailed breakdown of the rural and urban household statistics are listed in table format for comparing ward information.

Table 3 - 2011 Rural Household Water Sources

2011 Rural Household Water Sources

2011	Ward 1	Ward 2	Ward 3	Ward 4	Ward 5	Ward 6	Ward 7	Ward 8	Total
Regional / local water scheme	44	11	264	618	9	34	197	0	1178
Borehole	273	24	222	7	0	5	17	0	547
Spring	187	47	79	0	1	43	124	0	481
Rain water tank	52	143	92	36	0	28	29	0	381
Dam/pool/stagnant water	69	25	64	32	21	171	134	0	516
River/stream	11	75	63	2	6	83	33	0	273
Water vendor	3	2	7	3	0	9	1	0	25
Water tanker	47	45	26	10	9	37	32	0	208
Other	10	1	10	17	1	4	16	0	60
Total	696	371	829	725	48	415	582	0	3667

Table 4 - 2011 Urban Household Water Sources

2011 Urban Household Water Sources

2011	Ward 1	Ward 2	Ward 3	Ward 4	Ward 5	Ward 6	Ward 7	Ward 8	Total
Regional / local water scheme	1684	2117	995	1384	1513	1397	1332	1467	11888
All Other	46	34	21	49	34	35	90	6	317
Borehole	7	8	2	3	1	3	7	1	32
Spring	7	5	0	3	2	0	16	1	35
Rain water tank	5	7	1	1	2	1	6	1	24
Dam/pool/stagnant water	8	0	12	28	18	9	18	0	92
River/stream	2	0	0	0	0	2	2	1	7
Water vendor	3	4	3	0	3	1	24	0	38
Water tanker	12	9	1	3	2	8	14	1	51
Other	2	1	2	11	6	11	3	1	38
Total	1729	2151	1016	1434	1547	1433	1422	1474	12206

Refuse removal is not a service that is rendered to rural communities, but it is important to separate the rural and urban statistics to get a clear picture of the levels of service delivery in the urban areas as all information is demarcated in wards

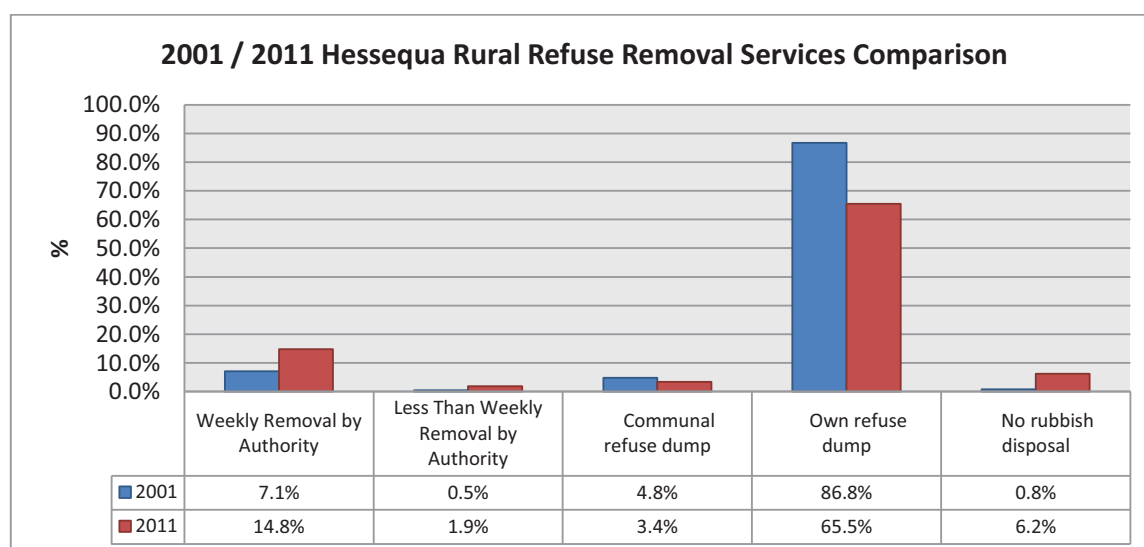
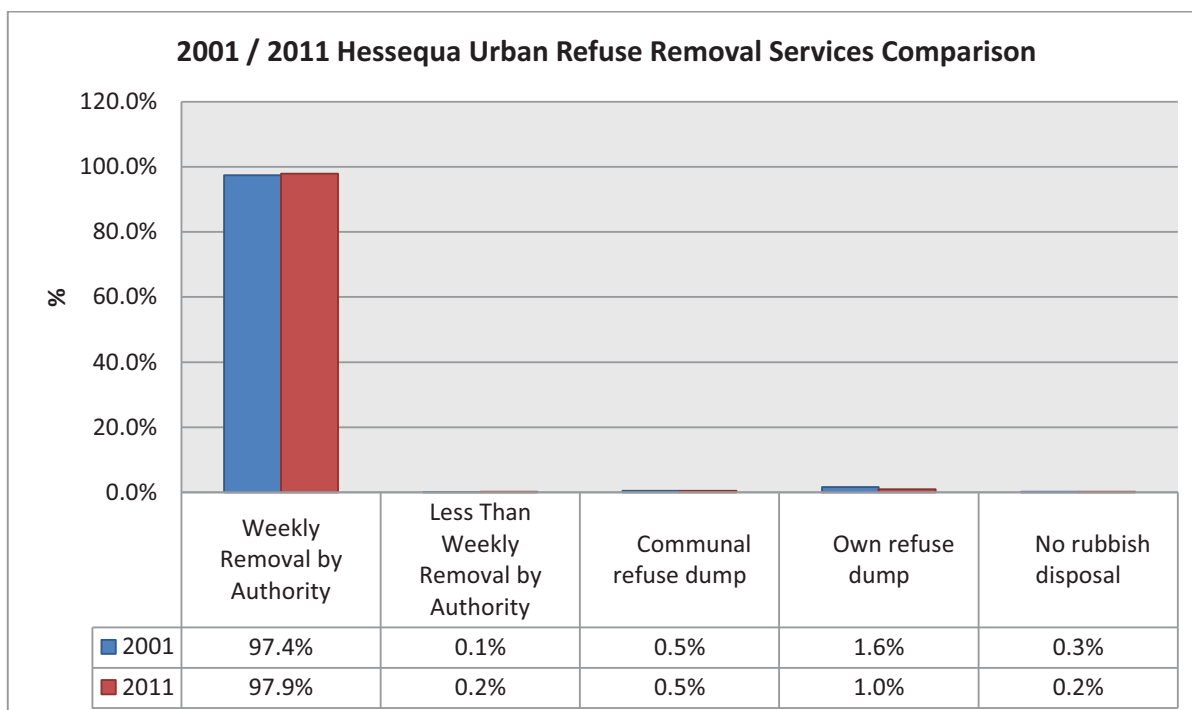


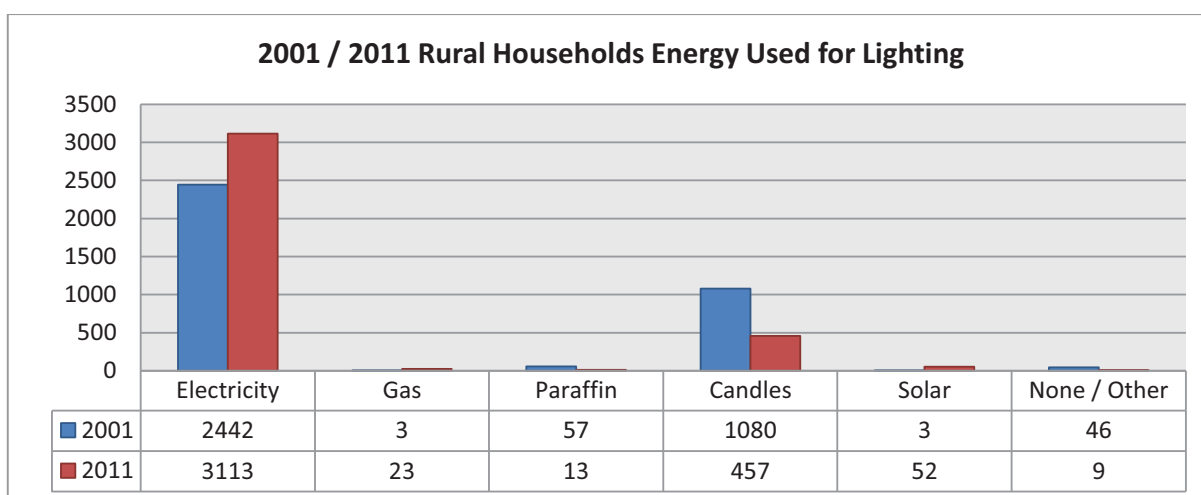
Figure 32 - Rural Refuse Removal





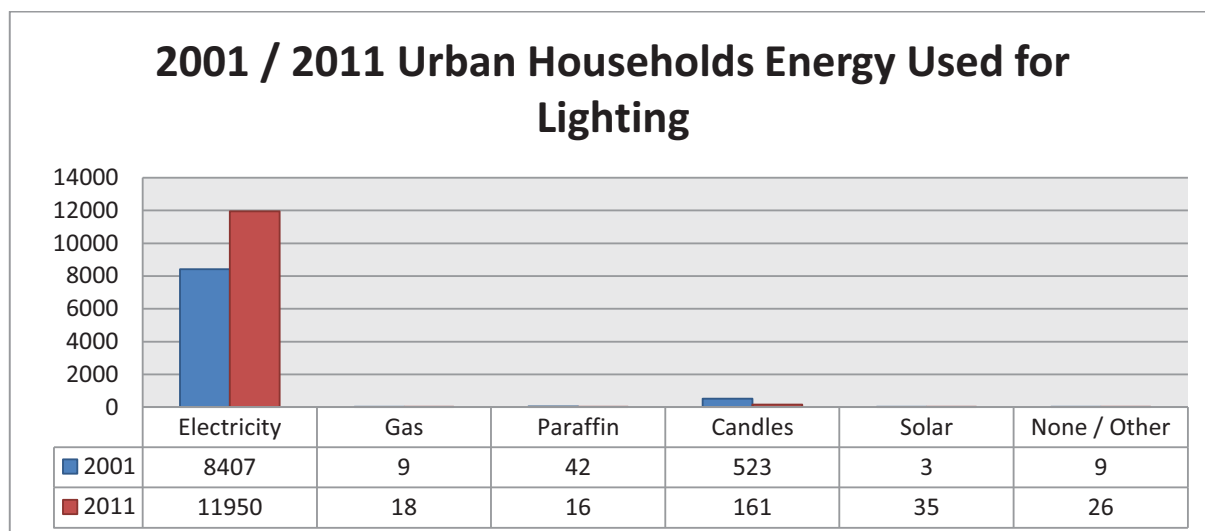
**Figure 33 - Urban Refuse Removal**

Hessequa has always been proud of the high quality of refuse removal services it renders to its communities. It is good to notice the slight improvement from 97.4% to 97.9% in weekly removal throughout the financial year.



**Figure 34 - Rural Households Energy Used for Lighting**

In terms of the energy used for lighting in rural areas it is comforting to see the rapid decline in the amount of households which uses candles as primary energy source for lighting. It is also interesting to note the rise in amount of solar or alternative energy usage in households. A decline in paraffin usage is also noted.



**Figure 35 - Urban Households Energy Used for Lighting**

In terms of urban households energy usage for lighting, the sharp rise in electricity usage and decline in the amount of households making use of candles is a vast improvement. Once more the usage of alternative energy sources have improved.

The table on following page gives a detailed breakdown of energy usage statistics for Hessequa by ward.

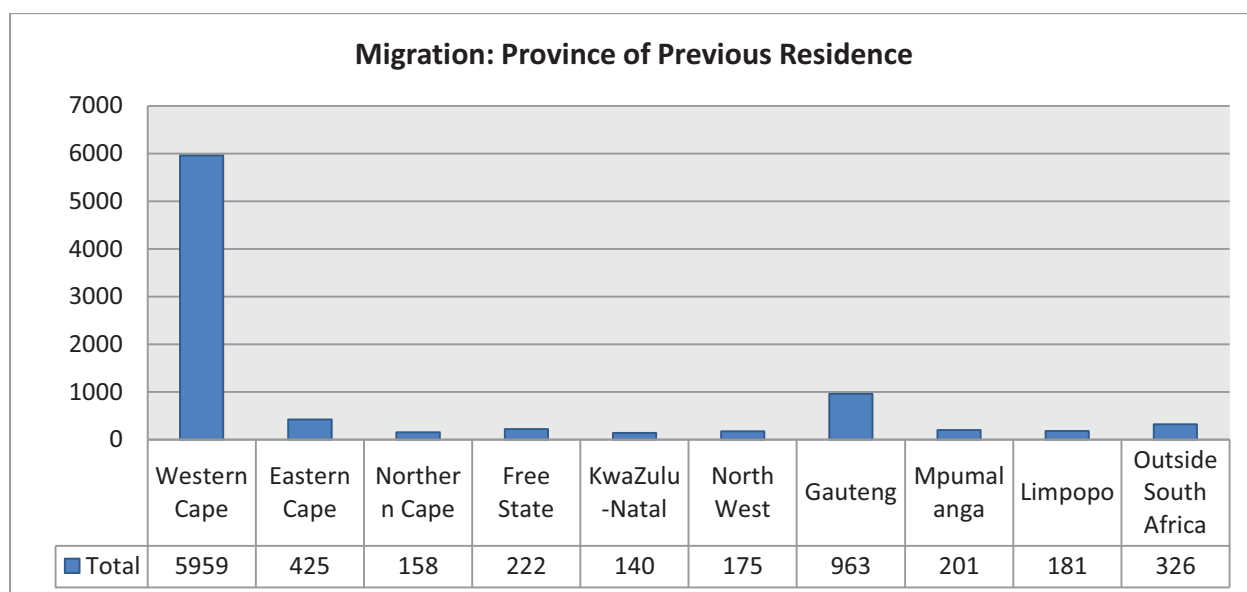
Table 5 - 2001 / 2011 Household Energy for Lighting Comparison

2001 / 2011 Household Energy for Lighting Comparison

	Ward 1		Ward 2		Ward 3		Ward 4		Ward 5		Ward 6		Ward 7		Ward 8		Total	
Rural																		
Electricity	381	546	416	310	543	651	321	661	66	40	401	373	315	532	0	0	2442	3113
Gas	0	5	3	3	0	8	0	4	0	0	0	2	0	2	0	0	3	23
Paraffin	12	10	21	0	3	1	3	1	6	0	12	0	0	0	0	0	57	13
Candles	167	106	229	57	299	148	128	53	30	8	128	39	99	45	0	0	1080	457
Solar	0	29	3	0	0	17	0	2	0	0	0	1	0	3	0	0	3	52
None / Other	6	0	3	2	28	5	0	3	0	0	3	0	6	0	0	0	46	9
Total	566	696	675	371	872	829	451	725	102	48	545	415	420	582	0	0	3631	3667
Urban																		
Electricity	1338	1665	1168	2113	726	1011	790	1397	1305	1512	1037	1406	1112	1389	931	1457	8407	11950
Gas	0	2	0	7	0	2	0	3	6	1	0	0	3	1	0	1	9	18
Paraffin	9	4	0	0	3	0	6	0	15	0	0	9	0	3	9	0	42	16
Candles	33	35	33	20	45	2	129	27	142	29	30	16	45	23	67	9	523	161
Solar	0	15	0	5	0	1	0	3	0	2	0	2	0	3	3	5	3	35
None / Other	3	7	0	7	0	0	3	5	0	2	0	0	0	3	3	2	9	26
Total	1383	1729	1201	2151	774	1016	927	1434	1468	1547	1067	1433	1160	1422	1013	1474	8993	12206

## Migration

Migration plays an important role in terms of the Hessequa population landscape. The following indicators attempt to create a profile of who, from where and how much are migrating into the Hessequa region.



## Summary and Important Notes

To summarise the profile, the following few notes and comments are stated. It does not seek to encompass all the realities of this profile, but rather focus on issues that most probably will impact planning processes in a municipal context.

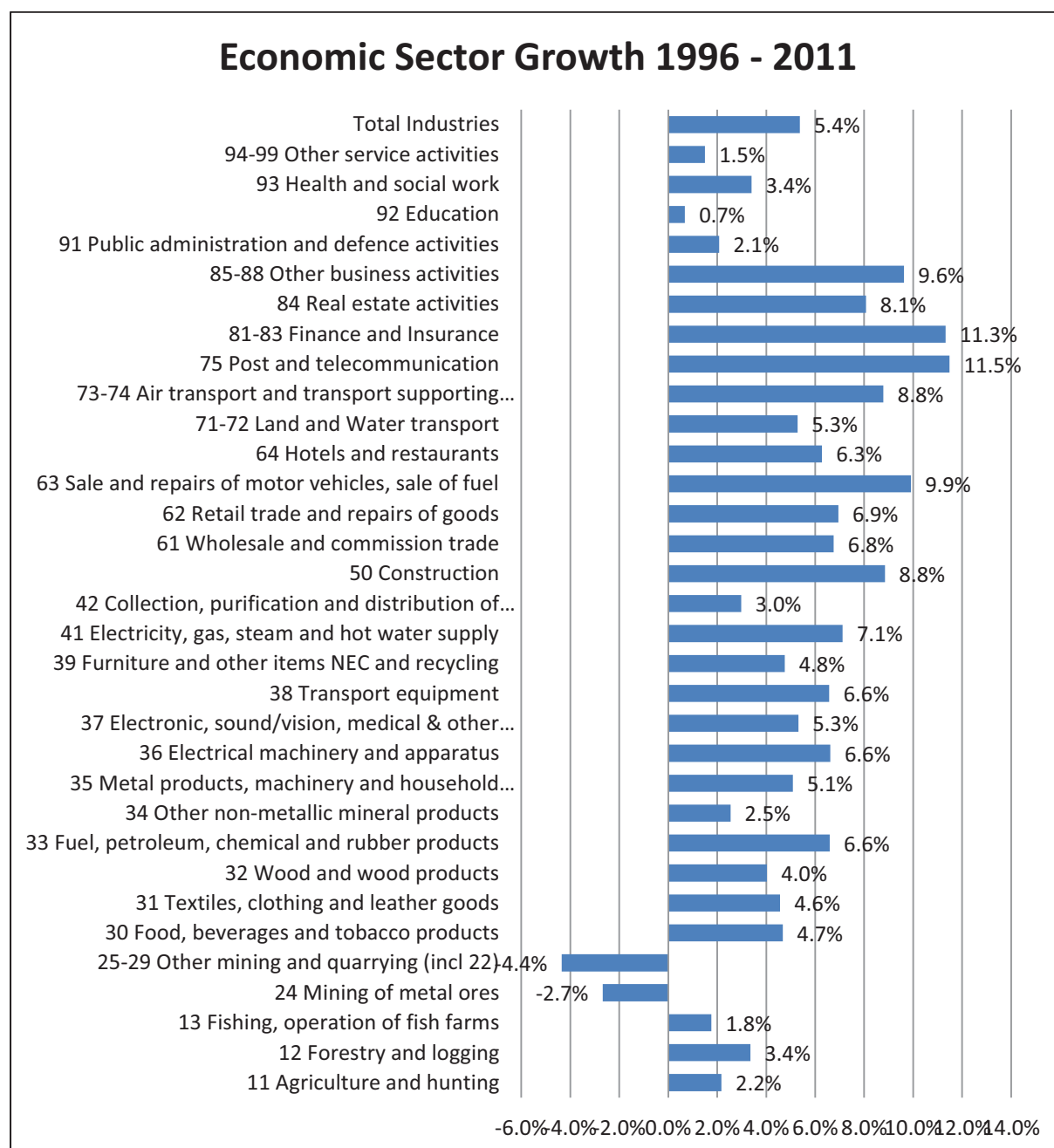
1. **Growth.** A positive population growth in Hessequa of 16.19% was recorded for the 2001 – 2011 period. Wards 4 and 5 needs to be singled out as areas where deeper analysis is needed for a clearer picture concerning population migration within the community, but crossing ward borders.
2. **Education.** In general it is a positive picture that is created of the Hessequa educational levels. However it is important to highlight Ward 2 in displaying a significant growth in children and youth, but recording a negative growth in terms of education levels.
3. **Rural Growth.** From the figures it is clearly visible that during the past 10 years a vast amount of people migrated from the rural areas into urban environments. Various factors contribute to this, but issues relating to this needs to be considered in planning and interaction with the various role-players in the Hessequa community.
4. **Rural Development.** As the figures have shown, rural residents have access to much less services and opportunities than an urban resident. Even though municipalities receive a minor tax income from land owners, the future of rural residents needs to be considered in developmental planning.
5. **Household Gender Growth.** As the figures show, there was a large increase in the amount of female headed households. Without trying to enforce a historically male dominated approach, it is important to discuss the effect of policies on the social fabric of any community. Female headed households are in many examples also single parents which,

according to welfare institutions, are not the best environment to raise the leaders of tomorrow.

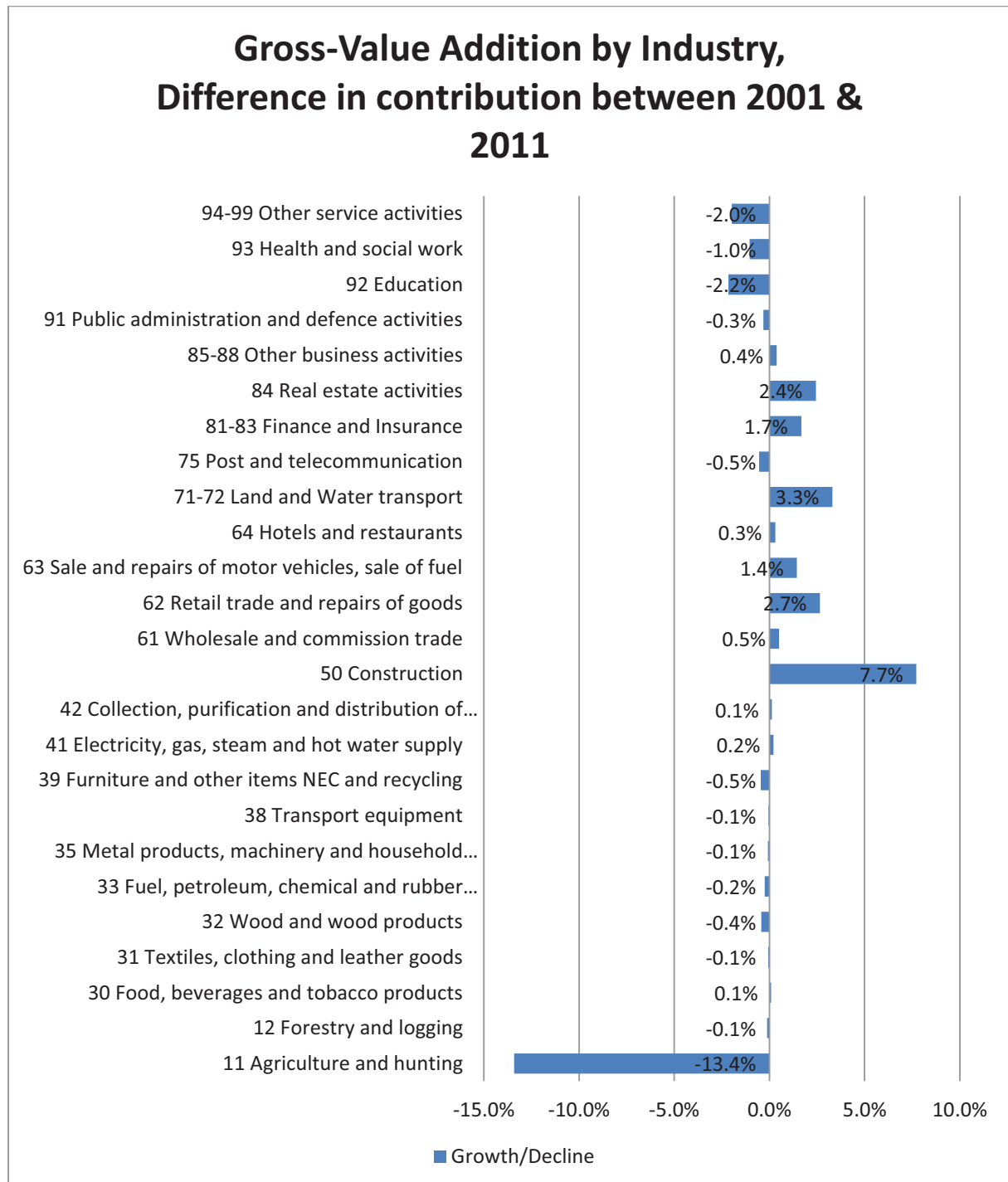
6. **Employment / Economic Activity.** Even with the growth of unemployment to 8.1% for 2011, it is still about half the official unemployment rate of the country. It seems that labour absorption is slow in growth and should the analysis of these economic indicators be considered as a separate process. It is shocking that 42% of the labour force of Hessequa cannot be classified as employed or unemployed. A clear profile of how households do earn an income is needed and should the Social Grant figures also be considered. An in-depth study of the informal economy is advised.

## ANALYSIS OF HESSEQUA – OUR ECONOMY

The Hessequa economy serves as the life line of sustainability in the region and have been facing immense challenges in the last decade. International economic climates, international markets, national policies and national economic activities have all affected the Hessequa economy to certain extents. This is clearly visible when the various sectors are considered in terms of growth. The following chart identifies the economic growth in total and the growth of individual sectors over the designated period of 15 years. Even though the growth is important, the size of each sector needs to be considered as well. In general we find that it isn't the conventional primary, secondary and tertiary sectors that experienced the highest growth

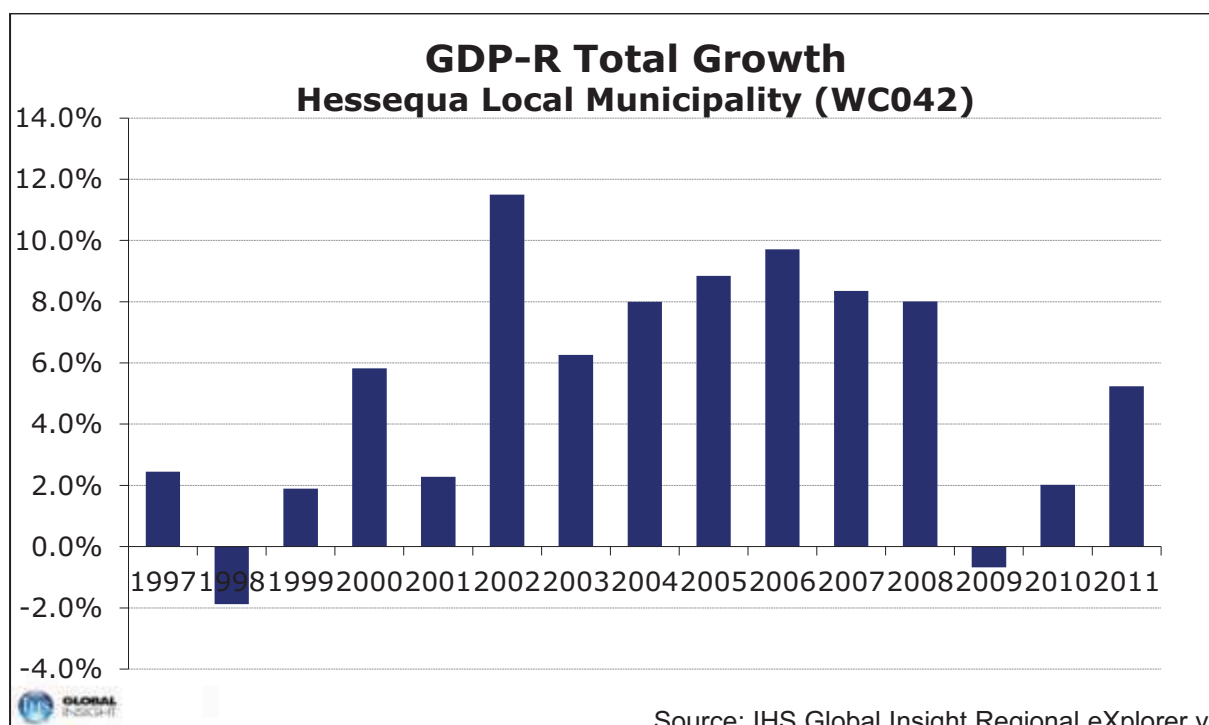


In the following chart we find a comparison between industries in the Hessequa economy and calculating the difference in contribution between 2001 and 2011 financial years. This does not show total growth, but contribution compared to all industries. Industries that did not show a change in contribution was removed from the list of industries. The most important factor that needs to be identified and considered from this graph is the decline in contribution to the Hessequa economy by the Agricultural sector. Even though it has grown over the past 15 years by 2.2%, it declined in economic contribution by 13.4%.





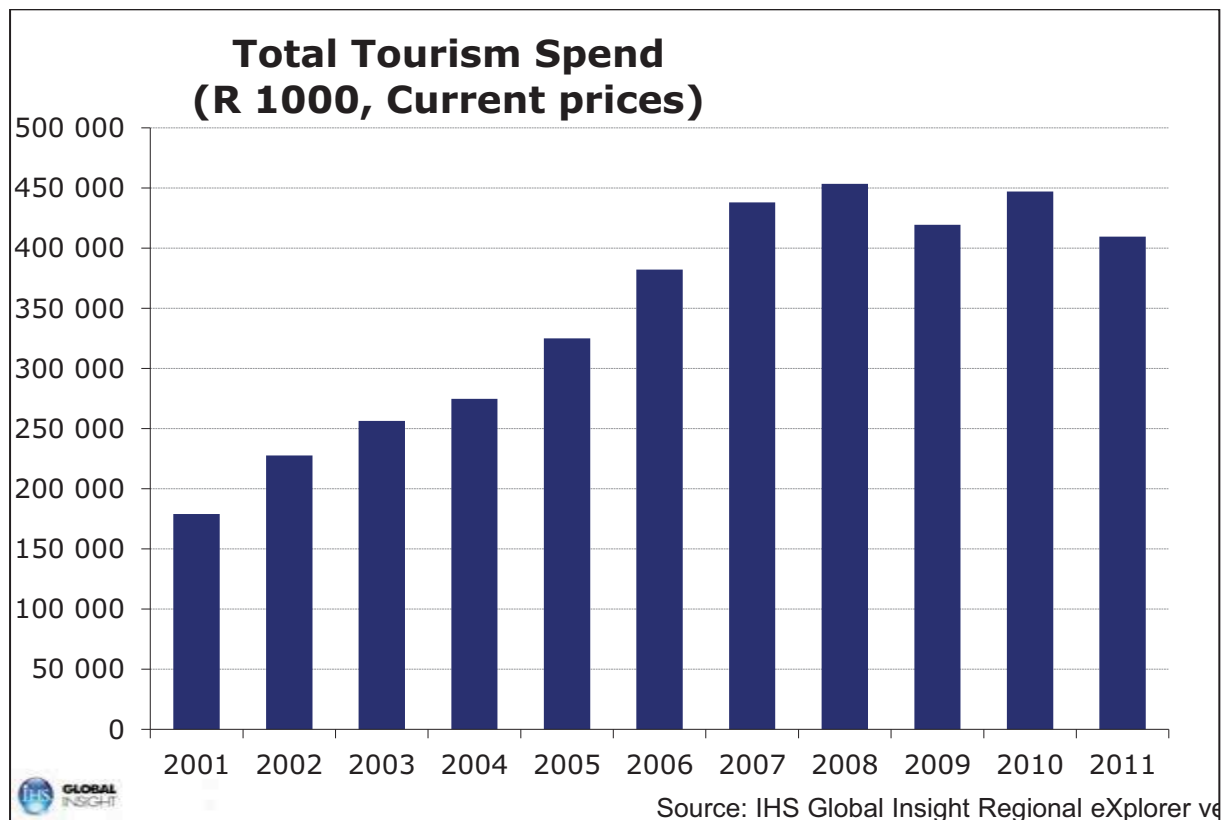
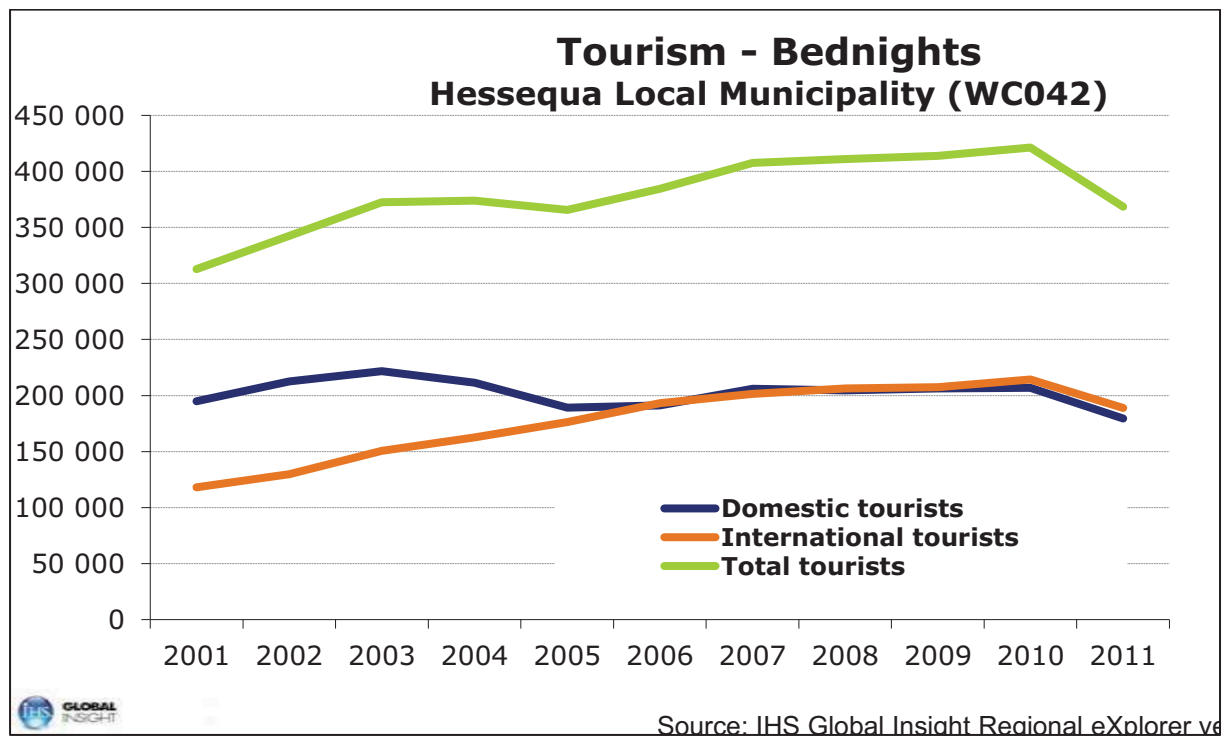
The following graph shows the Gross Domestic Product of the Hessequa region(GDP-R) over the past 15 years. Once again the impact of the world recession is visible from 2009.

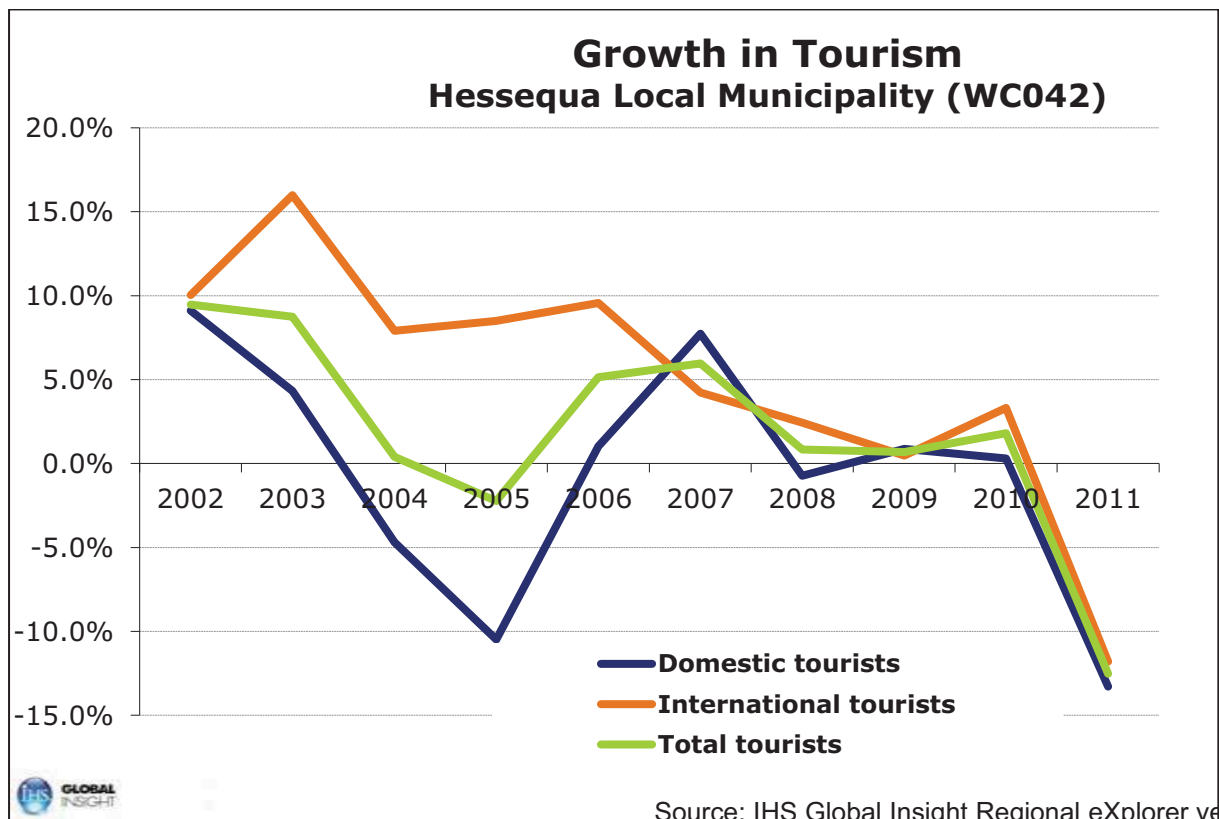


The following table shows the international trade activities, measured in Rand value, by the various economic sector activities. The globalisation effect of the South African economy is clearly visible in the economy of Hessequa. To the benefit of the exporters, but also visible in the gaps of local production when imports are needed.

International Trade by Sector (Rand value)				
Sector	Imports		Exports	
	2001	2011	2001	2011
11 Agriculture and hunting	0	144 754	17 320	7 476 570
12 Forestry and logging	0	66 742	0	1 856 961
13 Fishing, operation of fish farms	0	43 183	0	0
30 Food, beverages and tobacco products	0	54 124	27 354	178 471
31 Textiles, clothing and leather goods	57 933	1 876 011	0	0
32 Wood and wood products	91 950	2 853 386	0	2 233 062
33 Fuel, petroleum, chemical and rubber products	28 740	3 266 849	10 413	803 149
34 Other non-metallic mineral products	0	89 965	0	0
35 Metal products, machinery and household appliances	657 759	9 471 458	0	1 134 957
36 Electrical machinery and apparatus	0	262 834	0	0
37 Electronic, sound/vision, medical & other appliances	2 764 512	258 869	367 250	0
38 Transport equipment	0	4 587 147	0	1 347 720
39 Furniture and other items NEC and recycling	79 135	1 053 263	0	433 712
Other unclassified goods	0	0	65 554	29 996
<b>Total</b>	<b>3 680 029</b>	<b>24 028 585</b>	<b>487 891</b>	<b>15 494 598</b>

Tourism is seen as an important sector in the local economy to be developed. However it does give itself as a potential sector for growth, the following charts indicate that the current tourism sector is experiencing extreme strain.





The few tables and charts above clearly shows how rapidly the Hessequa economy can change over the timeframe of 10 years. It also show the unfortunate reality of vulnerability to external factors of the international and national economy.

Even though the economic picture of Hessequa might seem not to positive, there are however important things to note. A constant growth overall was achieved over the past 15 years. Even though it might not be very high, it does show that the economy is changing and growing in different areas in the midst of traditional primary sectors showing weak growth. It shows that the Hessequa economy is diversifying and services such as financial services are becoming an important factor as the high quality of life in Hessequa is a strong quality that appeals to the employers in this sector.

For more detail concerning the economic realities in Hessequa, the Economic Development Strategy of Hessequa Municipality is a rich source of information concerning the local economy within a regional economy.

## ANALYSIS OF HESSEQUA –OUR ENVIRONMENT

The word biodiversity is used to mean the variety of life on our planet, measurable as the variety within species, between species, and the variety of ecosystems. South Africa has a very substantial share of global biodiversity within its borders, ranking third of any country in the world. Owing to its variety of landscapes between the scenic coastlines across the Langeberg to the Little Karoo, Hessequa makes a meaningful contribution to this biodiversity.

Our biological heritage is important to us in many ways – providing us with ecosystem services like clean water, contributing directly to the economy through industries like fishing and tourism, supporting livelihoods by providing food, medicines and building materials and generally improving our health and well-being. The value of biological diversity has three components:

- 1) Many species have a direct value through the products that can be harvested, for instance, many medicines used throughout the world have active ingredients extracted from plants and animals.
- 2) The pollination of agricultural crops by insects is an example of the indirect value where aspects of biodiversity bring economic benefit without the need to consume the resource.
- 3) There is also an ethical value to the diversity of life. Although it does not always lend itself to economic valuation in monetary terms, we still appreciate the beauty of the rose flower.

Through the most powerful human influence, habitat destruction and ill-conceived developments, biodiversity is under threat world-wide. The focus is frequently on the accelerated rate of disappearance of a species in the face of human influence. Species are lost at a rate never seen before in the fossil record of Earth. To counteract this mass extinction, conservation action is needed that is effective in maintaining the ecosystem services (e.g. fishing, grazing, clean water and air) provided by high levels of biodiversity.

Biodiversity encompasses more than just species richness. We should ensure that we protect representatives of as many types of community and ecosystem as possible. By conserving suitable habitat we are also improving the survival chances of the species and populations contained therein. Living landscapes preserve the option value of biodiversity – the potential to provide benefits in the future. To protect biodiversity effectively, we need to conserve (Driver *et al.*, 2003):

- A representative sample of all biodiversity; and
- The ecological and evolutionary processes that allow this biodiversity to persist over time.

The systematic approach to conservation planning involves setting quantitative conservation targets, for instance the number of hectares of river corridor that need to be set aside to remain undeveloped. Quantitative conservation targets show how much we need to conserve in order to achieve the goal of living landscapes. This chapter explores how close we have come to this goal in Hessequa.

### ***Drivers and pressures***

Important driving forces putting pressure on the biodiversity resources of Hessequa are:

- Population growth;
- The demand for economic growth to provide wealth and job creation;

- Demand for housing and associated services for historically disadvantaged people;
- Unsustainable extraction of natural resources as a result of poverty or greed;
- Poor land use practices promoting soil erosion and infestation by invasive alien plants;
- Altered veld fire regimes;
- Poor waste and pollution management;
- Climate change; and
- Lack of understanding (ignorance of the importance of conserving biodiversity).

With an estimated annual population growth rate of 1% for the period 2001 – 2005 (Lehola, 2006) more and more South Africans are born every day whose basic human needs for food, freshwater and fuel are making unprecedented demands on our global and local ecosystems. Beyond the necessities of survival, there is increasing demand of society for more material goods and services.

South Africans already consume more resources per capita than people in any other African nation. As previously disadvantaged people strive to increase material wealth and the comforts and conveniences they have been denied before the new political dispensation, the strain on natural resources and biodiversity will only increase.

Ignorance of the importance of conserving biodiversity through lack of understanding should not be underestimated as a contributing factor. Subjects dealing with the conservation of our biological heritage are only recent arrivals in the school curriculum and the demand for environmental education by appropriately qualified teachers exceeds the supply by far, especially in out-of-town places.

### ***Ecosystem status***

The National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment (NSBA, Driver *et al.*, 2005) used maps of land classes, such as vegetation types or habitat types (e.g. Gourits Valley Thicket), to represent biodiversity features (pattern and process), habitat transformation and future land use pressure, across the nation. By using land classes incorporating expert knowledge about biological characteristics as surrogates of biodiversity (Lombard *et al.*, 2003), the problems associated with incomplete species-based inventories, collection bias and extrapolating from one species group to another are overcome. In the absence of comprehensive data sets of the occurrence and status of species of conservation concern in Hessequa, the NSBA approach of using land classes as stand-ins for biodiversity was adopted for this report.

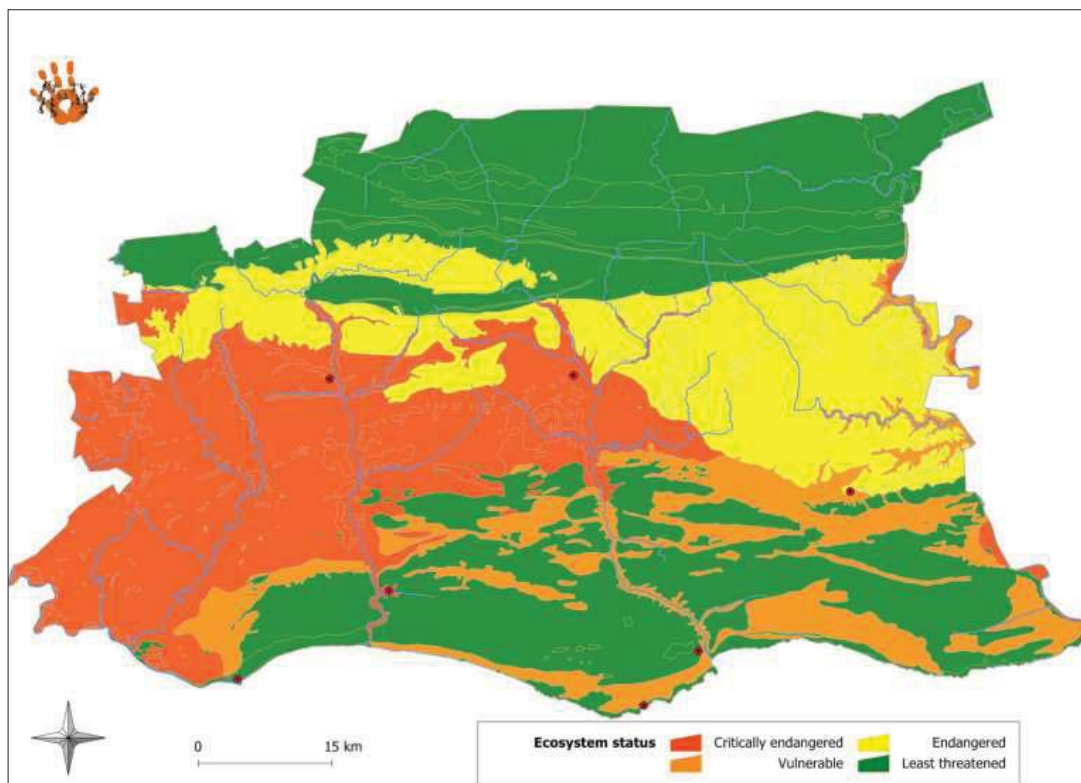
A total of 27 land classes covering in excess of 573,000 hectares have been identified in Hessequa by Mucina and Rutherford (2006). The classification of how intact and well-functioning they are is based on four categories:

Table 4. Definition of ecosystem status categories of land classes.

Remaining natural habitat %	Category	Definition
80 - 100	Least Threatened	Still largely intact
60 - 80	Vulnerable	Reasonably intact, but nearing the threshold beyond which they will start to lose ecosystem functioning
20 - 60	Endangered	Have lost significant amounts of their original natural habitat, impairing their functioning
0 - 20	Critically Endangered	Have so little of the original habitat left that not only their functioning has been severely impaired, but species are being lost

The ecosystem status measures the amount of habitat lost in ecosystems (measured as land classes) relative to the conservation targets for those ecosystems. In Hessequa 22.2% of land classes are Endangered or Critically Endangered, with a further 11% Vulnerable to lose ecosystem functioning. In terms of the area occupied by the land classes, the Endangered or Critically Endangered account for 19% and 27%, respectively, of Hessequa (Figure 3).

The western and central coastal lands, the Langeberg Mountains and the areas north of it are still largely intact, whereas the western midland areas are under greater threat to lose their ecological integrity (Figure 3). The Critically Endangered parts of Hessequa are all lying in the west representing Renosterveld and Cape Lowland Alluvial Vegetation in river valleys. They are Critically Endangered because conversion to agriculture (owing to high soil fertility) has compromised target achievement. Only 19% and 22% of the original extent of Eastern Ruins Shale Renosterveld and of Ruins Silcrete Renosterveld, respectively, are remaining today, missing their biodiversity target of 27% which would be required to look after 75% of the species occurring in each vegetation type. Cape Lowland Alluvial Vegetation has been reduced to its biodiversity target of 31% remaining and cannot sustain further loss of habitat (Rouget *et al.* 2004). In practical terms this means that all land lying fallow for more than 10 years should only receive environmental authorisation for ploughing (a requirement of the NEMA Amendment Bill, 2008) in exceptional circumstances.



### ***Extent of formally conserved areas***

Formally conserved areas falling into Hessequa are very important for biodiversity conservation, but not all types of conservation areas are equally valuable. For instance private game farms that are not part of a conservancy (type 3). Some game farms may well help to achieve conservation goals across the land, but due to the low level of protection that they are afforded and frequent changes in their status they are not listed in Table 5, which gives the extent of formally conserved areas of type 1 and 2 in Hessequa.

*Table 5. Extent of formally conserved areas of type 1 and 2 in Hessequa.*

<b>Formally protected area</b>	<b>Area [ha]</b>
Conservancies	32319
Local Authority Nature Reserves	1002
Private Nature Reserves (formally declared)	6159
Mountain Catchment Areas	29801
Provincial Nature Reserves and Wilderness Areas	17680
Sum of all formally conserved areas	86962
Hessequa area	573000

Currently, nearly 6% of land in South Africa is under protection in Type 1 and Type 2 protected areas (Rouget *et al.*, 2004). With a total area of 15% under formal type 1 and 2 protection Hessequa exceeds the national average considerably. It should be noted, however, that the protected areas shown in Figure 4 differ considerably in their management. Whereas all Local Authority Nature Reserves have scientifically formulated management plans, the same cannot be said for some of the other types (e.g. most conservancies). Much remains to be done in Hessequa until all types of reserves will reach their full potential in supporting bioregional conservation goals.

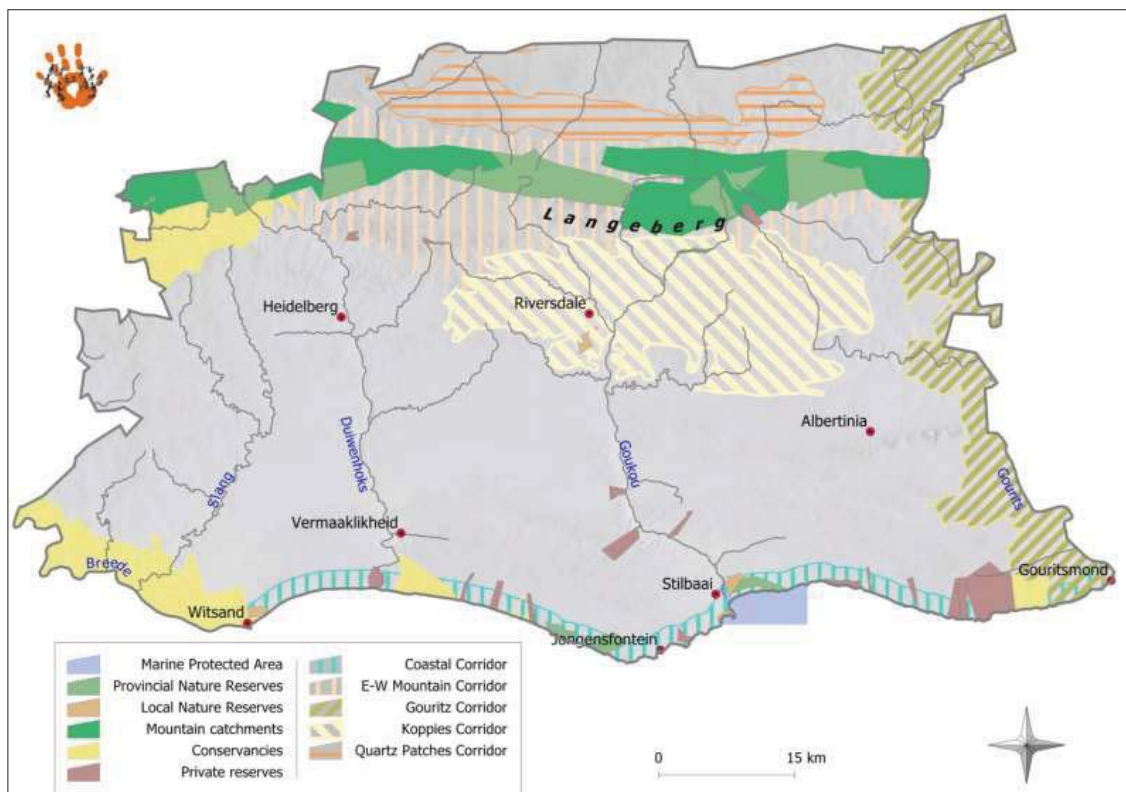
### ***Biodiversity corridors***

Figure 4 also shows the biodiversity corridors, of which there are five, identified by regional conservation planners. As described by (Pierce, 2003), corridors are a system of natural pathways for plants and animals meant to safeguarded their future survival. The basic concept is to facilitate the exchange of genetic information between species members and to promote natural evolutionary processes. With much of the countryside in Hessequa already transformed by agricultural development, corridors are seen as instrumental in preventing further loss of biodiversity. For a network to function as intended, the biological mechanisms responsible for the dispersal of plant propagules (pollen, seeds, pods, fruits) should not be interrupted, and neither should be the recombination of genes between sexually mature animals. For this to happen, animals must not be stopped by insurmountable fences, squashed on busy roads, mauled by domestic animals, or caught in indiscriminate gin traps. Similarly, plant propagules rely on the presence of their agents of dispersal, e.g. on free-flowing water along drainage lines, on insect pollination, attachment to the fur of an animal or being swallowed by birds to be transported in the digestive tract. Clearly, corridor



functioning is a matter of the density of people and the nature and the spatial arrangements of infrastructure whether an animal can safely reach the other side.

As can be seen in Figure 4 the coastal and the east-west mountain corridors are supported by declared conservation areas. However, the Gourits, the inland koppies and the Succulent Karoo corridors remain woefully unsupported.



### ***Ecosystem protection***

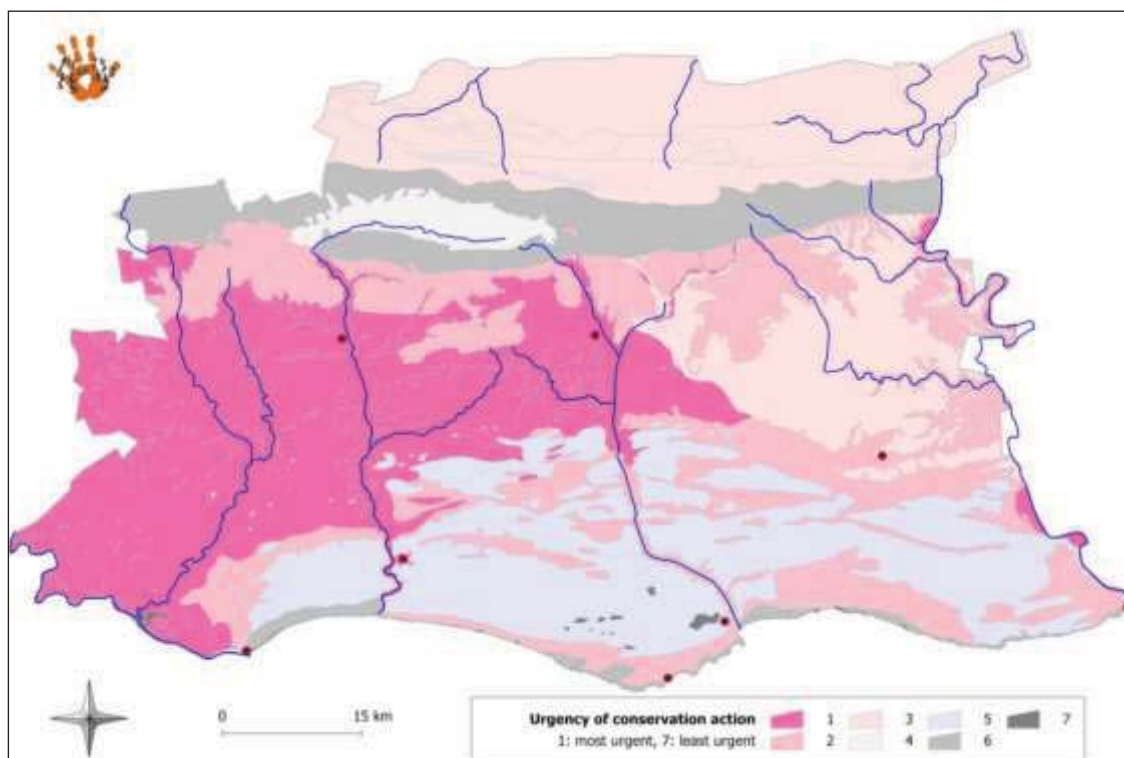
It is informative to compare the level of ecosystem functioning (Figure 3) with the protection level enjoyed by each of the land classes in Hessequa. This tells how well the protected area network in the local municipality is performing in terms of representing terrestrial biodiversity.

The analysis presented graphically Figure 5 ranks Hessequa's 27 land classes by their urgency of conservation action. Ranks were calculated from data provided by the National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment (Rouget *et al.*, 2004) by multiplying the conservation status by the protection level of a given land class. Values were assigned to conservation status (C-Score) and protection level (P-Score), respectively, as follows (Table 6):

Conservation status	C-Score	Protection level	P-Score
Least Threatened	4	Well protected	4
Vulnerable	3	Moderately protected	3
Endangered	2	Hardly protected	2
Critically Endangered	1	Poorly protected	1

This ranking system assigns the highest urgency of conservation action to a Critically Endangered and poorly protected land class, while Least Threatened and well protected land classes score further down the urgency list. Regional gradients in the urgency of conservation action are clearly evident in Figure 5. Many hardly or poorly conserved land classes occurring in the west are ill protected. Soberingly, the land protected by farms in the Breede Conservancy is not yet sufficient to prevent the further loss of ecosystem services in the Renosterveld.

*Figure 5. Urgency of conservation action in Hessequa.*



### ***Indicators***

Measured against the National Guidelines for State of Environment Indicators (DEAT, 2002) Hessequa's species diversity and ecosystems are under severe pressure, resulting in habitat change, as well as diminishing ecosystem services.

The indicator "extent of natural areas remaining" in the habitat change category shows that in nearly half (46%) of Hessequa the biodiversity patterns and processes are so severely compromised by habitat transformation that they fall into the Endangered (19%) or Critically Endangered (27%) categories (see Figure 3).

In respect of the indicator "extent of conserved area" Hessequa has 15% of its area under formal type 1 and 2 protection, which is above the national average. However, the Gourits River valley, the inland koppies and the corridor linking quartz patches in the Succulent Karoo biome are unsupported by reserves.

### ***Impacts***

The drivers of biodiversity loss often act in combination (change in land use frequently goes together with changed fire regimes in fynbos) and so the resulting impacts are impossible to apportion neatly. This is, of course, a reflection of the multitudes of inter-dependencies of patterns and processes in the natural world. A selection of the most important impacts of the loss of biodiversity must suffice here.

Habitat fragmentation and habitat loss is an important cause of the decline in biodiversity resources. The more specific the food and habitat needs of a species are, the greater its vulnerability to agricultural activity, roads, cities and associated sources of pollution. First in the firing line are the larger predators (Leopard, Caracal, Honeybadger) of which there will soon none be left, but there are many other animals and plants threatened by extinction in Hessequa. At the bitter end, the only surviving species will be human commensals (rats, cockroaches etc.) whose habitat requirements correspond to the degraded state associated with human activity. For all species that became extinct in the process the potential to provide benefits in the future - the option value of biodiversity – is lost forever.

The industrialisation of agriculture is the leading cause of habitat loss and thus biodiversity loss in Hessequa. As economical imperatives dictate ever larger fields that can be worked by mechanical means at an industrial scale, hedge rows and other kinds of refugia of untransformed land for wildlife fall victim to the plough. Often, these practises increase the susceptibility of the land to wind and water erosion. Not only does this degrade the land further, it also increases the siltation of streams that are already stressed from over pumping for irrigation. As the land area for natural ecosystems shrinks, there is less natural capacity to filter pollutants and detoxify waters and less capacity to cycle nutrients and compost organic wastes. Species and ecosystem services decrease as a consequence.

Fynbos and renosterveld, important vegetation types in the Hessequa, require fire to stimulate seed germination, but the fire frequency is important. Plants that are killed by fire and that depend on re-seeding to survive as species have not enough time to mature and to set seeds if fires occur too often. Conversely, if natural fynbos is prevented from burning because the fire would bring an unacceptably

high risk to houses nearby, the fire-dependent plant components it contains will eventually die from senescence. In recognition of the importance of fire in the Local Municipality the Hessequa Fire Protection Association (HFFPA) has been formed. The HFFPA aims to contribute to community development by eliminating loss of life, human injury, economic and environmental losses by veld fires and by progressively reducing impacts while promoting the useful role of veld fires.

Ecosystem degradation and subsequent loss of ecosystem services tends to harm poor rural people more than affluent city dwellers. Poor people have limited assets and are more dependent on common property resources (e.g. fire wood), while the wealthy are buffered against loss of ecosystem services by being able to purchase basic necessities and scarce commodities.

### ***Responses***

Mainstreaming biodiversity in land use planning and decision-making

Increasing numbers of people placing greater demands on the natural environment are compromising ecological integrity at an unprecedented rate. Mainstreaming biodiversity considerations into socio-economic agendas holds most promise to turn the situation around. It is necessary to:

- Integrate the protection and management of biodiversity resources with all human development by means of local, regional and national conservation initiatives;
- Build capacity in the areas of conservation assessment, taxonomy, green technology and knowledge transfer;
- Increase capacity in environmental law enforcement, management and education;
- Strengthen existing biodiversity conservation programmes to identify ecosystems, species and genetic resources that are at imminent risk of extinction; and
- Implement strong countermeasures to slow down the speed with which the loss of biodiversity occurs.

Improving interactions with biodiversity conservation programmes

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, no. 10 of 2004, provides for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act, no. 107 of 1998. Since the promulgation of the Act and the establishment of the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) existing biodiversity conservation programmes (e.g. CAPE, SKEP) have been strengthened considerably and a host of new initiatives aimed at the protection of species and ecosystems have emerged in their wake.

The Cape Action for People and Environment (CAPE) Programme is driven by 23 partner organisations of SANBI and is aimed at addressing conservation and development priorities in the Cape Floristic Region, into which Hessequa falls. CAPE is supported by several project management units, located in key biodiversity corridors across the regions, such as the Garden Route Initiative (hosted by SANParks) and the Gourits Initiative (hosted by Cape Nature).

The Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme (SKEP) is an overarching framework for conservation action and sustainable development of the Succulent Karoo Hotspot. The Succulent Karoo is a global biodiversity treasure with over 6,000 plant species, 250 species of birds, 78 species of mammals, 132 species of reptiles and amphibians and an unknown number of insects. These programmes and initiatives are generating new data on species distributions and insight into functional relationships between species and land classes that can inform the appraisal of Hessequa's biodiversity resources. The appraisal should include a review of the network of protected areas in Hessequa. The conservation plans should be incorporated into the Hessequa Integrated Development Plan as part of the Environmental Management Programme (Sector Plan). Landscape planning in Hessequa should benefit greatly from the outcomes of the CAPE fine-scale biodiversity planning for the Riversdale Coastal Plain, a project funded by the Global Environment Facility (GEF). Cape Nature has been appointed as the lead implementing agency for the fine-scale biodiversity planning project and will be working in close partnership with the South African National Biodiversity Institute and other project partners such as provincial departments and agencies, local authorities, planning and environmental consultants and local conservation NGOs. The outcomes of the fine-scale biodiversity planning for the Riversdale Coastal Plain, together with the information provided in this document, should provide the impetus for Hessequa's conservancies to develop and implement environmental management plans for the land under their care that are supportive of the greater goal of a living landscape.

### ***Strengthening institutional capacity and cooperation***

Environmental institutional capacity must be strengthened. Hessequa currently has only one Environmental Manager who is located within the Planning Department. Without strengthening interdepartmental cooperation Hessequa will not be able to keep up with its obligations in terms of biodiversity protection. Poor cooperation from the provincial Department of Environmental Affairs & Development Planning (DEA&DP) in matters of environmental law enforcement has been identified as a major weakness.

### ***Linking biodiversity protection and economic upliftment***

Biodiversity protection provides an opportunity for less formal, nature-based community initiatives to act as economic engines and job creators. A few examples are introduced below. Some of these initiatives are good examples of collaborative programmes that involve a range of national agencies and include municipalities at a local level.

- Expanded public works programme, eco-tourism, bee farming, wild-flower harvesting linked to IDP projects;
- LandCare Programme;
- Working for Water;
- Working for Wetlands;
- Working for Fire;
- Working for the Coast.





## Developmental Focus Areas



## **FOCUS AREA 1:**

### **AN ACCOUNTABLE LOCAL AUTHORITY WITH A FIT FOR PURPOSE WORKFORCE AND TRANSPARENT FINANCIAL PRACTICES**

#### **Performance Management**

##### ***Introduction***

Performance management is a process which measures the implementation of the organisation's strategy. It is also a management tool to plan, monitor, measure and review performance indicators to ensure efficiency, effectiveness and the impact of service delivery by the municipality.

At local government level performance management is institutionalized through the legislative requirements on the performance management process for Local Government. Performance management provides the mechanism to measure whether targets to meet its strategic goals, set by the organisation and its employees, are met.

The constitution of S.A (1996), section 152, dealing with the objectives of local government paves the way for performance management with the requirements for an "accountable government". The democratic values and principles in terms of section 195 (1) are also linked with the concept of performance management, with reference to the principles of *inter alia*:

- the promotion of efficient, economic and effective use of resources,
- accountable public administration
- to be transparent by providing information,
- to be responsive to the needs of the community,
- and to facilitate a culture of public service and accountability amongst staff.

The Municipal Systems Act (MSA), 2000 requires municipalities to establish a performance management system. Further, the MSA and the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) requires the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) to be aligned to the municipal budget and to be monitored for the performance of the budget against the IDP via the Service Delivery and the Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP).

In addition, Regulation 7 (1) of the Local Government: Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations, 2001 states that "A Municipality's Performance Management System entails a framework that describes and represents how the municipality's cycle and processes of performance planning, monitoring, measurement, review, reporting and improvement will be conducted, organised and managed, including determining the roles of the different role players." Performance management is not only relevant to the organisation as a whole, but also to the individuals employed in the organization as well as the external service providers and the Municipal Entities. This framework, *inter alia*, reflects the linkage between the IDP, Budget, SDBIP and individual and service provider performance.



### ***Legislative requirements***

In terms of section 46(1)(a) a municipality must prepare for each financial year a performance report reflecting the municipality's and any service provider's performance during the financial year, including comparison with targets of and with performance in the previous financial year. The report must, furthermore, indicate the development and service delivery priorities and the performance targets set by the municipality for the following financial year and measures that were or are to be taken to improve performance.

### ***Strategic performance***

Strategic performance indicates how well the municipality is meeting its objectives and which policies and processes are working. All government institutions must report on strategic performance to ensure that service delivery is efficient, effective and economical. Municipalities must develop strategic plans and allocate resources for the implementation. The implementation must be monitored on an on-going basis and the results must be reported on during the financial year to various role-players to enable them to timeously implement corrective measures where required.

This report highlight the strategic performance in terms of the municipality's Top Layer Service Delivery Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP), high level performance in terms of the National Key Performance Areas, performance on the National Key Performance Indicators prescribed in terms of section 43 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 and an overall summary of performance on a functional level. Details regarding specific basic service delivery targets, achievements and challenges will be included in the Annual Report of the municipality.

### ***The performance system followed for the financial year 2010/11***

#### **Adoption of a Performance Management Framework**

The municipality adopted a performance management framework that was approved by Council during 2009. However, this framework is currently being revised to include more detailed processes and internal control. Once the revised framework has been workshopped by all the various role players the framework will be submitted to Council for approval.

#### **The IDP and the budget**

The IDP process and the performance management process are integrated. The IDP fulfils the planning stage of performance management. Performance management in turn, fulfils the implementation management, monitoring and evaluation of the IDP.

#### **The Service Delivery Budget Implementation Plan**

The organisational performance is evaluated by means of a municipal scorecard (Top Layer SDBIP) at organisational level and through the service delivery budget implementation plan (SDBIP) at directorate and departmental levels.

The SDBIP is a plan that converts the IDP and budget into measurable criteria on how, where and when the strategies, objectives and normal business process of the municipality is implemented. It also allocates responsibility to directorates to deliver the services in terms of the IDP and budget.

The MFMA Circular No.13 prescribes that:

- The IDP and budget must be aligned
- The budget must address the strategic priorities
- The SDBIP should indicate what the municipality is going to do during next 12 months
- The SDBIP should form the basis for measuring the performance against goals set during the budget /IDP processes.

The SDBIP were prepared as described in the paragraphs below and approved by the Executive Mayor 28 days after the budget was approved. The departmental SDBIP of each Directorate were approved by the Municipal Manager after the budget was approved. KPI's in the Top Layer SDBIP were adjusted after the mid-year assessment and/or after the adjustments budget has been approved. KPI's were adjusted to be aligned with the adjustment estimate and the reason for the change in KPI's was documented in a report to Council for approval. The approval documents have been safeguarded for audit purposes.

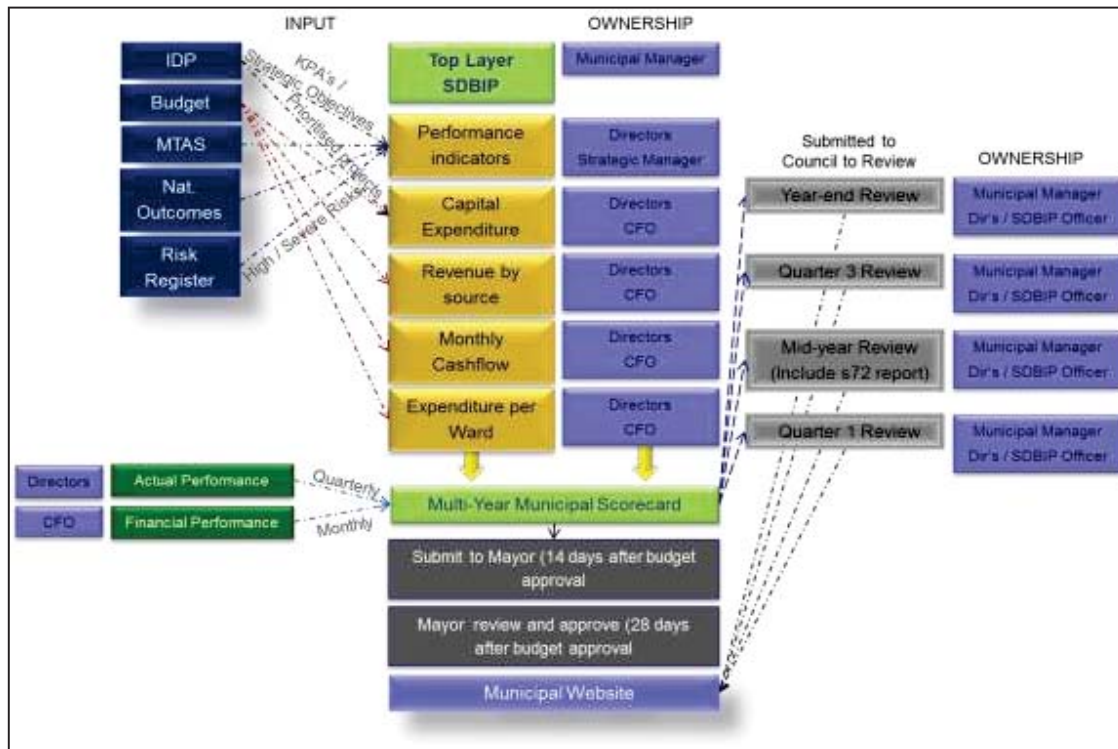
KPI's in the Departmental SDBIP were adjusted during the course of the year assessment and/or after the adjustments budget has been approved. KPI's were adjusted to be aligned with functional requirements and the adjustment estimate and the reason for the change in KPI's was documented in a report to the Municipal Manager for approval. The approval documents have been safeguarded for audit purposes.

#### ***The municipal scorecard (Top Layer SDBIP)***

The municipal scorecard (Top Layer SDBIP) consolidate service delivery targets set by Council / senior management and provide an overall picture of performance for the municipality as a whole, reflecting performance on its strategic priorities. Components of the Top Layer SDBIP include:

- **One-year** detailed plan, but should include a **three-year capital plan**
- The 5 necessary components includes:
  - Monthly projections of revenue to be collected for each source
    - Expected revenue to be collected NOT billed
  - Monthly projections of expenditure (operating and capital) and revenue for each vote
    - Section 71 format (Monthly budget statements)
  - Quarterly projections of service delivery targets and performance indicators for each vote
    - Non-financial measurable performance objectives in the form of targets and indicators
    - Output NOT input / internal management objectives
    - Level and standard of service being provided to the community
  - Ward information for expenditure and service delivery
  - Detailed capital project plan broken down by ward over three years

The following diagram illustrates the establishment, components and review of the municipal scorecard (Top Layer SDBIP):



Top Layer KPI's were prepared based on the following:

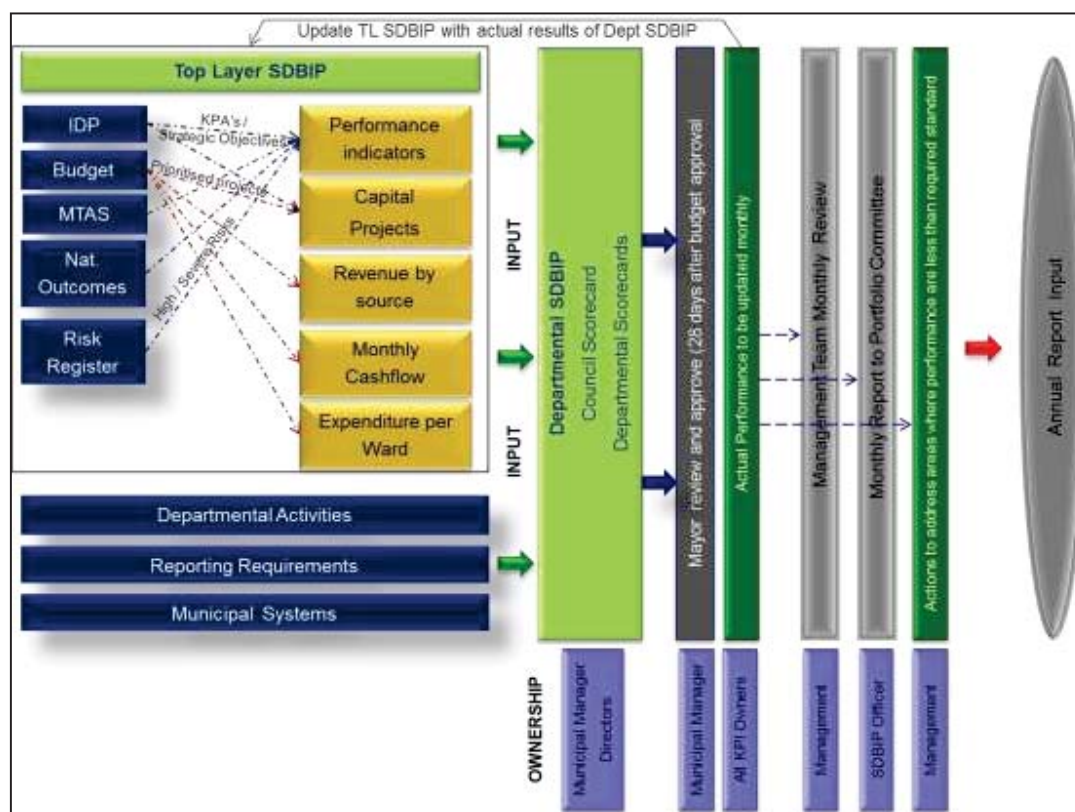
- Key performance indicators (KPI's) for the programmes / activities identified to address the strategic objectives as documented in the IDP.
- KPI's identified during the IDP and KPI's that need to be reported to key municipal stakeholders.
- KPI's to address the required National Agenda Outcomes, priorities and minimum reporting requirements.
- The municipal turnaround strategy (MTAS)

It is important to note that the municipal manager needs to implement the necessary systems and processes to provide the POE's for reporting and auditing purposes.

### ***Directorate/Departmental scorecards***

The directorate and departmental scorecards (detail SDBIP) capture the performance of each defined directorate or department. Unlike the municipal scorecard, which reflects on the strategic performance of the municipality, the departmental SDBIP provide detail of each outcome for which top management are responsible for, in other words a comprehensive picture of the performance of that directorate/sub-directorate. It was compiled by **senior managers** for their **directorate** and consists of objectives, indicators and targets derived from the approved Top Layer SDBIP, the approved budget and measurable service delivery indicators related to each functional area.

The following diagram illustrates the establishment, components and review of the departmental SDBIP:



KPI's were developed for Council and the Municipal Manager and for each Directorate. The KPI's:

- Address the TL KPI's by means of KPI's for the relevant section responsible for the KPI.
- Include the capital projects KPI's for projects. The targets are aligned with the projected monthly budget and project plans.
- Address the key departmental activities.
- Each KPI have clear monthly targets and are assigned to the person responsible for the KPI's.

#### Update actual performance

The municipality utilizes an electronic web based system on which KPI owners update actual performance on a monthly basis. KPI owners report on the results of the KPI by documenting the following information on the performance system:

- The actual result in terms of the target set.
- The output/outcome of achieving the KPI.
- The calculation of the actual performance reported. (If %)
- The reasons if the target was not achieved.
- Actions to improve the performance against the target set, if the target was not achieved.

It is the responsibility of every KPI owner to maintain a portfolio of evidence to support actual performance results updated.

### Monitoring of the Service Delivery Budget Implementation Plan

Municipal performance is measured as follows:

- The Directorates review their performance and monthly report their performance in terms of the SDBIP to the Municipal Manager and the respective Portfolio Councillor.
- Monthly submission of IYM reports to Council.
- Mid-year assessment and submission of the mid-year report to the Mayor in terms of section of Section 72(1) (a) and 52(d) of the Local Government Municipal Finance Management Act to assess the performance of the municipality during the first half of the financial year.

## Financial Management

### ***Introduction***

The Hessequa Municipality initiated a process to develop a Financial Plan and procured the services of an independent service provider to assess the historical outlook of the Hessequa finances, present trends and finally develop a plan to manage the finances of the Hessequa Municipality to ensure sustainability and efficient use of funding resources.

This chapter consists of the direct report that was compiled by INCA Portfolio Managers and is inserted in this document for strategic value. The extract that is included in the IDP does not include the complete INCA report, but only component of the report consisting of the financial assessments that was done and the findings coming from the assessments.



## 4. BASIS OF THE FINANCIAL ASSESSMENT

For a start IPM performs a detailed analysis of the historical financial information of Hessequa Municipality (Hessequa) for a period of 7 years from 2005/06 to the end of the last financial year on 30 June 2012. The historical data in the model provides a basis for reflection on the financial performance of Hessequa in the past and to plot future financial trends.

From this base, the anticipated cash flow performance of Hessequa is modeled for the next 5 financial years based on an extrapolation of the approved Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework for 2012/13 to 2014/15 to ascertain to which extent financial planning and budgeting in particular will impact on Hessequa's current financial position. This assessment, will verify the reasonableness of the assumptions made in the approved Budget based on a comparison with Hessequa's past financial performance and serve as input into the 2013/14 to 2015/16 MTREF.

From this assessment, the level of external funding that can be absorbed by Hessequa without negatively impacting on its financial position is determined. This information will strategically assist Hessequa to determine the most optimal mix of funding sources to be utilized for investment in capital infrastructure, whilst maintaining adequate cash reserves and liquidity levels.

All of the data will be verified in conjunction with Hessequa. Accordingly the Model will provide a shadow credit rating of Hessequa's financial performance per annum benchmarked against an absolute set of financial parameters developed by IPM as well as against the relative performance of Hessequa in the context of the South African municipal sector. These benchmarks and parameters have been developed over a number of years.

The Model was originally developed to provide IPM with an indication of whether external loans could be advanced to a municipality and indicate the level of risk that needs to be factored into the interest rate pricing. The methodology is comparable to that of other financial institutions operating in this market and will provide Hessequa with a good indication of the financial market's perception on Hessequa's finances. It should also be noted that the shadow rating produced by the Model has historically compared well with the rating opinions issued by rating agencies in South Africa such as Moody's.

The financial performance of Hessequa over the period from 2005/06 to 2010/11 is also plotted against the performance of 4 of its municipal peers based on entities with a similar sized income base. This serves as a good indication of Hessequa's performance in comparison with the rest of the Municipal market.

In the closing findings and recommendations, key strategic focus areas are highlighted for improvement or development and it is proposed that during the workshop session with IPM, long and short term financial goals and benchmarks be set.

Ultimately, the active monitoring of the actual financial performance against the goals set is essential to determine true performance; and it is therefore recommended that the Model be updated on at least a semi-annual basis or once new financial information becomes available, as new information could fundamentally change the outcomes of the Model as well as the findings and recommendations.

## 5. HISTORICAL FINANCIAL OVERVIEW

To understand the present financial position of Hessequa the actual historical financial performance has been assessed which provides the required foundation to critically review the assumptions made in the MTREF (projected operational and capital budgets).

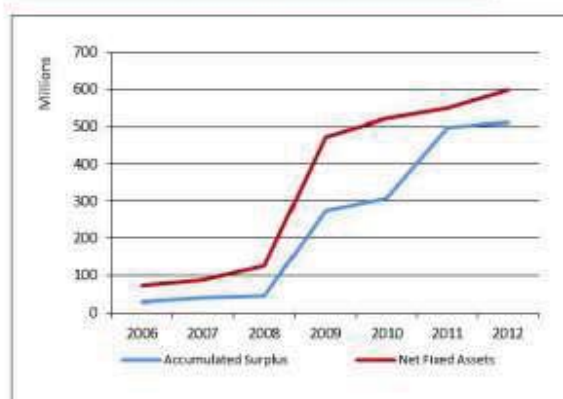
This section documents the actual financial performance (trend analysis) of Hessequa over a 7-year period from 2005/06 to 2011/12. It is noted that during this period Hessequa has continually adjusted and aligned their accounting practices in accordance with the Generally Recognised Accounting Practice (GRAP), as this impacts on the annual comparison of financial performance. For purposes of this report, financial information was reflected per annum as per the audited financial statements. Comparative restated figures were not taken into account.

**DISCLOSURE:** A loan was concluded with Nedbank early in 2012/13 that had been earmarked to fund part of the 2011/12 capital expenditure program. To reasonably reflect Hessequa's financial position for 2011/12 the loan of R 24.6 million has been incorporated into the financial statements provided for 2011/12. Therefore any reference to long term liabilities or cash and investments for the 2011/12 financial year will include the loan disbursed in July 2013.

### Statement of Financial Position

Financial Data: Appendix B

**GRAPH 27: NET FIXED ASSETS VS. ACCUMULATED SURPLUS**



Over the past 7 years Hessequa has invested R 215 million into Property, Plant and Equipment after depreciation charges. However movements in Net Fixed Assets (Property, Plant and Equipment, Investment Property and Intangible Assets) over this term do not simply mirror the investment in infrastructure or the depreciation of assets, as there are significant changes noted in the value of Net Fixed Assets starting in 2008/09 continuing through to 2010/11.

On 1 July 2008 land and buildings were revalued and infrastructure assets were unbundled and reclassified. Investment Property was accounted for separately from Property, Plant and Equipment. Hessequa elected not to implement a Fair Value Accounting approach with regards to all Property Plant and Equipment, but only selected to fair value Investment Property as required by GRAP.

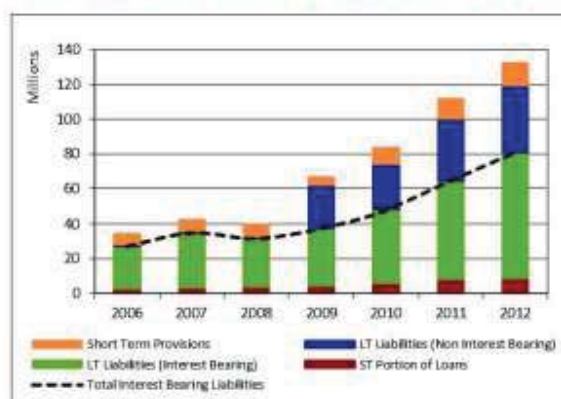
Hessequa had initially made a transitional provision for Investment Property of R 119 million in 2008/09, however the actual valuation was recorded as R 43 million in 2010/11. In future the trend in changes of Net Fixed Assets is expected to reflect less significant year-on-year changes as the GRAP processes have mainly been concluded. Adjustments will therefore more accurately reflect investments in and depreciation of Property, Plant and Equipment.

In line with the process of revaluing land and buildings a Revaluation Reserve of R 188 million was created thereby increasing Accumulated Surpluses. The full impact of the revaluation of land and buildings in 2008/09 was however only reflected with the R 182 million increase in Accumulated Surplus in 2010/11. During 2008/09 the unfunded Government Grant Reserve was reversed to deferred income, thereby reducing Accumulated Surpluses by R 18 million. These changes are largely reflective of the reform in Hessequa's accounting practices in line with GRAP. With the exception of the impact of these accounting changes, Accumulated Surpluses increased more moderately reflecting operational surpluses posted year-on-year.

It is commendable that Hessequa has and continues to align accounting practices with GRAP. However, the true financial performance of Hessequa needs to be interpreted on a cash flow basis to fully understand the real financial performance and position of Hessequa. The above changes are an illustration that although implementing accounting policies are important, it may not be reflective of the financial health of the organization. The full financial implication of the implementation of accounting practices needs to be assessed in order to manage related financial risks.

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers



**GRAPH 28: LONG TERM LIABILITIES INTEREST BEARING VS. NON-INTEREST BEARING**

External liabilities were maintained below R 40 million per annum before increasing to R 81 million between 2008/09 and 2011/12. Hessequa actively utilized external funding as a source during this period to implement capital infrastructure as gearing increased to 33% by 2011/12.

In the past seven years the level of external gearing in comparison to the growth in the operational income base from which Hessequa can gear, has been fairly managed at levels of between 20% and 33%. The basis for calculating operational income is however very important as non-operational elements such as conditional revenues and accounting changes need to be excluded.

The maximum industry gearing benchmark is set at 50% (total long term liabilities over operational revenue).

Since 2008/09, the reform of Hessequa's accounting practices as per the GRAP requirements resulted in longer-term provisions now being reported on in the financial statements which include post-retirement health care benefits liability, ex-gratia pension benefit liability and provision for long service awards. Although these liabilities are not interest bearing and do not affect Hessequa's level of external gearing, there is a notable impact on both the level of liquidity required as the short term portion of these provisions need to be backed by cash. There is also a direct impact on the operational expenditure of Hessequa as these statutory obligations will require an annual provision.

A further impact of the implementation of GRAP was the adjustments made to Funds and Reserves. By 2010/11 all unfunded reserves such as the Government Grant Reserve and the Revaluation Reserve were reversed against Accumulated Surpluses. Hessequa did however maintain its cash backed reserves, such as the Housing Reserve, Capital Replacement Reserve, Insurance Reserve and a Disaster Relief Reserve. Between 2005/06 and 2007/08 Hessequa annually contributed approximately R 10 million per annum to these reserves, however between 2008/09 and 2010/11 the level of these reserves remained relatively flat with a decrease noted in 2011/12 to R 31 million which includes the Capital Replacement Reserve of R 24 million. All of the above reserves have been cash backed over the past 7 years although the cash coverage ratio has notably deteriorated, providing an early warning as to the tightening cash flow situation of Hessequa.

It should be noted that since reporting on these statutory obligations from 2008/09 onwards, the level of the long term portion of the obligation has increased by 57% from R 25 million to R 39 million in 2011/12. Of these statutory obligations Retirement Benefit Liabilities constituted R 33.8 million thereof of which R 33.7 million is represented by Post-Retirement Health Care Benefits Liability. The short term provision for these obligations has increased from R 2 million in 2008/09 to R 10 million in 2011/12, largely as a result of the increase in provision for pension fund arrears contribution of R 6.7 million.

These benefits are affected by actuarial valuations as well as by the number of in service members (employees) and continuation members whom are retired. Potential actuarial losses imply an inherent risk of an increases in the Employee Benefit Obligation. This risk is increased as a result of the interest rate cycle being at all-time low as discount rates have decreased. It is four years since interest rates peaked, with prime reaching 15.5% in late 2008. Since then, South Africa has had four years of interest rate declines, prime since July having been 8.5%. Although this bodes well for borrowing, it inversely has a negative impact on investments of any nature.

Staff numbers have increased from 416 employees in 2005/06 to 559 employees in 2011/12, representing an increase of 34%. The recruitment of more staff will have a direct impact on these employee benefit provisions in the operating budget and the risk factors need to be taken into consideration. Staff productivity should be a key factor when appointing any new staff.

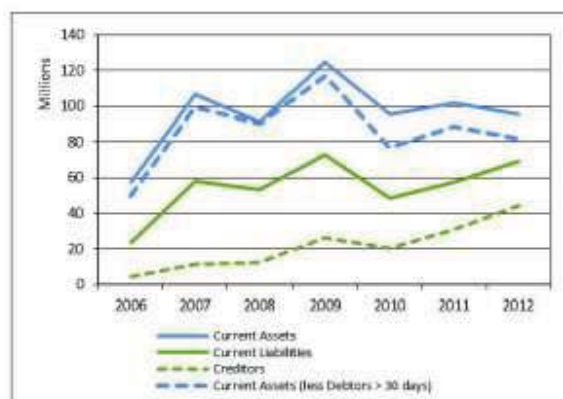
Whilst annual increases are determined by the National Bargaining Council and the investment environment is not within Hessequa's control, the management of the staff component and the terms and conditions of employment are measures within which Hessequa can influence the impact of increasing Employment Benefits Liability. Benefits need to be realistically aligned with affordable costs and alternatives should be investigated and considered.

The overall management of the related risk factors as reported above remains imperative to mitigate the impact on operational risks.



**GRAPH 29: CURRENT ASSETS VS. CURRENT LIABILITIES**

Benchmark 2:1



The results of the ratio between Current Assets and Current Liabilities reflect directly on the management of Hessequa's liquidity position. As a minimum the current assets should at least cover current liabilities at a ratio of 1:1. For a healthy position the ratio should exceed 2:1. Table 5 below illustrates that Hessequa has managed to maintain levels above 1:1 over the past 7 years with the ratio being above or equal to 1.7:1 in the 2005/06 to 2010/11 period. The ratio has however decreased year-on-year over the past three financial years, before reaching its lowest level of 1.38:1 in 2011/12.

Current Assets have notably decreased from its highest level of R 124.5 million in 2008/09 to R 95 million in 2011/12, mainly as a result of the decrease in cash and short term investments from R 116 million to R 62 million in 2011/12.

In contrast Current Liabilities have increased from R 23.4 million in 2005/06 to R 69.2 million in 2011/12. The increase is partly due to an increase in short term provisions made, however the most significant contributor is the steep increase in creditors from R 4.6 million to R 44.5 million in the same period.

Records indicate that Hessequa's ten largest creditors have increased from R 5.2 million in 2006/07 to R 17.8 million in 2011/12. In relation to the annual total of trade creditors the Eskom account has not increased in percentage terms, however the total amount outstanding to Eskom has more than doubled in the past six years. The bulk of the other creditors on this list of top ten creditors comprise of construction accounts relating to capital expenditure.

Current Liabilities were historically also impacted on by elevated levels of unspent conditional grants during 2006/07 to 2008/09; this liability was however effectively managed by Hessequa as levels have annually decreased from R 30 million in the past to its lowest level of R 2.8 million in 2011/12.

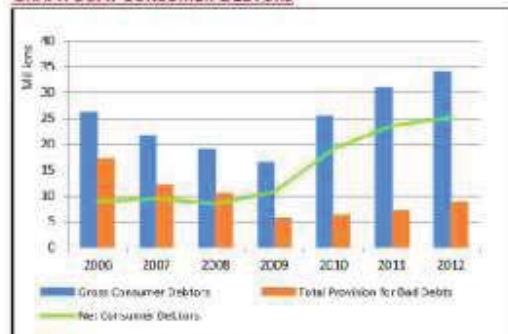
Should debtors older than 30 days be excluded from the liquidity ratio calculation the ratio remains above the minimum level of 1:1, indicating that within a 12 month period there are sufficient liquidity reserves to repay short term liabilities and cover provisions made should debtors older than 30 days not be collected.

On this basis the ratio levels has been at healthy levels with a slow annual deterioration evident since 2010. This underlines a deterioration in the management of liquidity, and it is recommended that Hessequa manage liquidity by developing and implementing a sound Liquidity Policy against which to manage its liquidity and cash reserves. The management of Current Liabilities remains imperative whilst strengthening and maintaining liquidity.

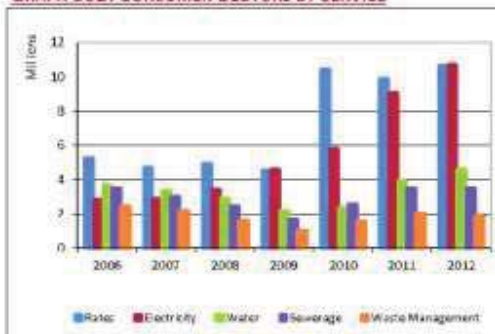
**TABLE 5: LIQUIDITY RATIOS**

	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Current Assets: Current Liabilities	2.46	1.83	1.71	1.70	1.98	1.77	1.38
Current Assets less Debtors > 30 days: Current Liabilities	2.1	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.2

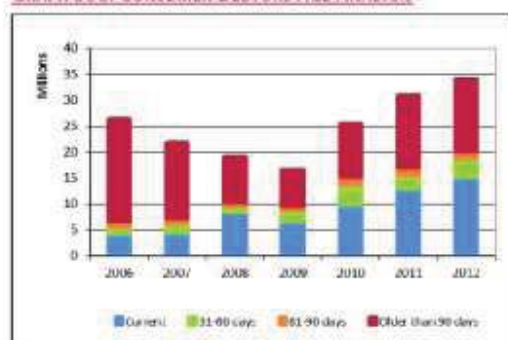
GRAPH 30A: CONSUMER DEBTORS



GRAPH 30B: CONSUMER DEBTORS BY SERVICE



GRAPH 30C: CONSUMER DEBTORS AGE ANALYSIS



GRAPH 30D: CONSUMER DEBTORS CLASSIFICATION

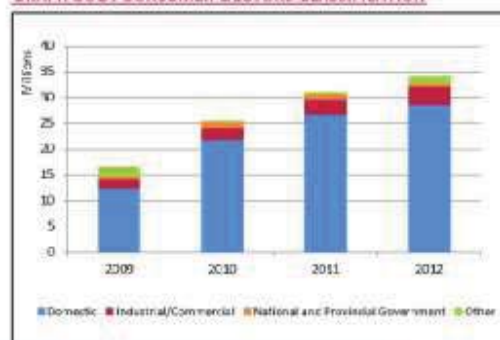


TABLE 6: DEBTORS RATIOS

	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Debtors Payment Ratio (excluding equitable share)		95%	96%	97%	93%	96%	97%
Provision for debtors older than 90 days	88%	84%	121%	80%	61%	52%	64%

With reference to **Graph 30A**, from 2005/06 to 2008/09 Net Consumer Debtors remained relatively flat at around R 10 million. From 2009/10 onwards a steady annual increase can be noted in Gross Consumer Debtors. Visibly provisions for consumer debtors are held at lower levels than between 2005/06 and 2008/09, indicating that Hessequa is confident it will collect on the arrears. **Table 6** above underpins that Hessequa has actively implemented its Credit Control Policy with collections levels mostly above 95%, with the exception of lower levels evident in 2009/10 due to the implementation of the new general valuation roll. Notably levels have improved in the past two years. These practices are commendable and should be maintained. The Payment Ratio calculation in **Table 6** is based on the annual growth in Consumer Debtors including debts written off over Billed Income, excluding Equitable Share receipts.

**Graph 30B** indicates the composition of Consumer Debtors by service type. It is noted that the growth pattern is in line with the steady and strong growth in the income derived from Electricity charges and Property Rates since 2006/07 as can be seen in **Graph 32** on page 18. The impact of increased consumer billings is evident in the increase in outstanding current accounts. Most significant is the escalation in Consumer Debtors from 2009/10 onwards. In 2009/10 the implementation of the new general valuation roll negatively impacted on arrears on Property Rates. Property Rates debts stabilized subsequently, but Hessequa has not been able to recover these debts and it should be considered whether provisions in this regard are sufficient. This trend needs to be closely monitored with the implementation of the next general valuation on 1 July 2013 should it significantly impact on property rates charges. The impact of the increases in bulk charges for Electricity can also be noted on the annual growth in Consumer Debtors between 2008/09 and 2011/12. The provisions made for this service should also be reviewed annually.

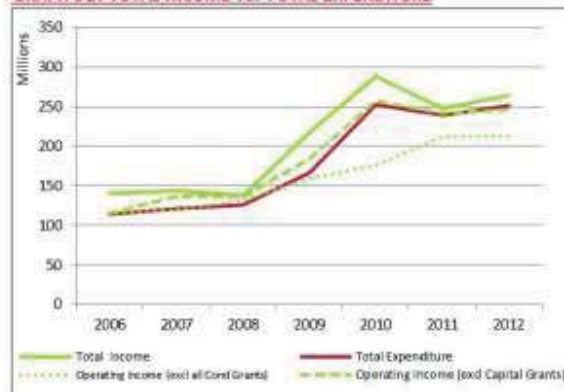
With reference to **Graph 30C**, Consumer Debtors older than 90 days constituted 41% of the total Consumer Debtors in 2011/12, with the bulk of debtors situated in current debtors at 44%. From **Table 6** above it can be seen that Bad Debt Provisions in relation to Consumer Debtors older than 90 days has decreased from historic levels of more than 100% and presently is at 64%, indicating that Hessequa anticipates collecting 36% of these debts. Provisions are considered too low and need to be reviewed and Hessequa should actively impair irrecoverable debts.

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers

## Statement of Financial Performance

Financial Data: Appendix C

**GRAPH 31: TOTAL INCOME VS. TOTAL EXPENDITURE**



Total Income to Total Expenditure has been well managed, as Total Income has annually exceeded Total Expenditure. From 2008/09 to 2009/10 there was a significant increase in the income base of Hessequa which is mainly reflective of large conditional operational grants received from National Government. Post 2009/10 these operational transfers decreased and income has increased more gradually from 2010/11 to 2011/12. Hessequa's ability to manage its operational expenditure effectively is a key performance area to be maintained.

It must be noted that Total Income includes both capital and operational conditional grant funding from National and Provincial Government which may not be used for standard operational expenses or for the repayment of external loans.

For the purposes of determining the operational revenue base from which Hessequa can gear for external funding, all conditional income will be excluded from Total Income as can be seen in **Graph 31** above. In this graph Hessequa's income base is reflected not only as Total Income but also as Income less capital transfers and Income less all conditional transfers. The curve excluding all conditional transfers indicates the actual base from which Hessequa should calculate its acceptable level of gearing. It should further be noted that the income curve excluding all conditional transfers has been flattening.

The widening between the income and expenditure curves between 2008/09 and 2009/10 may seem positive, but during these financial years there were larger pools of unspent conditional grants. Improved spending of conditional transfers has contributed to expenses being closely aligned with income in the past two financial years.

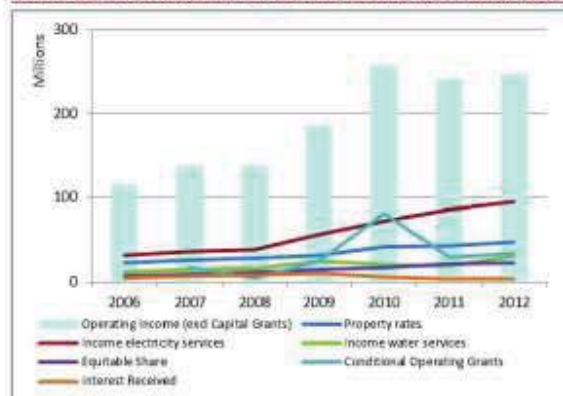
In **Table 7** below, Hessequa's ability to generate operational surpluses is measured over the past 7 years based on the following three methodologies:

- **Total Accounting Surplus or Deficit** measures whether income from all sources exceeds total expenditure incurred, the calculation however includes earmarked operational and capital conditional funding received as well as accounting changes. On this basis Hessequa posted healthy surpluses year-on-year, although the degree of the surplus has decreased in the past two financial years.
- Should all conditional funding of a capital nature however be excluded from the calculation an **Accounting Operating Surplus/ (Deficits)** would be derived and on this basis Hessequa posted accounting operational surpluses year-on-year with the exception of the last financial year. It can be noted that Accounting Operating Surplus has been steadily decreasing before posting a deficit in 2011/12.
- On a cash basis, once all non-cash items are removed from the operational expenditure Hessequa has indicated its ability to post **cash operational surpluses**, which is of great importance. In 2007/08 and 2009/10 however Hessequa posted a cash operating deficit, reasons for these deficits need to be understood and will be further analysed in the **Cash Flow Forecast** on page 26. Specific reference is made to 2011/12 confirming that although the accounting deficit reflects a negative performance, on a cash basis Hessequa posted a surplus of R 15 million. This is positive, however going forward it is recommended that Hessequa determine to which degree the cash surpluses are earmarked for provisions and reserves such as the Capital Replacement Reserve, Employee Benefit Reserve etc.

<b>TABLE 7: ANALYSIS OF SURPLUS</b>	<b>2006</b>	<b>2007</b>	<b>2008</b>	<b>2009</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>
Total Accounting Surplus (Deficit)	25.62	22.42	12.43	51.07	36.23	7.68	13.34
Accounting Operating Surplus (Deficit)	0.38	15.55	11.46	18.08	4.63	1.52	-3.97
Cash Operating Surplus (Deficit)	23.72	46.49	-14.62	23.90	-18.48	20.45	15.25

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers



**GRAPH 32: CONTRIBUTION PER INCOME SOURCE AS A PERCENTAGE OF OPERATING INCOME (EXCL CAPITAL GRANTS)**

As can be seen in **Table 8** below there are three basic sources available to Hessequa to generate its own income, being the levying of Property Rates and the selling of Electricity and Water. In total these sources are responsible for 70% of Operational Income (excluding Capital Grants) as at 30 June 2012. This is at its highest levels in 7 years, largely as a result of Electricity Services increasing from 28% to 39% of Total Income (excluding Capital Grants).

Equitable Share contributed 6% to the operating revenue of Hessequa 7 years ago, and has marginally increased annually to a level of 9% at present. Changes for Hessequa in the formula for calculating equitable share should be monitored. More notable is the increase in conditional operational funding received from National Treasury, in particular in 2009/10. The elevated levels of conditional operational transfers are a good indicator of National

Treasury comfort in the management capacity of Hessequa.

<b>TABLE 8: CONTRIBUTION PER INCOME SOURCE</b>	<b>2006</b>	<b>2007</b>	<b>2008</b>	<b>2009</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>
Equitable Share	6%	7%	8%	8%	6%	9%	9%
Conditional Operational Grants	0%	13%	4%	13%	32%	12%	14%
Property Rates	20%	19%	20%	17%	16%	18%	19%
Service Charges – Electricity	28%	27%	28%	30%	28%	35%	39%
Service Charges – Water	10%	11%	11%	13%	8%	8%	12%
Interest earned on investments	4%	5%	6%	6%	2%	2%	1%

<b>TABLE 9: ANNUAL INCREASE PER INCOME SOURCE</b>	<b>2007</b>	<b>2008</b>	<b>2009</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>
Equitable Share	34%	19%	31%	12%	29%	9%
Conditional Operational Grants	0%	0%	0%	231%	-64%	16%
Property Rates	13%	7%	13%	30%	3%	10%
Service Charges – Electricity	15%	6%	44%	29%	18%	11%
Service Charges – Water	31%	6%	58%	-17%	-3%	55%
Interest earned on investments	58%	7%	36%	-43%	-33%	-9%

The implementation of the new general valuation on 1 July 2009 provided Hessequa with a steeper year-on-year increase in 2009/10 (30%). However simultaneously the debtors' payment level was negatively affected, elevating debtors accounts from this income source. Hessequa reacted positively to the response of its consumers and in 2010/11 the income from Property Rates only increased by a moderate 3%, followed by an increase of 10% in 2011/12.

During the reporting period from 2005/06 to 2011/12 the total property valuations increased by 319% from R 3.34 billion to an interim valuation of R 14.01 billion. The last general valuation was implemented on the 1<sup>st</sup> of July 2009 and totaled R 13.96 billion. Between 1 July 2009 and 30 June 2012 based on interim valuations, property values have not increased over the past three years. With the next general valuation to be implemented on 1 July 2013, one may see a flattening or even a decrease in the property values, which may negatively impact the growth in Property Rates charged to the consumer.

The impact of continued increases in Electricity tariffs from Eskom will have to be monitored, as it may negatively impact on the consumers' ability to pay for the services as well as Hessequa's ability to collect. It is also important to measure the annual increase per income sources as depicted in **Table 9** above. The annual increases in the revenue from Electricity Services, Water Services and Property Rates have generally been above inflation. The trend in Property Rates and Electricity Services increases seems to have stabilized, however Water Service Charges increased by 55% in 2011/12. This is considered an anomaly as the region experienced droughts in the two previous years which negatively impacted on water sales. The impact of increased Eskom tariffs needs to be monitored.

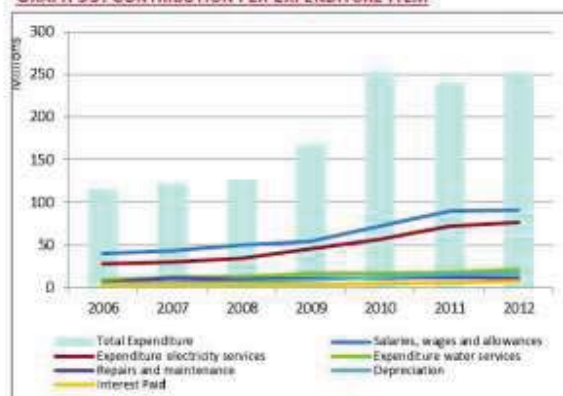
At its peak interest earned on investments contributed 6% to Total Income (excluding capital grants), but has reduced to a contribution of 1% due to cash resources having reduced coupled with the investment cycle being at very low levels. The performance of the appointed Investment Manager needs to be appraised and reviewed.

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers

As an alternative to increase the revenue from Property Rates and service charges through tariff increases, it is recommended that the Investment Property portfolio be reviewed in order to earmark the assets with the best economic development potential for further development that could increase the income base in future. Such longer-term initiatives will assist Hessequa in growing the revenue base from which it can manage expenses, gearing and cash while managing the affordability of tariffs for residents at the same time.

Given the importance of Electricity sales in relation to Hessequa's revenue base, it will make sense to invest in this productive infrastructure to enlarge the income base and also to enlarge the scope for new developments to take place.

**GRAPH 33: CONTRIBUTION PER EXPENDITURE ITEM**



With reference to **Table 10** Salaries and Wages remains Hessequa's largest expense, but the level in relation to expenditure has been declining annually from its highest level of 40% in 2007/08 to 36% in 2011/12. Levels did however increase in 2010/11 when Salaries, Wages and Allowances increased sharply by 30%. In 2011/12 notably there was only a 1% increase in this cost.

Prior to the steep increases in electricity costs, the acceptable industry norm for staff cost to total operating expenditure was set at 35%. In recent years with the inclusion of the higher electricity costs the ratio has decreased to around 30%. Hessequa performs above the sector averages, however when compared to its peers in **Graph 60** on page 36. Hessequa is performing at an acceptable level.

<b>TABLE 10: CONTRIBUTION PER EXPENDITURE ITEM</b>	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Salaries, wages and allowances	35%	36%	40%	33%	29%	38%	36%
Expense - Electricity services	25%	24%	27%	27%	22%	30%	31%
Expense - Water services	8%	11%	10%	10%	7%	7%	9%
Repairs & maintenance	5%	9%	7%	7%	5%	5%	4%
Depreciation	4%	4%	5%	6%	5%	7%	7%
External Interest Paid	3%	3%	3%	2%	2%	2%	3%

<b>TABLE 11: ANNUAL INCREASE PER EXPENDITURE ITEM</b>	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Salaries, wages and allowances	9%	13%	11%	31%	25%	1%
Staff Productivity	3	3	4	4	3	3
Expense - Electricity services	5%	13%	25%	20%	22%	6%
Expense - Water services	28%	-7%	29%	2%	3%	18%
Repairs & maintenance	97%	-24%	29%	4%	8%	-12%
Depreciation	21%	21%	43%	40%	22%	8%
External Interest Paid	-2%	18%	-11%	33%	31%	36%

Staff productivity improved from a 3 to 4 between 2008/09 and 2009/10, before leveling back at 3 times, which could be as a result of in staff members increasing as noted on **page 14**. Staff productivity indicates income earned per Rand spent on employee related costs. This however remains an area for continued strategic management to balance the costs versus benefits, as year on year increases at levels above inflation may not be sustainable in the longer-term. Employees are both the largest resource and expense of Hessequa, therefore the stringent management thereof can most significantly (positively or negatively) impact on the overall finances of Hessequa.

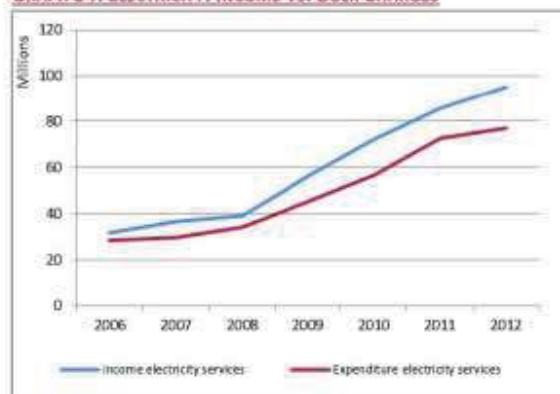
Between 2008/09 and 2010/11 Hessequa took up R 46 million in external loans at rates between 10.50% and 11.50%. As disclosed at the start of the financial analysis Hessequa entered into a loan agreement with Nedbank in July 2012, and borrowed R 24.6 million at an interest rate of 9.06% thereby lowering the average interest on loans from 10.76% to 10.23%. External Interest as a percentage of Total Expenditure is used as one of the benchmarks to determine the level of external debt that can be absorbed. In this regard, this ratio is capped at a level of 7.5% and Hessequa is presently at its highest level at 3%.

The Reserve Bank has cut the prime interest rate significantly over the past few years, which has benefited Hessequa as can be seen from reduced lending rates obtained from Nedbank. The interest rate cycle is anticipated to remain flat for at least the next 12 months.



and it remains a beneficial time to borrow external funds. However the market and movement in interest rates should actively be monitored by Hessequa.

**GRAPH 34: ELECTRICITY: INCOME VS. BULK CHARGES**

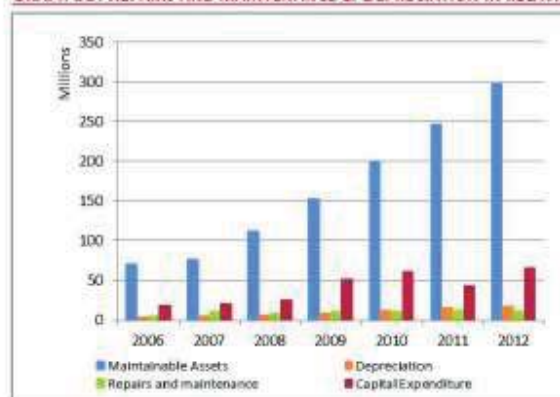


The second largest operational expense for Hessequa is the rising cost of providing Electricity Services to its community. The rising cost of Eskom tariffs have significantly impacted on Hessequa's operational expenses from 2008/09 onwards.

However when compared to the increase in the income from Electricity Services, this is still a source to generate surplus funds from as the increase from the income thereof outweighs the increase in expense. The costs have also stabilized in the past financial year, and it has been confirmed that NERSA has increased Eskom's tariffs by 8% per annum for the next three years, as opposed to the 16% per annum increase requested by Eskom.

The profit margin earned on Electricity should however be monitored to not negatively impact on the consumer.

**GRAPH 35: REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE & DEPRECIATION IN RELATION TO FIXED ASSETS**



Repairs and maintenance costs as a percentage of Total Expenditure, has annually decreased from a level of 9% to 4% in 2011/12. In comparison Repairs and Maintenance has decreased as a percentage of the Maintainable Assets (Fixed Assets excluding Land, Investment Property and Intangible Assets). This ratio has been decreasing year on year from its highest level of 15% in 2006/07 to 4% in 2011/12.

These levels are however impacted by the growing asset base as Hessequa has invested R 286 million into infrastructure assets over the past 7 years, and the asset base has also been adjusted post the revaluation of assets. It has to be determined whether the present level of repairs and maintenance spent is sufficient to maintain the increased asset base.

Although there have been large capital investments into the infrastructure assets of Hessequa within the past 7 years, it is important that Repairs and Maintenance be adjusted upward over the medium term based on the comprehensive and GRAP 17 compliant Asset Register that has been compiled by Hessequa. The Asset Register provides an in-depth review of the long-term repairs & maintenance and capital replacement program required for all Fixed Assets and should inform future capital spending patterns. It will however be underpinned by the annual contribution required to the Capital Replacement Reserve from the operational budget.

From the latest Municipal Budget Circular released by National Treasury for the 2013/14 MTREF cycle it can be noted that National Treasury recommends that Councils take into consideration that the Repairs and Maintenance should be at least 8% of the asset value (write down value) of Property, Plant and Equipment. Applying this calculation to Hessequa's 2011/12 financial results, it can be ascertained that Hessequa only spent 1.8% in comparison to the 8% recommended. Furthermore, National Treasury sets 10% of operating expenditure as a benchmark to ensure the ongoing health of the municipality's infrastructure supported by reference to its asset management plan. From the comprehensive Asset Register it can be summarised that as at 30 June 2011, Hessequa had approximately 14,979 assets and that 92% of these assets were in a fair to very good state with only 8% of assets being in a poor to very poor state. Continued and adequate maintenance will ensure that assets reach and/or exceed its useful life as the repairs and maintenance strategy will determine the capital investment required in future.

The Depreciation Charges have been relatively constant at 6% of depreciable assets. As a percentage of Total Expenditure the annual charge has moderately increased from 4% to 7%. The impact of bringing depreciation charges in line with GRAP has put more pressure on Hessequa's operational expenditure budget and although the item is not a direct cash outflow, it is advisable that the amount

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers

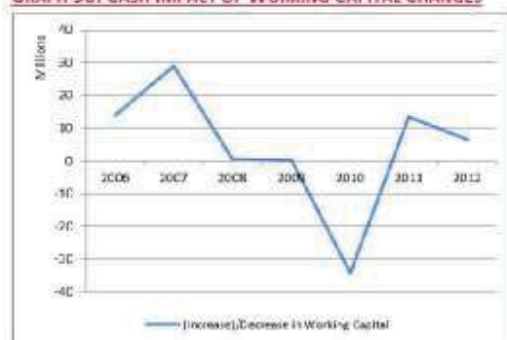
deducted for Depreciation be retained in cash for future maintenance and replacement of infrastructure. This objective should be a long term goal for Hessequa. Hessequa has made provision for a Capital Replacement Fund, but the Fund has not grown in recent years and should be replenished by the transfer from charges for depreciation.

## Cash Flow Statement

Financial Data: Appendix C

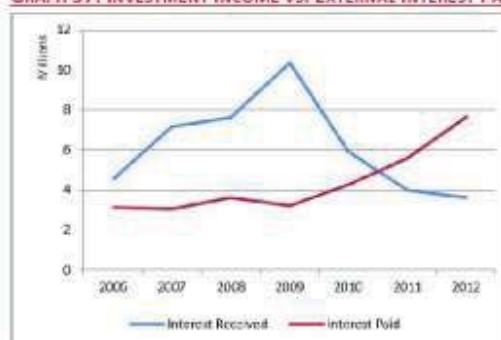
In this section it is important to ascertain whether Hessequa generates surplus cash from its operational activities per annum, as well as to assess to which degree the surplus cash generated is invested back into new capital infrastructure and/or reserved in investments. Furthermore it is to assess the financial resources that are at Hessequa's disposal for investment in capital infrastructure and to which degree these resources are optimally leveraged to accelerate service delivery whilst maintaining a financially sound position.

**GRAPH 36: CASH IMPACT OF WORKING CAPITAL CHANGES**



Hessequa's changes in working capital have generally been positive if not flat, however in 2009/10 the movement was negative as debtors steeply increased post the implementation of the general valuation. In general debtors have been well managed, however the positive movement in working capital is as a result of an increase in current liabilities. Whilst unspent conditional grants have declined to below R 5 million, creditors have increased to R 45 million (from R 5 million in 2005/06).

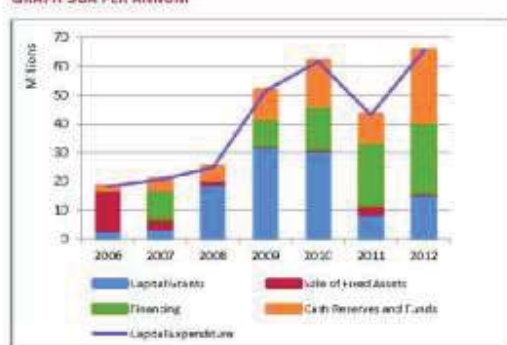
**GRAPH 37: INVESTMENT INCOME VS. EXTERNAL INTEREST PAID**



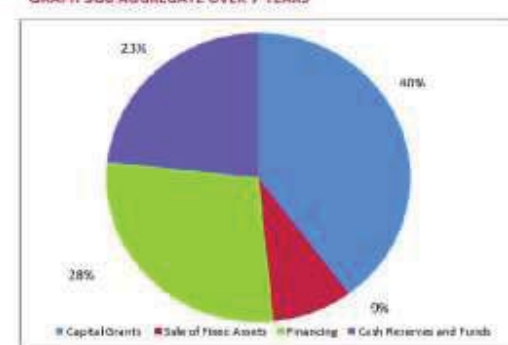
Liquidity levels have declined therefore the decrease in investment income which is further compounded by the low interest rate cycle. Instruments invested in should be reviewed on an annual basis in order to ascertain whether there are other low risk products that may yield higher interest rates within the permitted investment regulations. The interest paid on external loans have steadily increased from below R 4 million to approximately R 8 million per annum due to the utilisation of external funding.

**GRAPH 38: FUNDING RESOURCES UTILISED TO FUND CAPITAL EXPENDITURE**

**GRAPH 38A PER ANNUM**



**GRAPH 38B AGGREGATE OVER 7 YEARS**



Over the past 7 years, Hessequa has invested R 286 million into capital infrastructure, funding the bulk of investments with capital grants received from National and Provincial Government (40%), in combination with own cash generated (23%) and external loans

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers

obtained from the market (28%). The sale of fixed assets has only contributed 8% to the funding of capital infrastructure, and although this is an option to consider, it may be more fruitful to investigate the development of Investment Properties to increase the income base of Hessequa. As at 30 June 2012, Hessequa had Investment Property to the value of R 43 million. Hessequa also had Land and Buildings to the value of R 257 million. On a sensible and in a sustainable manner this resource can be unlocked for both capital and economic investment in the municipal area.

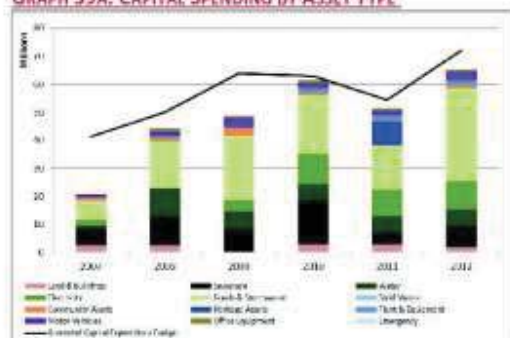
Capital spending increased sharply in 2008/09 from below R 30 million in the past to above R 50 million per annum. In 2008/09 and 2009/10 capital transfers were elevated, but decreased in the following two financial years. In 2010/11 capital expenditure decreased to R 54 million and was funded largely by external financing. In 2011/12 a more balanced approach was used, utilising external funds, own cash and grant funding.

In the medium term it is anticipated that capital expenditure will be funded from similar sources although healthy liquidity levels should be maintained and cognisance should be taken of the fact that Financial Institutions remain nervous to invest in municipal long term projects, and with the negative publicity on the financial affairs of local government is resulting in the investors being even more selective about the municipalities they invest in. With increased rigidity in credit processes foreseen, it is expected that risk margins will also increase and thus influence the pricing of loans advanced. Therefore it remains imperative to provide financial institutions with comfort that Hessequa is managing the various credit risk factors mentioned in this report.

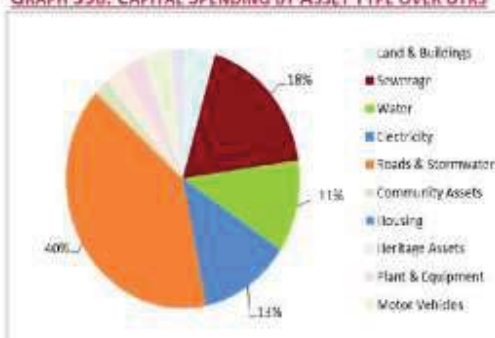
*Based on the financial position of Hessequa as at 30 June 2012 taking inflation into account it has been estimated that over the next 10 years Hessequa should be able to spend in the order of R 800 million on capital infrastructure from R 320 million external loans, R 190 million own cash and R 300 million capital transfers. At current prices, this equates to a 10 year investment of R 600 million.*

Taking the above into account, Hessequa should not within the next MTREF cycle exceed capital spending perimeter of between R 60 to 80 million per annum with a blend of funding from no more than R 24 to 32 million external loan funding, R 14 to 19 million own cash resources and R 22 to 30 million capital transfer. These estimated guidelines are subject to Hessequa maintaining healthy cash levels and operational surpluses, as well as subject to receiving capital transfers and maintaining healthy gearing levels. Should the capital markets change, the assumptions will be affected. Therefore these estimations should be reviewed regularly within the MTREF cycle.

GRAPH 39A: CAPITAL SPENDING BY ASSET TYPE



GRAPH 39B: CAPITAL SPENDING BY ASSET TYPE OVER 6YRS



As can be seen in Table 12 below, in the past 6 years Hessequa has annually spent between 50% and 98% of the adjusted capital budgets as approved. Between 2006/07 and 2008/09 spending levels were below 90% but improved well in 2009/10 and 2010/11. Although the spending level is still above 90% in 2011/12 there has been a declining trend over the past three financial years. With reference to Graph 39B the bulk of capital investments are being made into infrastructure assets. Infrastructure Assets constituted 46% of Property, Plant and Equipment in 2011/12, whilst 87% of capital spending in this year related to investment into infrastructure assets.

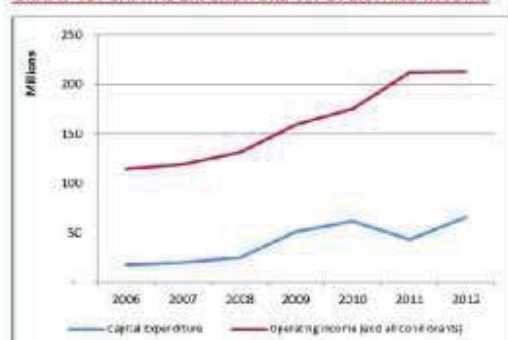
The per person capital spend based on annual population size has increased from R 370 per person in 2005/06 to R 1,245 per person in 2011/12.

The four major groups of infrastructure assets are with regards to Electricity, Water, Roads and Sewerage Assets and although there have been investments into this group of assets, the largest investments are being made into Roads and Stormwater Assets (40%).

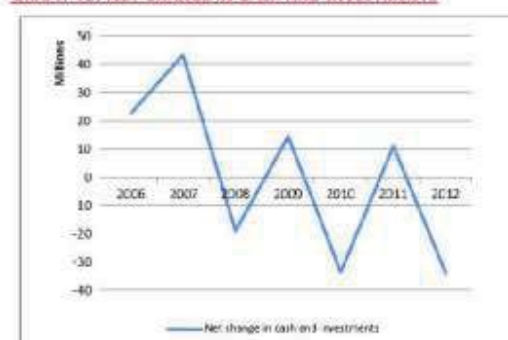


With reference to the latest MFMA Circular No. 66 by National Treasury, it is proposed that 40% of annual capital expenditure be allocated to the renewal of existing assets to secure the ongoing health of the infrastructure assets of the municipality. This should be reflected on with regards to the proposed capital budgets for the next MTREF cycle based on the allocations made for the renewal and refurbishment of assets vs. the investment proposed for new assets.

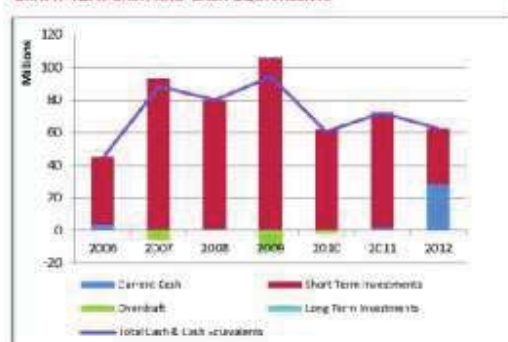
<b>TABLE 12: CAPITAL SPENDING AGAINST BUDGET</b>	<b>2007</b>	<b>2008</b>	<b>2009</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>
Capital Expenditure vs. Capital Budget	50%	89%	76%	98%	95%	91%

**GRAPH 40: CAPITAL EXPENDITURE VS. OPERATING INCOME**

The operational revenue base of Hessequa has steadily increased over the past 7 years before flattening in 2011/12. In comparison Capital Expenditure has shown an inclining trend, growing from R 20 million to R 70 million per annum. The level of investment is considered reasonable considering that the use of external gearing is moderate and that Hessequa needs to improve liquidity levels in the medium term.

**GRAPH 41: NET CHANGE IN CASH AND INVESTMENTS**

Total Cash and Investments have always remained positive, even in years where negative cash book balance were posted. From the **Graph 41** it can be noted that Hessequa has annually alternated between investing surplus cash funds into reserves and capital spending. In the medium term adequate liquidity levels need to be maintained, which may reduce the investment of cash generated into capital spending, therefore limiting negative swings in cash and investment balances.

**GRAPH 42: DETERMINATION OF ADEQUATE LIQUIDITY LEVELS****GRAPH 42A: CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS****GRAPH 42B: LIQUIDITY REQUIREMENTS VS. FREE CASH**

Hessequa has managed to maintain positive cash levels over the past 7 financial years. Cash and Investments totaled R 38.06 million as at 30 June 2012, and for realistic reflection should the loan received in July 2012 be included, the total increases to R 62.66 million. No investments have been ceded for redemption of loan advances, however the following items should be cash backed:

- Unspent conditional grants
- Earmarked Funds, Reserves & Trust Funds (Housing-, Capital Replacement-, Insurance- and Disaster Relief Reserve)
- Short term provisions (Employee Benefit Liabilities)

However, National Treasury prescribes that in addition to holding cash for the above statutory requirements, an acceptable level of cash resources need to be available for working capital requirements and it should equate to at least 3 months of operational expenditure. As a starting point, to maintain a healthy cash position it is recommended that Hessequa set a benchmark to at least hold one months available cash in addition to earmarked funds. This benchmark can be increased to two months operational expenditure in the medium term.

On this basis as per the estimation below in **Table 13** and based on the financial statements for the year ending 30 June 2012, Hessequa could reasonably set the minimum required liquidity level at R 70 million.

<b>TABLE 13: CASH COVERAGE RATIO</b>	<b>2006</b>	<b>2007</b>	<b>2008</b>	<b>2009</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>
Unspent conditional grants	10.28	32.12	29.91	27.20	11.31	6.93	2.84
Short term provision	5.87	6.17	6.66	4.30	9.14	11.24	13.26
Funds, Reserves & Trust Funds (Cash Backed)	21.55	32.57	41.08	40.98	46.28	44.48	31.43
<b>Total</b>	<b>37.70</b>	<b>70.86</b>	<b>77.65</b>	<b>72.48</b>	<b>66.73</b>	<b>62.65</b>	<b>47.53</b>
Unencumbered Cash & Cash Equivalents	45.00	88.34	79.89	94.41	60.90	72.12	62.66
<b>Cash Coverage Ratio (excl Working Capital)</b>	<b>1.19</b>	<b>1.25</b>	<b>1.03</b>	<b>1.30</b>	<b>0.91</b>	<b>1.15</b>	<b>1.32</b>
Working Capital Provision [1 month Opex]	9.52	10.13	10.46	13.86	21.04	19.98	20.90
<b>Cash Coverage Ratio (incl Working Capital)</b>	<b>0.95</b>	<b>1.09</b>	<b>0.91</b>	<b>1.09</b>	<b>0.69</b>	<b>0.87</b>	<b>0.92</b>
Minimum Liquidity Required	47.22	80.99	88.11	86.34	87.76	82.63	68.43
<b>Cash Surplus/(Shortfall)</b>	<b>-2.23</b>	<b>7.34</b>	<b>-8.21</b>	<b>8.07</b>	<b>-26.86</b>	<b>-10.50</b>	<b>-5.76</b>

Based on these assumptions, Hessequa historically held sufficient liquidity levels to provide for all statutory requirements and could mostly provide for 1 months operational expenditure. However liquidity levels have come under pressure in 2009/10 as statutory requirements were not sufficiently covered. The cash coverage ratios including 1 months' working capital has remained below 1 times for the past three years, however it can be positively reported that this ratio has steadily been improving and with an injection of R 6 million, liquidity will be restored to the minimum acceptable level of 1:1. Liquidity levels should also be cross referenced to the liquidity ratio as discussed on **page 15**. It is attainable for Hessequa to restore its liquidity levels. As at 31 December 2012, it has been reported that cash and investments totalled R 71.57 million.

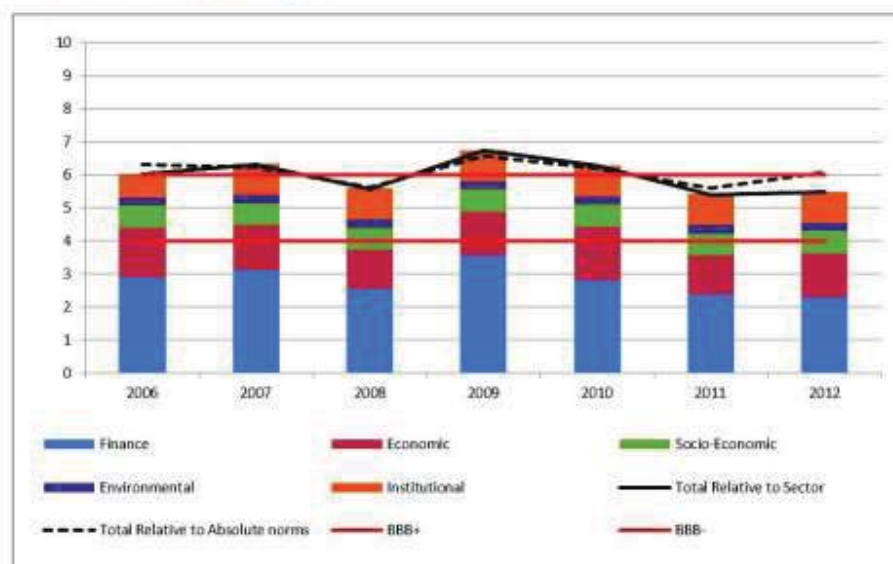
Cash and Investment Management will require active revision of the assumptions as outlined in the calculation above. Reserves will increase according to operational allocations made annually, while the annual increase in the operating budget will have to be factored into at least an annual review of the benchmark.

As indicated in **Table 7** on page 17, Hessequa has the operational ability to post cash operating surpluses, it will become more important how cash surpluses are allocated and accounted for. In the short-term this may impact on Hessequa's own cash contribution to capital funding as referred to under **Graph 38** on page 21. With the exception of contributing to 20% of MIG funded capital projects it is recommended that operational surpluses and cash resources be reserved in the short term to attain the required liquidity levels. This strategic approach should be reviewed on an annual basis.

## Credit Score

The Model calculates a credit score per annum considering the following factors in order of weighting: Finance, Economic, Institutional, Socio-Economic and Environmental. Although financial performance outweighs the other factors, the other factors are by no means considered less important. Institutional strength and stability is as important to the sustainability of a municipality as financial performance and a sizeable economic base. The individual credit score for each municipality is calculated through scoring its performance firstly against its peers to derive a relative to sector score and secondly against our own predefined norms to derive an absolute score. The score is totaled out of 10 and is compared to national ratings on the following scale:

Score	National Ratings Scale	Grading
8 to 10	AAA+ to AA-	Investment Grade
6 to 8	A+ to A-	Investment Grade
4 to 6	BBB+ to BBB-	Investment Grade
0 to 4	< BB+	Non-Investment Grade

**GRAPH 43: HESSEQUA HISTORICAL CREDIT SCORE**

Relative to the Municipal Sector, Hessequa has effectively indicated its ability to manage and improve on its credit score as the score was improved and maintained at a level of A- from 2005/06 to 2009/10 with the exception of a deterioration in 2007/08. However in 2010/11 the ratio deteriorated to BBB+ as gearing increased and liquidity started declining. In 2011/12 the score was maintained. Relative to IPM's norms there has been an improvement in Hessequa performance in 2011/12, which indicates that the score can be re-established as a category A- in future should the necessary risks be monitored.

The movement may seem minimal, but from the perspective of a financial institution the trend is positive especially when compared to the overall downgrade in municipal credit.

The rating must actively be monitored annually, in order to ensure that these levels are maintained and improved upon. Based on this assessment, it is believed that external lenders will view Hessequa as a BBB+ long term credit risk. In the second half of 2011/12, it has become evident that the Capital Market is still very risk averse and very selective of the municipal projects considered for investment.

Financial Institutions have shifted their focus to single A grade and higher rated institutions with the maximum duration of lending reduced to 15 years on preferably an annuity basis. In the past two years credit risks spreads over base rates have moved out with between 50bp to 100bp, although this has been counteracted by decreasing base rates. It remains beneficial to borrow in the present low interest rate cycle.

Some municipalities in the BBB band were unable to obtain funding due to a lack of sufficient financial information being provided to the Financial Institutions, perceptions have further been worsened by wide spread reports of qualified audited financial reports on local municipalities. The commercial banks and other financial institutions are making credit processes more rigid and primarily take comfort from healthy liquidity levels and a stable and capable management capacity.

Hessequa will have to continue providing the Capital Market with comfort that its financial and administrative affairs are in order to continue attracting reasonable investments at competitive rates. As Hessequa mainly has exposure to the Development Bank of SA and First National Bank it is recommended that relationships with all Commercial Banks active in this environment be improved and maintained. It is a positive indicator that a loan has recently been obtained from Nedbank at very competitive rates, thereby broadening Hessequa's interested investors.



## 6. CASH FLOW FORECAST

In this section the MTREF for 2012/13 to 2013/15 is plotted against the historical and actual financial performance of Hessequa over the past 4 years. The assumptions made in the MTREF are extrapolated to project Hessequa's anticipated performance over a period of 5 years. The exercise is used as a reference point from which to verify the budget assumptions made by Hessequa in the MTREF. Besides verifying the budget assumptions, the Cash Flow Forecast will also indicate the impact of implementing the objectives of the MTREF on the overall cash flow of Hessequa. Under the second part of this chapter in the report the projections will be amended to project a more moderate scenario based on key findings of the assessment of the MTREF and will include the latest draft 5-year capital program.

### Review of the approved MTREF from 2012/13 to 2014/15

The following data has been used with an indication of annual increases/ (decreases) and is plotted graphically. The data is to be used for cross referencing (Rm).

<b>Table 14: Forecasted Operational Performance</b>	<b>Historical Financial Data</b>				<b>5 Year Cash Flow Forecast</b>				
Year	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Property rates	31.81	41.37	42.63	47.06	51.86	58.11	63.94	70.34	77.37
		30%	3%	10%	10%	12%	10%	10%	10%
Equitable Share & Conditional Operational Grants	39.28	97.69	50.17	56.80	50.80	46.19	49.62	52.10	54.71
		149%	-49%	13%	-11%	-9%	7%	5%	5%
Interest Income	10.36	5.90	3.97	3.61	4.02	4.14	4.26	4.39	4.52
		0%	-33%	-9%	11%	3%	3%	3%	3%
Income electricity services	56.10	72.28	85.64	95.32	94.71	116.13	134.76	156.32	181.34
		29%	18%	11%	-1%	23%	16%	16%	16%
Income water services	24.54	20.27	19.75	30.57	29.93	28.27	34.91	38.40	42.24
		-17%	-3%	55%	-2%	-6%	23%	10%	10%
Other service charges and income	22.31	19.53	39.14	13.44	39.44	47.86	51.53	54.10	56.81
		-12%	100%	-66%	193%	21%	8%	5%	5%
<b>Total Revenue (excl capital transfers)</b>	<b>184.41</b>	<b>257.05</b>	<b>241.30</b>	<b>246.80</b>	<b>270.75</b>	<b>300.71</b>	<b>339.02</b>	<b>375.65</b>	<b>416.98</b>
		39%	-6%	2%	10%	11%	13%	11%	11%
Salaries, wages and allowances	54.91	72.13	90.18	91.36	101.81	107.23	112.94	118.59	124.52
		31%	25%	1%	11%	5%	5%	5%	5%
Expenditure electricity services	45.38	56.61	72.62	77.07	78.45	87.67	98.34	110.15	123.36
		25%	28%	6%	2%	12%	12%	12%	12%
Expenditure water services	16.70	17.10	17.71	21.70	18.38	19.71	21.14	22.62	24.21
		2%	4%	23%	-15%	7%	7%	7%	7%
Debt Impairment	1.27	2.11	3.39	3.72	3.09	3.28	3.47	3.68	3.90
		66%	61%	10%	-17%	6%	6%	6%	6%
Depreciation	9.15	12.77	15.60	16.79	17.74	19.70	21.96	24.37	27.05
		40%	22%	8%	6%	11%	11%	11%	11%
Repairs and maintenance	11.13	11.55	12.48	11.03	12.51	13.60	14.62	15.64	16.74
		4%	8%	-12%	13%	9%	7%	7%	7%
Interest paid on external loans	3.21	4.26	5.60	7.63	9.41	10.45	11.66	12.82	14.10
		33%	31%	36%	0%	11%	12%	10%	10%
General expenses	24.57	75.89	22.20	21.48	37.22	35.51	35.00	37.45	40.07
		209%	-71%	-3%	73%	-5%	-1%	7%	7%
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	<b>166.32</b>	<b>252.42</b>	<b>239.78</b>	<b>250.77</b>	<b>278.61</b>	<b>297.14</b>	<b>319.13</b>	<b>345.32</b>	<b>373.96</b>
		52%	-5%	5%	11%	7%	7%	8%	8%
<b>Accounting Operating Surplus / (Deficit)</b>	<b>18.08</b>	<b>4.63</b>	<b>1.52</b>	<b>-3.97</b>	<b>-7.87</b>	<b>3.56</b>	<b>19.89</b>	<b>30.33</b>	<b>43.03</b>
		-74%	-67%	-362%	-98%	0%	0%	0%	42%
Change in debtors	-7.54	-14.95	3.91	-4.60	7.85	3.52	3.47	3.68	3.90
		98%	-126%	-218%	-271%	-55%	-1%	6%	6%
Change in creditors	7.71	-19.01	9.54	11.13	-4.38	4.38	3.43	3.63	3.85
		-347%	-150%	17%	-139%	-200%	-22%	6%	6%
Change in stock	-0.02	-0.14	0.08	0.03	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.01
		530%	-156%	-64%	-82%	0%	60%	6%	6%
<b>(Increase)/Decrease in Working Capital</b>	<b>0.15</b>	<b>-34.10</b>	<b>13.53</b>	<b>6.56</b>	<b>3.48</b>	<b>7.90</b>	<b>6.91</b>	<b>7.32</b>	<b>7.76</b>
		-23285%	-140%	-52%	-47%	127%	-13%	6%	6%

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers

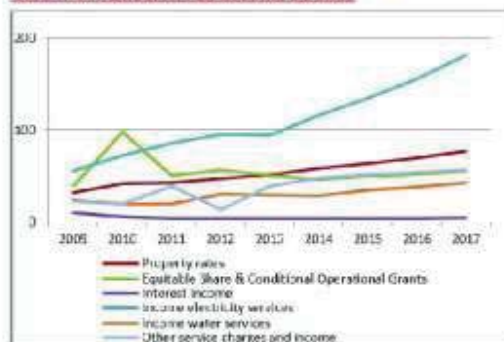
# Independent Financial Assessment

# Hessequa Municipality

Non-cash and adjustments	2.07	13.82	12.38	24.92	-10.89	26.65	29.54	36.48	40.54
		568%	-10%	101%	-144%	-345%	11%	23%	11%
Total adjustments	2.21	-20.28	25.91	31.47	-7.42	34.56	36.45	43.81	48.30
		-1016%	-228%	21%	-124%	-566%	5%	20%	10%
Cash operating surplus /(deficit)	20.30	-15.66	27.43	27.50	-15.28	38.12	56.34	74.14	91.32
		-177%	-275%	0%	-156%	-349%	48%	32%	23%
Interest received	10.36	5.90	3.97	3.61	4.02	4.14	4.26	4.39	4.52
		0%	-33%	0%	0%	3%	3%	3%	3%
Interest paid	-3.21	-4.26	-5.60	-7.63	-8.28	-8.99	-9.52	-10.19	-10.60
		33%	31%	36%	0%	0%	6%	7%	4%
Net interest	7.14	1.64	-1.63	-4.02	-4.26	-4.85	-5.26	-5.81	-6.08
		-77%	-200%	146%	0%	14%	8%	10%	5%
Cash retained after interest	27.44	-14.02	25.80	23.49	-19.55	33.27	51.08	68.33	85.25
		-151%	-284%	-9%	-183%	-270%	54%	34%	25%
Debt repayment	-3.55	-4.46	-5.34	-8.23	-9.40	-11.39	-11.03	-11.36	-13.45
		26%	0%	54%	0%	0%	-3%	3%	18%
Cash retained before capital movements	23.90	-18.48	20.45	15.25	-28.94	21.88	40.05	56.96	71.79
		-177%	-211%	-25%	-290%	-176%	83%	42%	26%
Capital grants	32.22	31.09	8.67	15.61	14.37	22.83	31.87	31.87	31.87
		-4%	-72%	80%	-8%	59%	40%	0%	0%
Sale of fixed assets	0.58	0.63	3.22	0.70	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
		0%	0%	0%	0%	0.00%	0%	0%	0%
Capital expenditure	-51.65	-61.56	-43.14	-65.63	-48.92	-60.07	-64.64	-64.64	-64.64
		19%	-30%	52%	-25%	23%	8%	0%	0%
Net capital movement	-18.05	-29.85	-31.25	-49.31	-34.55	-37.25	-32.78	-32.78	-32.78
		58%	5%	58%	-30%	-8%	-12%	0%	0%
Balance before financing	5.04	-48.32	-10.80	-34.06	-63.49	-15.37	7.28	24.19	39.02
		-1058%	-78%	215%	86%	-76%	-147%	232%	61%
Financing	9.48	14.81	22.02	24.60	16.25	16.15	17.25	15.00	15.00
		0%	0%	0%	0%	-1%	0%	0%	0%
Net change in cash and investments	14.52	-33.52	11.23	-9.46	-47.24	0.78	24.53	39.19	54.02
		-331%	-133%	-184%	-399%	-102%	0%	0%	38%
Cash & Investment Balances	94.41	60.90	72.12	62.66	15.42	16.20	40.73	79.92	133.94
		-35%	18%	-13%	-75%	5%	151%	96%	68%

## Operating Income Trend Analysis

GRAPH 44: GROWTH PER INCOME SOURCE



Projections of the main revenue sources over the MTREF cycle and as extrapolated until 2016/17 indicates that Property Rates and Electricity Service Charges will remain the two major income drivers for Hessequa. However, it is anticipated that Electricity Charges will increase at a steeper scale than Property Rates. As highlighted in the historical analysis, arrears on billed Property Rates, Electricity and Water Services have been escalating, although Hessequa has effectively managed Operating Revenue through efficient collection practices. These practices should be maintained. The consumer's long term ability to pay for services needs to be considered as increases in revenue sources are still seen to be higher than inflation. The impact on collection levels should be monitored as Hessequa has catered for a 97.5% payment level in its budget projections.

Table 15: Contribution per Income Source	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Property Rates	17%	16%	18%	19%	19%	19%	19%	19%	19%
Equitable Share & Conditional Operational Grants	21%	38%	21%	23%	19%	15%	15%	14%	13%
Service Charges – Electricity	30%	28%	35%	39%	35%	39%	40%	42%	43%
Service Charges – Water	13%	8%	8%	12%	11%	9%	10%	10%	10%

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers

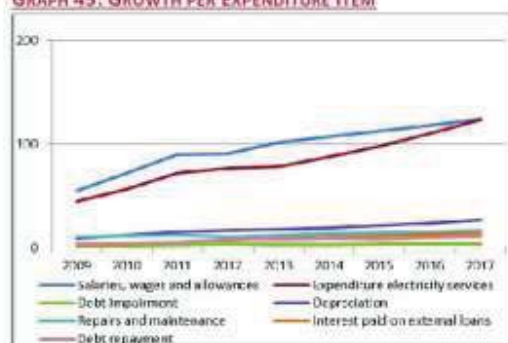


In 2013/14 the new general valuation roll will be implemented and projections are that there will not be a steep increase in property rates during this year, although the past trend needs to be borne in mind should there be a higher increase than the 12% projection. With implementation of the last valuation roll in 2009/10, the collection levels dropped from 97% to 93% and although payment levels have recovered this historical trend needs to be kept in mind and be taken into consideration when reviewing and monitoring the expenditure budget. Specifically as in 2009/10 Hessequa posted a cash operating deficit as a result of the impact of Property Rate increases on collection levels.

It remains important for Hessequa to grow its revenue base and as there is limited capacity to derive further significant growth from the existing consumer base, it is imperative that Economic Development opportunities be investigated and considered.

## Operating Expenditure Trend Analysis

**GRAPH 45: GROWTH PER EXPENDITURE ITEM**



Hessequa has historically proven capable of effectively managing operating expenditure. This strength will be of immeasurable worth into the future.

With reference to Staff Costs, this cost remains Hessequa's largest expense, long term obligation and resource. In **Table 16** below it is indicated that as a percentage Staff Costs will annually gradually decrease from 37% in 2012/13 to 35% by 2014/15. However, year-on-year increases are projected at 5% per annum from 2013/14 onwards. This assumption may be unrealistic considering that Hessequa doesn't have an influence on decisions taken by the National Bargaining Council. It is proposed that the future scenario be tested with a 7-8% per annum salary increase.

As the largest expense and should there be changes in assumptions there will be a considerable and direct effect on the operating performance of Hessequa. This does however remain an area for optimal management and the assumptions need to be tested to determine the long term costs involved vs. the benefits derived from this resource. This cost will also be affected by any new placements.

Debt impairment is maintained at a level of 1% throughout the 5-year projection, which is in line with the historic trend. In 2009/10 this provision was insufficient as debtor payments decreased and this risk should be catered for in future. This level may therefore be inadequate and should be carefully monitored.

Repairs and Maintenance are projected to increase from 4% to 5% of operating expenditure per annum, the marginal improvement is positive although the level should be tested against the level of repairs required.

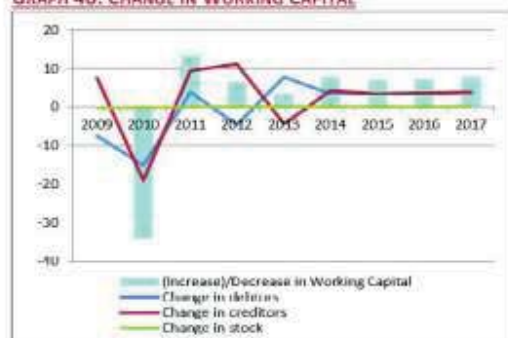
Depreciation is projected to remain at similar levels. Going forward it will become important that Depreciation charges not be treated as a non-cash expense, but rather as a method to increase the Capital Replacement Reserve by transferring the allocation to this reserve for future capital expenditure out of own resources.

	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Salaries, wages and allowances	33%	29%	38%	36%	37%	36%	35%	34%	33%
Expense - Electricity services	27%	22%	30%	31%	28%	30%	31%	32%	33%
Expense - Water services	10%	7%	7%	9%	7%	7%	7%	7%	6%
Debt impairment	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%	1%
Repairs & maintenance	2%	5%	5%	4%	4%	5%	5%	5%	4%
Depreciation	6%	5%	7%	7%	6%	7%	7%	7%	7%
External Interest Paid	2%	2%	2%	3%	3%	4%	4%	4%	4%

Overall income and expenditure projections are reasonable with no alarming trends in projected collection or spending patterns.

## Cash Flow Trend Analysis

**GRAPH 46: CHANGE IN WORKING CAPITAL**



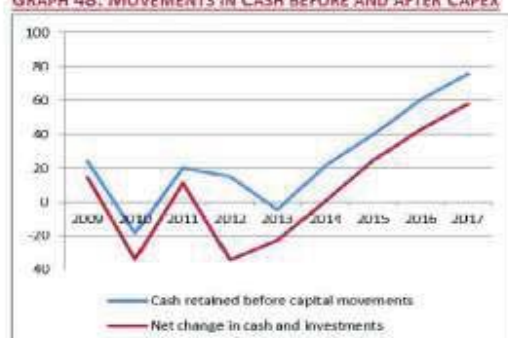
It is projected that changes in working capital will remain positive, based on the assumptions that creditors and provisions will increase year-on-year and net debtors will reduce. The assumption that creditors and provisions will continue increasing, should be of concern as this will require a future cash outflow from Hessequa as a liability is created. With regards to Net Debtors the assumptions need to be checked as Hessequa is providing debt impairment for a collection level of 97.5%. Should debtors perform accordingly the change should at a minimum be flat and not positive unless bad debts are to be impaired.

**GRAPH 47: CASH VS. OPERATING SURPLUS/ (DEFICIT)**



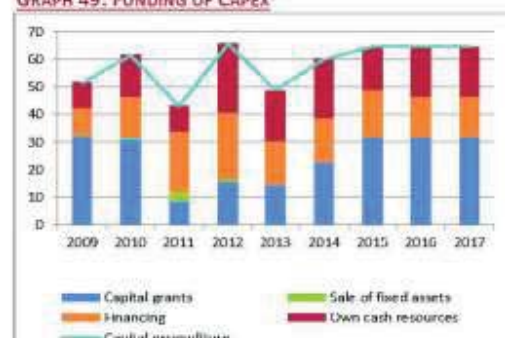
On an accounting basis, Hessequa historically posted operational surpluses although to a declining degree, with a slight operational deficit posted in 2011/12. This trend is projected into 2012/13 with a operational deficit of R 8 million. This reflects negatively on Hessequa's capacity to effectively manage income against expenses. A recovery is projected from 2012/13 onwards, but assumptions need to be checked for reasonability. On a cashflow basis Hessequa has projected a sharp decrease in cash operating surpluses for 2012/13 which may be conservative when compared to 2011/12. Future projections are in contrast positive and the degree of projected improvement may be unrealistic.

**GRAPH 48: MOVEMENTS IN CASH BEFORE AND AFTER CAPEX**



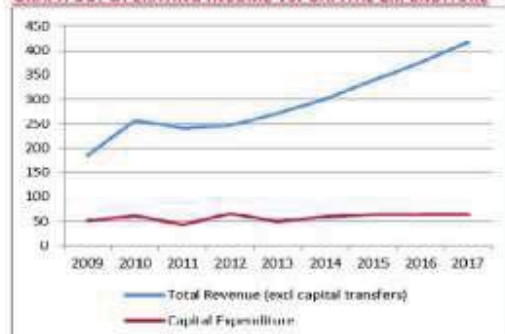
Hessequa has fluctuated between investing operational cash generated into capital expenditure and into reserves. It is projected that from Hessequa anticipates continuing using operational cash to part fund capital expenditure. Short term indications are that Hessequa will further reduce cash and investments in 2012/13 before starting a recovery of cash levels. This approach should be revisited as liquidity ratios are already under strain and should be restored from operational cash.

**GRAPH 49: FUNDING OF CAPEX**



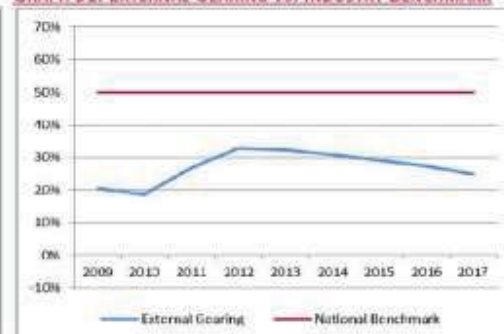
Hessequa projects an increase in capital transfers allocated, with a healthier blend of funding the balance with external loans and cash resources. Capital investment is projected to reduce to around R 50 million in 2012/13 with an annual increase to historic levels of R 65 million.

GRAPH 50: OPERATING INCOME VS. CAPITAL EXPENDITURE



Post larger capital investments in 2009/10 and 2011/12; capital spending is projected at levels of between R 50 million and R 65 million per annum. Should capital funding sources be reduced due to the short term recovery of liquidity, it will be important that capital funding resources be invested into infrastructure assets based on an in-depth understanding of the maintenance, replacement and investment requirements of Hessequa's Infrastructure Assets and capacity needs.

GRAPH 51: EXTERNAL GEARING VS. INDUSTRY BENCHMARK



Historically Hessequa's has maintained a healthy utilization of external gearing as a source of capital funding. Levels have increased as a result of new loan from Nedbank. External gearing as a percentage of Operating Revenue has increased to 33% in 2011/12, which is an acceptable level against the industry benchmark of 50%. It is projected that this level will decrease to 25% in the medium term.

GRAPH 52: CAPITAL REDEMPTION PROFILE ON EXTERNAL BORROWINGS



With reference to **Table 17**, over the past 4 years Hessequa has managed to service debt at levels of between R 7 million and R 16 million per annum. Based on projections of anticipated borrowing, debt servicing levels will increase to R 24 million per annum over the next 5 years. As Hessequa needs to manage its growing expenses against the level of growth in its revenue base, these levels seem reasonable but should not materially increase. It is advised that Hessequa consider utilizing and managing external gearing at a maximum level of 35%, whilst investing operational cash generated into improving liquidity and cash reserve levels. As depicted in **Table 17** below gearing is monitored against not only the level of debt but also against the impact thereof on the operating budget and net cash flow position. Based on the assumptions made in the MTREF it is clear that Hessequa will remain well within healthy financial limits and can utilise gearing

within sound parameters. Adjustments would however be required should the assumptions made in the MTREF not materialize, which will require continued monitoring of the actual financial performance of Hessequa.

Table 17: Gearing Ratios			2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
External Gearing	Min	50%	20%	19%	27%	33%	32%	31%	29%	27%	25%
Net Cash Flow to External Interest	Max	1.1	9.54	-2.29	5.61	4.08	-1.36	4.70	6.37	7.70	9.04
External Interest Paid	Max	7.50%	2%	2%	2%	3%	3%	3%	3%	3%	3%
Total Loan Repayments	Mill		6.76	8.72	10.94	15.87	17.68	20.38	20.55	21.56	24.05

Table 18: Cash Requirements			2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Working Capital Reserve [1 month]			13.86	21.04	19.98	20.90	22.96	24.49	26.31	28.47	30.84
Unspent Conditional Funding			27.20	11.31	6.93	2.84	-	-	-	-	-
Cash Backed Reserves			40.98	46.28	44.48	31.43	12.88	3.14	6.61	13.93	29.37
Short term provisions			4.30	9.14	11.24	13.26	9.99	11.37	13.00	14.87	17.00
<b>Total Minimum Cash Required</b>			<b>86.34</b>	<b>87.76</b>	<b>82.63</b>	<b>68.43</b>	<b>45.83</b>	<b>39.00</b>	<b>45.92</b>	<b>57.27</b>	<b>77.20</b>
Surplus/(Shortfall)			8.07	-26.86	-10.50	-5.76	-30.41	-22.80	-5.19	22.65	56.73

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers



## Key findings from MTREF assessment

*Factors to be stress tested in the following scenario on page 31*

- Revenue projections with annual increases of between 10% to 13% seem optimistic when compared with the limited increases experienced in the past 4 years, the materialization hereof needs to be monitored. Unless the increased revenue is generated from new developments, increases at these levels may also impact on the consumers' ability to pay for services as the average increase in the per capita income of Hessequa's population has been between 8% and 11% per annum.
- On the other hand expenditure is projected to increase by between 7% to 8% in the medium term, although effective expenditure will benefit the operational performance of Hessequa these projections may be considered unreasonable.
- Hessequa has provided for debt impairment based on payment levels of 97.5%. As noted in the historical analysis debt impairment for debtors may have been too low and to increase it to realistic levels will have a direct impact on the operating budget. In addition should payment levels fall below 97.5% it will require an adjustment to expenditure to reduce the risk of posting operational deficits.
- Salaries and Wage increases are projected at levels that are unrealistically low at 5%, and for reasonable comparison will be projected at 7% in the scenario to follow.
- Repairs and Maintenance remains at levels of 4% to 5% of operating expenditure. This may be adequate considering that the state of assets are considered fair to very good. This assumption needs to be reviewed annually.
- Depreciation charges need to be treated as a method to increase capital replacement reserve. It is not evident from the budgeting process that Hessequa has catered for the transfer of allocation to a ring-fenced reserve.
- Working capital is projected to increase. It is however advisable that creditors be maintained whilst the necessary increases be made in provisions for short term provisions. Realistic provisions are also to be made for the anticipated growth in debtors due to non-collection.
- Capital expenditure is reduced in 2012/13 to below R 50 million, however it is projected that R 18 million thereof will be funded from own resources. It is also projected that Hessequa will post a cash operational deficit and that the net effect of operational and capital activities will result in a cash outflow of R 47 million. Albeit that operational projections may be overly conservative, it is recommended that cash outflows be strictly monitored and that cash resources not be depleted thereby further burdening the liquidity levels.

Capital expenditure is projected to increase to R 65 million per annum in the medium term and to be funded from a blend of own funds, capital transfers and external borrowing. Gearing will decrease over the medium term from 33% to 25%, however debt servicing will increase from R 15 million to R 24 million per annum. New funding is projected over a term of 10 years and it may be beneficial to increase the term to 15 years should gearing be increased to above 25%.

This is still within acceptable levels should income materialize and expenditure be effectively managed. However it is recommended that Hessequa in the medium term rather invest cash surpluses into liquidity and reserves as based on the assumptions made in the MTREF liquidity levels are projected to deteriorate further in the short term before improving over the medium term [Table 18].

- The above findings and recommendations will be used to test the projections made in **Table 14**, by way of amendments made in **Table 19** on page 32.

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers

### Scenario including draft 5-year capital program

The following data has been used with an indication of annual increases/ (decreases) and is plotted graphically. The data is to be used for cross referencing (Rm).

<b>Table 19: Forecasted Operational Performance</b>	<b>Historical Financial Data</b>				<b>5 Year Cash Flow Forecast</b>				
<b>Year</b>	<b>2009</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2013</b>	<b>2014</b>	<b>2015</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2017</b>
Property rates	31.81	41.37	42.63	47.06	51.86	58.11	63.94	70.34	77.37
		30%	3%	10%	10%	12%	10%	10%	10%
Equitable Share & Conditional Operational Grants	39.28	97.69	50.17	56.80	50.80	46.19	49.62	52.10	54.71
		149%	-49%	13%	-11%	-9%	7%	5%	5%
Interest Income	10.36	5.90	3.97	3.61	4.02	4.34	4.26	4.39	4.52
		0%	-33%	-9%	11%	3%	3%	3%	3%
Income electricity services	56.10	72.28	85.64	95.32	94.71	116.13	134.76	156.32	181.34
		29%	18%	11%	-1%	23%	16%	16%	16%
Income water services	24.54	20.27	19.75	30.57	29.93	28.27	34.91	38.40	42.24
		-17%	-3%	55%	-2%	-6%	23%	10%	10%
Other service charges and income	22.31	19.53	39.14	13.44	39.44	47.86	51.53	54.10	56.81
		-12%	100%	-66%	193%	21%	8%	5%	5%
<b>Total Revenue (excl capital transfers)</b>	<b>184.41</b>	<b>257.05</b>	<b>241.30</b>	<b>246.80</b>	<b>270.75</b>	<b>300.71</b>	<b>339.02</b>	<b>375.65</b>	<b>416.98</b>
		39%	-6%	2%	10%	11%	13%	11%	11%
Salaries, wages and allowances	54.91	72.13	90.18	91.36	101.81	108.93	116.56	124.72	133.45
		31%	25%	1%	11%	7%	7%	7%	7%
Expenditure electricity services	45.38	56.61	72.62	77.07	78.45	87.67	98.34	110.15	123.36
		25%	28%	6%	2%	12%	12%	12%	12%
Expenditure water services	16.70	17.10	17.71	21.70	18.38	19.71	21.14	22.62	24.21
		2%	4%	23%	-15%	7%	7%	7%	7%
Debt Impairment	1.27	2.11	3.39	3.72	3.09	3.28	3.47	3.68	3.90
		66%	61%	10%	-17%	6%	6%	6%	6%
Depreciation	9.15	12.77	15.60	16.79	17.74	19.70	21.96	24.37	27.05
		40%	22%	8%	6%	11%	11%	11%	11%
Repairs and maintenance	11.13	11.55	12.48	11.03	12.51	13.60	14.62	15.64	16.74
		4%	8%	-12%	13%	9%	7%	7%	7%
Interest paid on external loans	3.21	4.26	5.60	7.63	8.28	8.99	10.29	12.14	13.80
		33%	31%	36%	0%	9%	14%	18%	14%
General expenses	24.57	75.89	22.20	21.48	40.39	43.22	46.25	49.48	52.95
		209%	-71%	-3%	88%	7%	7%	7%	7%
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	<b>166.32</b>	<b>252.42</b>	<b>239.78</b>	<b>250.77</b>	<b>280.65</b>	<b>305.10</b>	<b>332.63</b>	<b>362.80</b>	<b>395.46</b>
		52%	-5%	5%	12%	9%	9%	9%	9%
<b>Accounting Operating Surplus / (Deficit)</b>	<b>18.08</b>	<b>4.63</b>	<b>1.52</b>	<b>-3.97</b>	<b>-9.91</b>	<b>-4.39</b>	<b>6.39</b>	<b>12.85</b>	<b>21.52</b>
		-74%	-67%	-362%	150%	0%	0%	0%	67%
Change in debtors	-7.54	-14.95	3.91	-4.60	-3.39	-4.24	-5.08	-5.90	-6.83
		98%	-126%	-218%	-26%	25%	20%	16%	16%
Change in creditors	7.71	-19.01	9.54	11.13	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
		-347%	-150%	17%	-100%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Change in stock	-0.02	-0.14	0.08	0.03	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
		530%	-156%	-64%	-100%	0%	0%	0%	0%
<b>(Increase)/Decrease in Working Capital</b>	<b>0.15</b>	<b>-34.18</b>	<b>13.53</b>	<b>6.56</b>	<b>-3.39</b>	<b>-4.24</b>	<b>-5.08</b>	<b>-5.90</b>	<b>-6.83</b>
		-23285%	-140%	-52%	-152%	25%	20%	16%	16%
Non-cash and adjustments	2.07	13.82	12.38	24.92	25.09	27.82	31.46	35.80	40.23
		568%	-10%	101%	1%	11%	13%	14%	12%
<b>Total adjustments</b>	<b>2.21</b>	<b>-26.28</b>	<b>25.91</b>	<b>31.47</b>	<b>21.70</b>	<b>23.58</b>	<b>26.37</b>	<b>29.91</b>	<b>33.40</b>
		-1016%	-228%	21%	-31%	9%	12%	13%	12%
<b>Cash operating surplus / (deficit)</b>	<b>20.30</b>	<b>-15.66</b>	<b>27.43</b>	<b>27.50</b>	<b>11.80</b>	<b>19.19</b>	<b>32.77</b>	<b>42.76</b>	<b>54.93</b>
		-177%	-275%	0%	-57%	63%	71%	30%	28%
Interest received	10.36	5.90	3.97	3.61	3.45	2.31	1.84	2.07	2.75
		0%	-33%	0%	0%	-33%	-20%	12%	33%
Interest paid	-3.21	-4.26	-5.60	-7.63	-8.28	-8.99	-10.29	-12.14	-13.80
		33%	31%	36%	0%	0%	14%	18%	14%

Prepared by INCA Portfolio Managers

Net interest	7.14	1.64	-1.63	-4.02	-4.84	-6.58	-8.44	-10.07	-11.05
		-77%	-200%	146%	0%	38%	26%	19%	10%
Cash retained after interest	27.44	-14.02	25.80	23.49	6.96	12.51	24.32	32.69	43.87
		-151%	-284%	-9%	-70%	80%	94%	34%	34%
Debt repayment	-3.55	-4.46	-5.34	-8.23	-9.40	-10.89	-10.18	-10.20	-12.03
		26%	0%	54%	0%	0%	-6%	0%	18%
Cash retained before capital movements	23.90	-18.48	20.45	15.25	-2.43	1.63	14.14	22.48	31.84
		-177%	-211%	-25%	-116%	-167%	770%	59%	42%
Capital grants	32.22	31.09	8.67	15.61	14.37	25.73	20.83	20.16	20.07
		-4%	-72%	80%	-8%	79%	-19%	-3%	0%
Sale of fixed assets	0.58	0.63	3.22	0.70	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
		0%	0%	0%	0%	0.00%	0%	0%	0%
Capital expenditure	-51.65	-61.56	-43.14	-65.63	-48.92	-58.77	-58.44	-56.11	-56.61
		19%	-30%	52%	-25%	20%	-1%	-4%	1%
Net capital movement	-18.85	-29.85	-31.25	-49.31	-34.55	-33.05	-37.61	-35.95	-36.54
		58%	5%	58%	-30%	-4%	14%	-4%	0%
Balance before financing	5.04	-48.32	-10.80	-34.06	-36.98	-31.42	-23.47	-13.46	-4.70
		-1058%	-78%	215%	9%	-15%	-25%	-43%	-65%
Financing	9.48	14.81	22.02	24.60	16.25	23.01	27.57	25.82	23.61
		0%	0%	0%	0%	42%	0%	0%	0%
Net change in cash and investments	14.52	-33.52	11.23	-9.46	-20.73	-8.41	4.10	12.36	18.90
		-331%	-133%	-184%	119%	-59%	0%	0%	53%
Cash & Investment Balances	94.41	60.90	72.12	62.66	41.93	33.52	37.62	49.98	68.88
		-35%	18%	-13%	-33%	-20%	12%	33%	38%

The following changes in assumptions were reflected in the above cash flow forecast scenario:

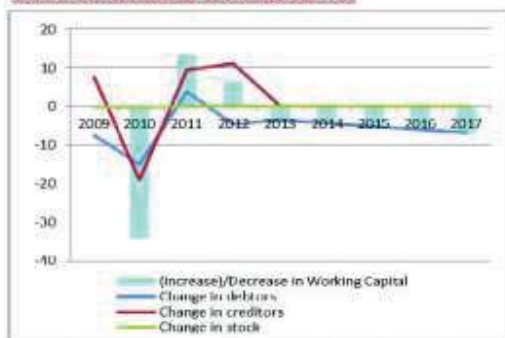
- Income projections were left unchanged, although projections need to be reviewed annually.
- Total Expenditure was increased by 9% per annum which is below the annual increase projected for income. Expenditure projections were amended to include a 7% increase on Salaries, Wages and Allowances from 2013/14 onwards.
- Working capital was calculated based on the maintenance of a 97% payment level taking into consideration the debt impairment originally projected. It was assumed that that creditors and stock would not change. Should current liabilities increase as a result of statutory short term provisions increasing, an equal increase will be required in expenditure and projected cash levels [Graph 53 page 34].
- Interest earned was calculated at 5.5% on the prior years' closing balance.
- The draft 5-year capital program was incorporated. Financing requirements were plotted over a 15 year amortising term based on an interest rate of 10.50%. On this basis Hessequa will perform within the recommended guidelines as mentioned earlier in the report as capital expenditure is reduced to R 55-60 million per annum funded largely by increased external funding of R 116 million over 5 years as well as capital grants of R 101 million and R 61 million own cash resources. In essence gearing has been increased by R 30 million thereby reducing funding from own resources by this amount.
- If the borrowing term is increased to 15 years, the capital and interest redemption costs on the higher level gearing of 35%, will still remain at earlier projected levels of R 25 million per annum by 2016/17. [Table 20]
- Considering the more conservative projections, cash and liquidity is projected to decrease in 2012/13 albeit not to the low level as projected previously. Based on the more prudent projections it is evident that recovering liquidity in the short to medium term will require continued financial management of revenue and expenditure [Table 21].



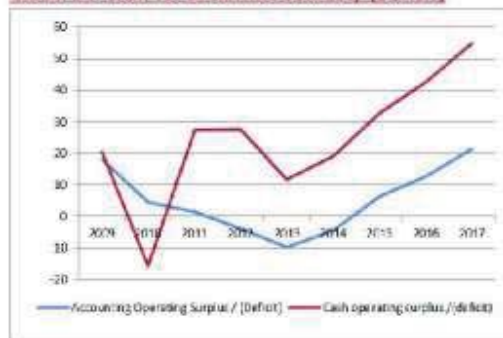
As a result of the above amendments the cash flow graphs have been affected as projected below:

### Cash Flow Trend Analysis (Scenario)

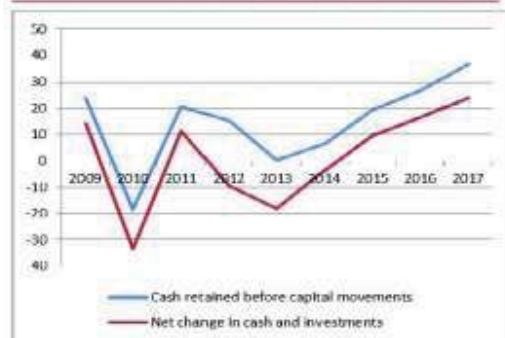
**GRAPH 53: CHANGE IN WORKING CAPITAL**



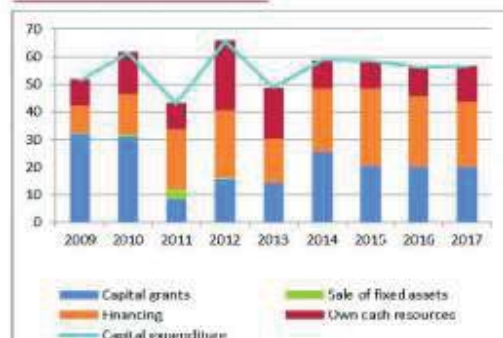
**GRAPH 54: CASH VS. OPERATING SURPLUS/ (DEFICIT)**



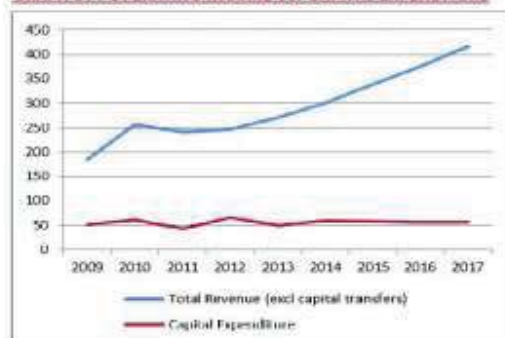
**GRAPH 55: MOVEMENTS IN CASH BEFORE AND AFTER CAPEX**



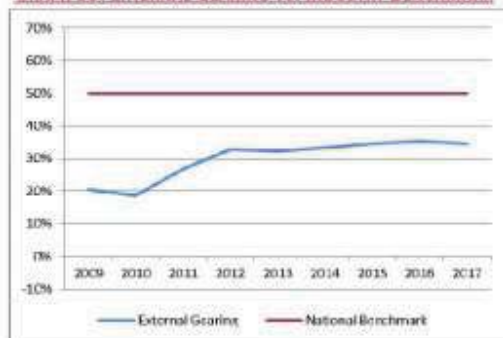
**GRAPH 56: FUNDING OF CAPEX**



**GRAPH 57: OPERATING INCOME VS. CAPITAL EXPENDITURE**



**GRAPH 58: EXTERNAL GEARING VS. INDUSTRY BENCHMARK**



GRAPH 59: CAPITAL REDEMPTION PROFILE ON EXTERNAL BORROWINGS

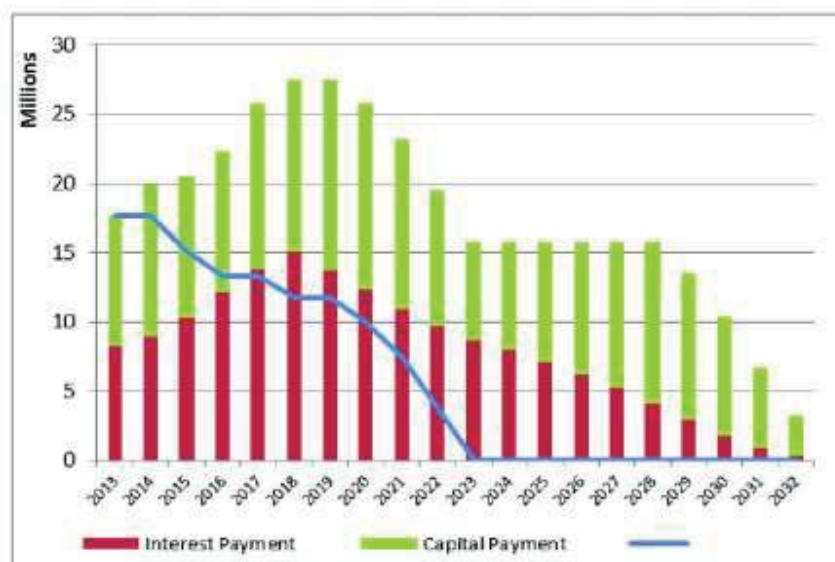


Table 20: Gearing Ratios			2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
External Gearing	Minimum	50%	20%	19%	27%	33%	32%	33%	35%	35%	35%
Net Cash Flow to External Interest	Maximum	1.1	9.54	-2.29	5.61	4.08	1.84	2.39	3.36	3.69	4.18
External Interest Paid	Maximum	7.50%	2%	2%	2%	3%	3%	3%	3%	3%	3%
Total Loan Repayments	Million		6.76	8.72	10.94	15.87	17.68	19.88	20.47	22.34	25.84

Table 21: Cash Requirements	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
Working Capital Reserve [1 month]	13.86	21.04	19.98	20.90	23.13	25.15	27.43	29.93	32.63
Unspent Conditional Funding	27.20	11.31	6.93	2.84	-	-	-	-	-
Cash Backed Reserves	40.98	46.28	44.48	31.43	12.88	3.14	6.61	13.93	29.37
Short term provisions	4.30	9.14	11.24	13.26	9.99	11.37	13.00	14.87	17.00
<b>Total Minimum Cash Required</b>	<b>86.34</b>	<b>87.76</b>	<b>82.63</b>	<b>68.43</b>	<b>46.00</b>	<b>39.66</b>	<b>47.04</b>	<b>58.73</b>	<b>78.99</b>
Surplus/(Shortfall)	8.07	-26.86	-10.50	-5.76	-4.07	-6.14	-9.42	-8.75	-10.11

#### Comments and findings:

- The assumptions made are considered realistic and attainable based on Hessequa's management capacity. An area that has however not been addressed in the projections, relates to the creation of cash reserves for the future maintenance of capital infrastructure from own resources.
- It is further evident that Hessequa is presently not in a position to allocate its full depreciation charge to the establishment of capital replacement reserve. However it is recommended that this objective be included in the medium term financial objectives of Hessequa, not only to guarantee the long term financial health of the Municipality but also the long term health of its infrastructure assets.

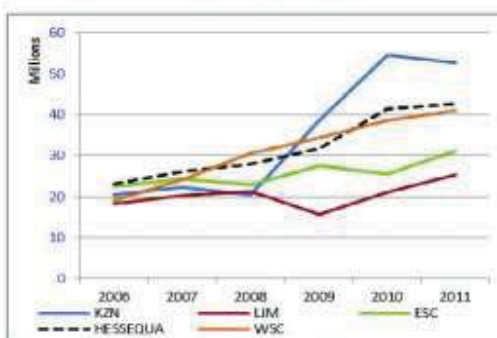
## 7. PEER COMPARISON

The historical financial performance of Hessequa has been reported on and the budget assumptions made in the MTREF have been scrutinized. To form an objective opinion on the holistic financial position of Hessequa, a comparison of its financial performance against that of its peers in the municipal market is made.

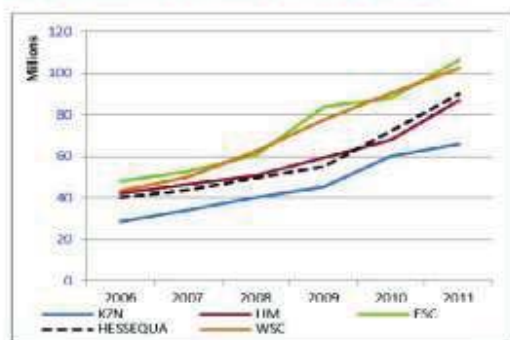
GRAPH 60: TOTAL OPERATING INCOME (EXCL. CONDITIONAL GRANTS)



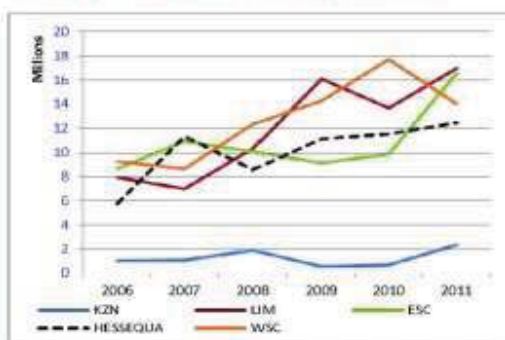
GRAPH 61: GROWTH IN PROPERTY RATES BASE



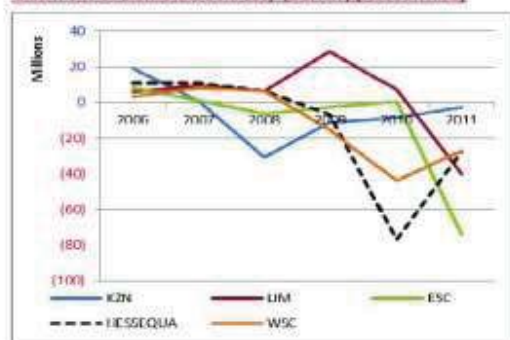
GRAPH 62: INCREASE IN SALARIES, WAGES & ALLOWANCES



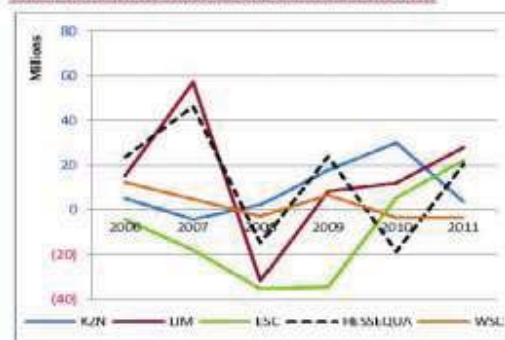
GRAPH 63: CONTRIBUTION TO REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE



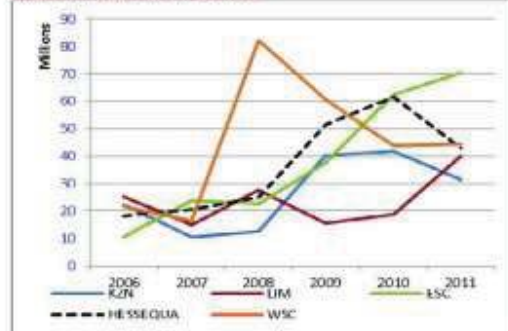
GRAPH 64: OPERATIONAL SURPLUS/ (DEFICIT) (ACCOUNTING)



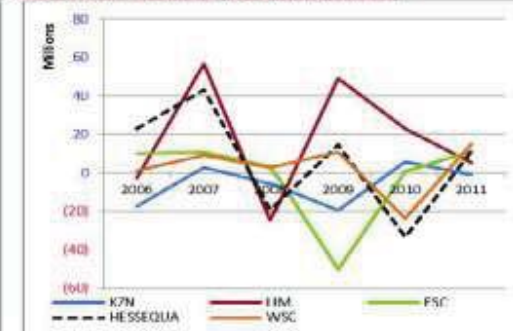
GRAPH 65: CASH RETAINED BEFORE CAPITAL EXPENDITURE



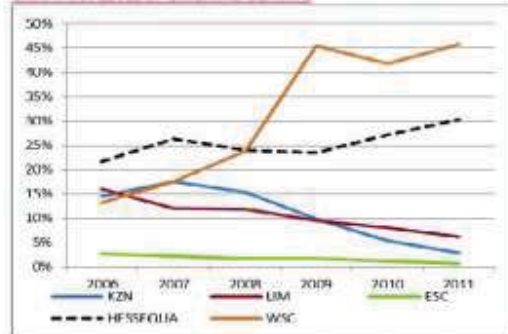
GRAPH 66: CAPITAL EXPENDITURE



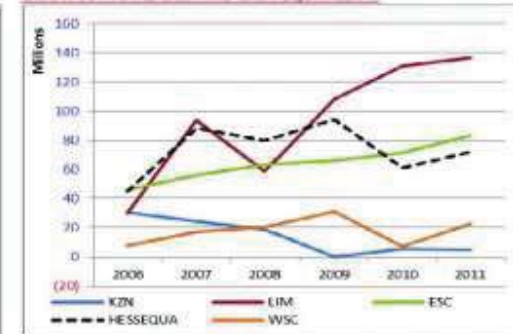
GRAPH 67: NET CHANGE IN CASH AND INVESTMENTS



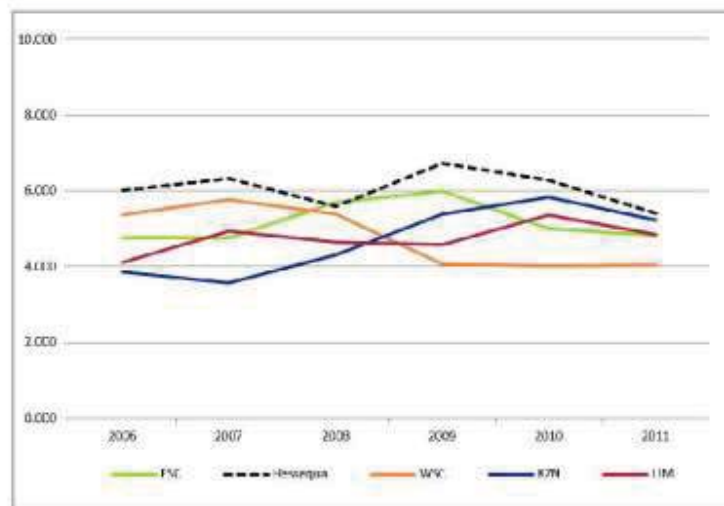
GRAPH 68: LEVEL OF EXTERNAL GEARING



GRAPH 69: TOTAL CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS



GRAPH 70: CREDIT SCORE RELATIVE TO SECTOR





- As an illustration the financial performance of four municipalities with a similar sized income base as Hessequa is plotted with regards to key performance areas from 2005/06 to 2010/11. The municipalities are based in the Western Cape, Limpopo, KwaZulu Natal and Free State respectively. The municipalities also represent entities with varied financial capacity.
- The growth in Hessequa's property rate base is the second highest although by income base Hessequa is placed fourth amongst these peers.
- Salaries and wages have increased at a similar scale as its peers and is on par with the Municipality in Limpopo that has an equal sized income base.
- Repairs and maintenance is plotted between R 12 million per annum and R 16 million per annum for the group of peers, although lower than its peers Hessequa's spending is comparable.
- It is evident that the operational performances of its peers have also been under pressure. Hessequa's level of cash generated from operations has been more irregular than the annual performance of its peers.
- Hessequa's capital spending has increased at a steadier pace than its peers. Over the six year term, Hessequa spent R 220 million on capex whilst the lowest spend was at R 160 million and the highest R 270 million.
- Similarly Hessequa's peers have used their own resources in an inconsistent fashion to part fund capital infrastructure. However Hessequa has more effectively utilized external gearing to supplement capital funding sources at an acceptable level.
- Although Hessequa's peers are increasing cash levels, Hessequa's cash and investments show an inclining trend albeit third highest of the group.
- Commendably overall Hessequa has maintained the highest credit score of the group of peers over the term of six years reflecting positively on management capacity.



## 8. SYNOPSIS OF FINDINGS & RECOMMENDATIONS

The overall credit score reflecting on financial, economic, socio-economic and management indicators is a good gauge of the overall performance of Hessequa Municipality over the past 7 years. From this it can be fairly stated that Hessequa's performance is still commendable, but that key performance areas have come under pressure as in particular the financial performance of Hessequa has gradually deteriorated on an annual basis over the past 4 years.

From the economic, demographic and financial analysis it can be interpreted that Hessequa has made a concerted effort to manage infrastructure and backlogs thereby providing its consumer with an acceptable level of municipal services. Hessequa has also implemented several good business practices such as its steadfast grip on collection levels and the alignment of accounting practices with GRAP. Going forward it is important to maintain these practices as well as to maintain assets and the level of services presently provided to residents. However to secure the financial livelihood of Hessequa it is important that the following areas are improved upon:

- **ESTABLISHMENT OF RESERVES** to adequately start providing for the longer-term obligations of Hessequa with regards to:
    - **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT OBLIGATIONS** The alignment of accounting practices has rightfully highlighted the longer term financial obligations of Hessequa, specifically with regards to making longer term provisions for employee benefits and creating the necessary cash backed reserves. This requires Hessequa to be mindful of cash flow from operating activities to ensure that reserves are held at adequate levels to meet the short term obligations. In addition to creating a sufficient cash buffer, there are limited factors within Hessequa's control to mitigate these risks. It is within Hessequa's control to review the terms of employment as well as the level of the staff component. The effective management of Human Resources will benefit Hessequa with regards to making sufficient cash backed provisions as well as managing its largest operational expense.
    - **CAPITAL REPLACEMENT RESERVE** Hessequa has in recent years not actively made an annual allocation from its operational budget towards the Capital Replacement Reserve earmarked for future renewal of infrastructure assets. As Hessequa has actively invested into its infrastructure assets in the past 7 years it is recommended that it be considered prudent to annually set aside a contribution to the future replacement and maintenance of these assets. In this regard depreciation charges should also be treated as an effective method to transfer cash to this reserve and that this pool of funds is conservatively used to fund Hessequa's own contribution to capital investment. This will require more effective expenditure management and cash budgeting for all expenditure.
  - **CASH AND LIQUIDITY MANAGEMENT** Liquidity levels have been fairly managed although a steady decline is noted in the level of current assets to current liabilities, it is recommended that the ratio be stabilized and the negative trend be halted. With regards to current assets, Hessequa has not substantially or incrementally increased cash and investments, showing the lowest levels in years. In addition it would seem that insufficient provision is being made for consumer debtors older than 90 days therefore inflating liquidity. The level of provision needs to be reviewed to attain reasonability of assumptions used.
- On the other hand current liabilities have increased in the past two years as creditors have steeply increased. Creditors' accounts are to be managed to effectively reflect cash outflows on operating budget.
- It is recommended that as a medium-term objective, Hessequa maintains cash and investments at a level that exceeds the sum of the cash backed reserves, unspent conditional grants, ceded investments and a minimum of one month's operating expenditure, as well as that meets the liquidity ratio of 1:1 for liquid current assets over current liabilities. The official drafting and approval of a Liquidity Policy by Council will ensure that the liquidity level of Hessequa is strengthened.
- **CAPITAL EXPENDITURE & REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE** Hessequa has continued stringent application of operating and capital transfers received from National and Provincial Government. Levels of capital spending have however decreased from 98% to 91% of its capital budget. Hessequa has however maintained its Asset Register and has a

solid comprehension of the state of all assets, which are presently reflected as in a fair to very good state. Based on the annual increase in per capita spend [by population size] it is fair to state that infrastructure assets can be maintained at these levels and that the projected capital spending of R 55 to 60 million is adequate. It is therefore important that Hessequa spend the available capital budget on a selective basis to ensure the health of the infrastructure assets whilst expanding on productive capital investments.

Based on the state of the assets it can be viewed that repairs and maintenance of 4% to 5% of operating expenditure is presently adequate, however the Asset Register needs to be maintained to ensure adequate longer term planning. Going forward it will also be important for Hessequa to determine what levels of service and quality of infrastructure Hessequa is going to be able to maintain, as this has a direct impact on the MTREF in relation to planning for repairs and maintenance.

- CAPITAL FUNDING RESOURCES** Based on well-defined long term capital spending programs linked to the regular analysis of the Fixed Assets, the resources to Hessequa's avail can be apportioned. Hessequa increased external gearing to 33% by 2011/12 and based on the draft 5-year capital budget for 2013/14, Hessequa intends increasing gearing to 35%. It is recommended that gearing be maintained at levels this level of 35% and that the term of the loans be increased to at least 15 years. Gearing at these levels is subject to the materialization of income levels and the effective management of expenses, as the operational capacity of Hessequa will be placed under significant pressure should any of the assumptions made change.

Hessequa is to adjust its capital programs should capital transfers not transpire as projected, as Hessequa cannot afford to deplete own cash resources to fund capital infrastructure. A detailed Funding Strategy is to be drafted and approved as well as a specific program to service external debt that will provide comfort to Lenders and enable Hessequa to continue having access to borrowed funds at acceptable rates.

- GROWTH IN REVENUE BASE** Hessequa is aptly using the operational and capital resources to its avail and with implementation of the above recommendations, Hessequa will secure its financial position by making the necessary provision for obligations whilst optimizing the resources to its avail. However to grow the income base from which Hessequa can gear itself for external funding and from which it can manage its growing obligations, it is imperative that Hessequa review the economic development potential of its Investment Properties as there is limited scope to increase tariffs without compensating on payment levels.
- REVISION OF BENCHMARKS AND BUDGET ASSUMPTIONS** The recommendations made in this report will strengthen the financial position and credit rating of Hessequa, however should any of the assumptions made in this report change, the impact needs to be evaluated against the latest available information. It is further a good business practise to do an in-depth report on the actual performance against budget assumptions made, on a quarterly basis and to review financial benchmarks on an annual basis. This will improve the stringent management of the operational budget.
- SUPPORT FROM COUNCIL AND ADMINISTRATION** The results of this assessment needs to be tabled to Council for its support and forthcoming should be the adoption of sound financial benchmarks, to enable Hessequa's Administration to reach the targets set out in the finding and recommendations.
- COMMUNICATING THE FINANCIAL POSITION OF HESSEQUA** effectively to all key stakeholders is important. In this respect the outcome of this assessment should be used to build consensus internally amongst officials and/or Council, but should also be used to inform other key stakeholders. The latter will include but is not limited to:
  - THE NATIONAL & PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT** to communicate Hessequa's ability to provide services on a sustainable basis and to work towards an increase in the equitable share allocations.
  - THE LOCAL BUSINESS COMMUNITY** to communicate the service delivery role of the Municipality and the financial situation with the longer term strategy.
  - THE COMMUNITY** to communicate the utilisation of income for service delivery to reiterate the importance to pay accounts and to indicate actions to be taken to maintain payment levels.

## Operation Clean Audit – MGRO

During the 2012/13 Financial year Provincial Treasury rolled out a programme called MGRO, which aims at assistance to all local municipalities in the Western Cape to understand and develop clear corrective measures to reach a clean audit status. This remains a large task for any municipality, but it is in reach for Hessequa Municipality. The council and senior management of Hessequa Municipality welcomed this programme and continued to focus on each of the issues raised by the Auditor General Management Letter sent to Hessequa Municipality. The following table present the findings of the Auditor General and the response from Hessequa to rectify the issue.

ANALYSIS OF MANAGEMENT REPORT					
MUNICIPALITY: HESSEQUA					
CURRENT STATUS					RESPONSIBLE UNITS
NO	HEADING AUDIT FINDING	DETAILED AUDIT FINDING	SOURCE(S)	CLASSIFICATION	ACCOUNTING
1	Material misstatements not corrected.	Not applicable; There were no material misstatements that were not corrected.	2011/12 final management report, Section 2 part A paragraph 7.	Material misstatements	N/A
2	Material misstatements corrected.	The material misstatement corrected pertained to <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Borrowing and long-term loans : The impact for the current year = R25 698 759, the impact for prior year = R31 312 770</li> <li>Service charges : The impact for the current year = R11 048 239, the impact for the prior year = R8 893 265</li> <li>Bank and cash : The impact for the current year = R8 377 686, the impact for the prior year = nil.</li> </ul>	2011/12 final management report, Section 2 part A paragraph 7.	Material misstatements	Misstatements that were made in the 2011/2012 financial year were also made in previous financial years and was not queried by the auditors. All these misstatements have now been corrected and will not occur again.
3	Restatement of corresponding figures	As disclosed in note 48 to the financial statements, the corresponding figures for 30 June 2011 have been restated as a result of an error discovered during 30 June 2012 in the financial statements of the Hessequa Municipality at, and for the year ended, 30 June 2011. The correction of errors regarding PPE and non-current assets held for amounted to R1 077 696 million and R63 500 respectively. The corrections of errors regarding trade receivables from non-exchange transactions amounted to R1 457 821. The correction of error regarding accumulated surplus as well as profit and loss amounted to R792 234 and R719140 respectively.	2011/12 final management report, Section 2 part B paragraph 8.	Material misstatements	This has been corrected
	Material losses	As disclosed in note 53 to the financial statements, electricity distribution losses of 10 155 004 kWh (12%) were incurred during the 2011/12 financial year as a result of resistance to the flow of electricity, illegal connections, electricity theft, tampering with meters, meters not read correctly, faulty meters and by-passing of meters. As disclosed in note 53 to the financial statements, water losses to the amount of R879 295 (547 976 kiloliters) (29%) were incurred during the 2011/12 financial year as a result of ageing infrastructure assets.	2011/12 final management report, Section 2 part B paragraph 9 and 10.	Service delivery	1. The high water losses is attributed to the following factors: - a) high volume of pipe breaks in older networks b) a lot of the municipal use is not metered 2. As a starting point all municipal usage will be metered and updated on the financial system



4	Material under spending of the budget	As disclosed in note 47 to the financial statements, the municipality has materially under spent the capital budget to the amount of R6, 45 million (9%). This was mainly due to the Albertinia reservoirs project starting later than initially anticipated, and electrification of Heidelberg houses projects which were to be financed by means of an external loan but was subsequently funded from the INEP grant. These projects will be finalised in the 2012/13 financial year.	2011/12 final management report, Section 2 part B paragraph 13.	Service delivery	1. At the end of January 2013 the following amounts were spent i.r.o. the capital budget: - 22.1% (R10.821m) of the total budget of R48.915m 2. The deviations from the SDBIP projections is 55% and an amount of R24.253m should have been spent. (Actual R10.821m)
5	Non-compliance with laws and regulations	The financial statements submitted for auditing were not prepared in all material respects in accordance with the requirements of section 122 of the MFMA. Material misstatements of current assets, current liabilities, revenue, expenditure and disclosure items identified by the auditors were subsequently corrected, resulting in the financial statements receiving an unqualified audit opinion.	2011/12 final management report, Section 2 part D paragraph 30.	Non-compliance with laws and regulations, and material misstatements	Ignites Advisory Services in conjunction with the Provincial Administration has compiled a compliance module, and Hessequa municipality has been designated as a pilot site. This software will ensure that all compliance issues are met.
6	Control deficiencies	<p>The drivers of internal controls were reassessed as follows :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Leadership improved</li> <li>• Financial and performance management improved</li> <li>• Governance improved.</li> </ul> <p><b>The following are the issues raised by the AGSA which led to the assessment results regarding Leadership :</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oversight responsibility ; The accounting officer did not ensure that the adequate controls are in place with regards to the monitoring of predetermined objectives to ensure valid, accurate and complete predetermined objectives are reported.</li> <li>• Action plans to address internal control deficiencies ; Action plans to address internal control deficiencies identified on compliance matters in the prior year were not formally and adequately implemented and monitored to address non-compliance which resulted in recurring findings in the current period.</li> <li>• IT governance framework ; IT resources at the municipality are currently more operationally focused and therefore lack the capacity to develop formal IT-related policies and procedures. Informal IT management processes have been established, however these need to formally documented and approved. Municipal management did not develop adequate action plans and assign responsibility to implement all of the recommendations of the prior year, resulting in repeat findings with regard to the inadequacy of formally designed and implemented IT controls. This was evidenced by the lack of evidence maintained to confirm that IT services provided by third parties were being monitored on a regular basis.</li> </ul>	2011/12 final management report, Section 2 part E (Table with the smiley faces) paragraph 39 to 45.	Internal Control Deficiency	<p>1. The matter of monitoring PDO's will be addressed during the revision of the SDBIP during February 2013.</p> <p>2. Refer to item 5 above</p> <p>3. Hessequa is currently negotiating with SITA (state IT agency) to compile a formal document to address IT governance issues. (Our current plan is outdated) This plan should be finalised by 30th June 2013, and we have budgeted an amount of R100 000 for this.</p> <p>4. User Access Control - We need the help of Province/ Change Management - We request Province's help/ Facilities and Environment Controls - This has been budgeted for in the 2013/2014 financial year</p>

		<p><b>The following are the issues raised by the AGSA which led to the assessment results regarding Governance :</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular, accurate and complete financial and performance reports ; The financial statements and other information to be included in the annual report are not adequately reviewed for completeness and accuracy prior to submission for audit. Misstatements were identified in the audit of various financial statement line items, and resulted in the correction of numerous misstatements on the financial statements. Management has not ensured accuracy over reporting of predetermined objectives in the annual report is achieved as variables disclosed in the annual performance report were inaccurate and may have result in the users of the report being misled by the results of the planned service delivery.</li> <li>• Formal control over IT systems ; Although the municipality has made some progress in addressing the weaknesses identified in the previous Auditor General review, the following weaknesses were still identified:</li> <li>• User Access Control</li> <li>• Change Management</li> <li>• Facilities and Environment Controls</li> </ul>			
7	Investigations	There were no reportable investigations in progress. There were no reportable investigations completed during the financial year.	2011/12 final management report, Section 2 part E paragraph 52 & 53.	Service delivery	Currently two councillors are under investigation, and the human resources section is also busy with certain minor investigations
8	Irregular expenditure	Irregular expenditure of R53 072 incurred in the current financial year was as a result of the contravention of SCM legislation. This irregular expenditure was identified during the audit process and not detected by monitoring processes of the municipality. The root cause of the lack of effective prevention and detection are inadequate review over the supply chain management pre scripts and ensuring that all the supply chain management requirements are met as these emergency expenditures were authorised after the expenditures were incurred.	2011/12 final management report, Section 3 part A paragraph 54.	Service delivery	1. Systems have been put in place to avoid the payments of interest on creditors accounts 2. We have once again instructed our creditors not to supply goods and services without an official order. There are instances where employees procure goods without the officials procedures. 3. REGGIE WESSO
9	Awards to persons in the service of the state	SCM Regulation 44 prohibits awards to persons or to entities owned/ managed by them if they are in service of the auditee (i.e. employees and councillors) or if they are in service of any other state institution. The audit included the identification of such prohibited awards. Further testing was also performed to determine whether the legislated requirements with regard to declarations of interest were adhered to.	2011/12 final management report, Section 3 part A paragraph 55.	Service delivery, and non-compliance with laws and regulations	Currently we rely mostly on the declarations by bidders and suppliers as well as the declaration by employees. It would probably best to employ a verification company to ensure that goods and services are not procured from persons in the service of the state. This will still needs to be discussed with Council and Senior Management

10	<b>Awards to close family members of persons in the service of the state</b>	56. Awards to providers owned/ managed by persons that are close family members of persons in the service of the state, whether at the municipality or any other state institution, are not prohibited. However such awards of more than R2 000 must be disclosed in the financial statements of the municipality for the sake of transparency and as required by SCM Regulation 45. The audit included the identification of awards to close family members. Further testing was also performed to determine whether the financial statement disclosure was made and the legislated requirements with regards to declarations of interest were adhered to. The findings were as follows: 100% of the awards to close family members of persons in service of the state, amounting to R508 849, was identified during the audit process and not detected by monitoring processes of the municipality which has subsequently been disclosed in the financial statements .	2011/12 final management report, Section 3 part A paragraph 56.	Service delivery, and non-compliance with laws and regulations	Currently we rely mostly on the declarations by bidders and suppliers as well as the declaration by employees. It would probably best to employ a verification company to ensure reg 45 are adhered to. This will still needs to be discussed with Council and Senior Management
11	<b>Procurement process – Quotations</b>	One quotation to the total value of R71 560 was procured from a supplier who did not have tax clearance from SARS confirming that their tax matters are in order. One award to the value of R4 848 was procured where the provider did not have the lowest price quotation.	2011/12 final management report, Section 3 part A paragraph 58 & 59.	Service delivery, and non-compliance with laws and regulations	Procurement processes for quotations are above board
12	<b>Ineffective human resource management</b>	An assessment of human resource management has identified the following: Management of vacancies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The overall vacancy rate increased from 9.8% in the previous year to 23.7% in the current year.</li> <li>• The senior (including top) management vacancy rate remained unchanged at 11.1% from the previous year.</li> </ul>	2011/12 final management report, Section 3 part B paragraph 61.	Compliance with laws and regulations	The municipality's organogram was compiled for the medium to long term. This is the reason why all vacancies have not yet been filled. Sufficient funding also has an impact on the filling of vacancies and the extension of capacity
13	<b>Consultants</b>	The municipality appointed the following consultants in the prior year and current year to perform technical assistance in the preparation of the financial statements and supporting accounting records, as the municipality does not have the required technical expertise and capacity to perform the required functions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A consulting firm was appointed to – Update the fixed asset register details, estimation of economic useful lives, calculations and financial statement disclosures.</li> <li>• Experts were appointed for the Unbundling of infrastructure assets.</li> <li>• An accounting firm was also appointed for the Independent review of the financial statements.</li> </ul>	2011/12 final management report, Section 3 part D paragraph 69.	Service delivery	The municipality does not always have the capacity or technical expertise to perform required functions and therefore will continue to make use of consultants from time to time

14	<b>Municipal regulations on minimum competency level</b>	Minimum competency regulations were issued on 15 June 2007. As per regulation 15 and 18, all municipalities must ensure that their staff comply with the competency requirements with effect from 1 January 2013. This means that the requirements are not yet applicable for the financial year 2011-12 (financial period ending 30 June 2012). However, municipalities will need to start aligning their recruitment policies to the regulations and put measures in place to ensure that they comply with the requirements by 1 January 2013.	2011/12 final management report, Section 4 paragraph 76.	Compliance with laws and regulations	The municipality is of the opinion that the designated staff members who should have attended the course, did in fact attend. All the results for the course that was completed are not yet available. Province's indication of which officials should attend the course will be appreciated. Because of budget constraints, council cannot afford to continue with this course.
<b>Compliance</b>					
15	<b>Long term liabilities not disclosed in accordance with IFRS 7</b>	During the audit of long term liabilities it was identified that the disclosure of long term liabilities did not include the disclosure required by IFRS 7. The long term liabilities are not disclosed in accordance with IFRS 7 and leads to a material misstatement in the financial statements. There was no rand amount stated on the 2011/12 final management report.	2011/12 final management report, annexure A finding 1.	Compliance with laws and regulations	The incorrect disclosure of the long term liability was also made in previous financial years and was not queried by the auditors. This has since been corrected and will not occur again.
16	<b>Understatement of creditors</b>	During the audit of the bank reconciliation it was identified that a number of reconciling items were incorrectly accounted for. The cheques were inspected and confirmed by reference to the bank deposit slip that the cheques were only presented for payment after year end. The cheques were not sent to the creditor but directly delivered to the bank by the municipality's employees. The electronic funds transfers were followed through to the bank statements of July 2012 and it was found that they were only released for payment in July 2012 as the transfer only showed on the bank statement on the 5th of July 2012.	2011/12 final management report, annexure A finding 2.	Compliance with laws and regulations	Notwithstanding that this has never been queried before, we will ensure that this does not happen again.
17	<b>Exceptions regarding the equitable share accounting treatment and disclosure</b>	Equitable share that is utilized for services delivered to indigents are currently recognized as a general expense of R11 048 239, disclosed in note 35 to the financial statements. Revenue is overstated by R11 048 239 due to the fact that it is recognized as revenue under grants and subsidies as part of the R23 227 000 revenue recognized for equitable share as well as revenue recognized under service charges as part of normal levies. The equitable share grant expenditure should therefore be reclassified to revenue as revenue forgone.	2011/12 final management report, annexure A finding 3.	Compliance with laws and regulations	For the first time this has been brought to our attention, and has been corrected and will never occur again.
18	<b>Contracts and contract management review of performance of suppliers [Comaf 2]</b>	There is no proof or evidence to indicate that the municipality reviewed the performance of the suppliers. No review of monthly performance of suppliers could lead to suppliers not performing or breaching of contracts by the suppliers.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 4 (comaf 2).	Internal Control Deficiency	Refer to GAP analysis
19	<b>The Mid-Year Budget and Performance Report was not completed in the prescribed time period [Comaf 2]</b>	During compliance testing it was identified that the Hessequa Municipality did not complete and submit the Mid-Year Budget and Performance Report within the time period prescribed by the MFMA and only submitted the report on 6 February 2012.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 5 (comaf 2).	Non-compliance with laws and regulations, and material misstatements	All steps have been taken to ensure that this does not occur again, and it has been corrected 2012/2013



20	<b>The Adjustments budget was not made public [Comaf 3]</b>	During compliance testing it was identified that the approved adjustments budget were not made public.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 6 (comaf 3).	Non-compliance with laws and regulations, and material misstatements	This will be done as from 2012/2013
21	<b>Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) was not approved by the Mayor nor submitted to the public or National Treasury [Comaf 2]</b>	During the testing of the compliance to the above mentioned legislation, it was identified that the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) was not approved and signed by the mayor or made public. In addition the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) were not submitted to the National Treasury until 18 August 2011.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 7 (comaf 3).	Non-compliance with laws and regulations, and material misstatements	AI steps have been taken to ensure that this does not occur again, and it has been correctly 2012/2013
22	<b>Monthly budget reports and Mid-Year Budget and Performance Report were not placed on the website of Hessequa Municipality [Comaf 2]</b>	During the compliance testing relating to the monthly budget statements (section 71 report) it was identified that only the monthly budget reports of the first quarter of 2011/2012 was added to the website of Hessequa Municipality and that the Mid-Year Budget and Performance Report was not placed on the municipality's website.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 8 (comaf 2).	Non-compliance with laws and regulations, and material misstatements	1. The monthly Section 71 reports have been put on the website 2. The mid-year report as well as the mid-year performance report is on the website for 2012/2013
<b>Control environment</b>					
23	<b>No formal risk assessment performed [Comaf 6]</b>	<p>It was noted that the risk assessment performed by Hessequa Municipality not all managers contributed to identifying risks for their divisions.</p> <p>A formal risk assessment was last performed in 2008. Since then the different department heads were asked to submit specific risks pertaining to their departments. Consequently, no formal risk assessment has been performed, which is a concern in terms of adequate and effective risk management.</p> <p>No adequate mechanisms exist to identify risks to the entity arising from internal factors.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 9 (comaf 6).	Internal control deficiency	Tenders are currently being procured for the risk assessment, and should be completed before the 30th June 2013.
<b>HR Management</b>					
24	<b>Minimum competencies not yet attained are not included in performance agreements as targets to be achieved [Comaf 7]</b>	<p>The performance agreements of the municipal manager, chief financial officer, senior managers and head of supply chain who did not have the minimum competencies, did not include the attainment of minimum competencies as a performance target, as required by Municipal Regulations on Minimum Competency Levels Reg 16(2).</p> <p>This results in non-compliance with the Municipal Finance Management Act - Municipal regulations on minimum competency levels.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 10 (comaf 7).	Non-compliance with laws and regulations, and material misstatements	3 This has been included in the 2012/2013 performance agreements

25	<b>Manager Corporate Services in an acting management position for a period exceeding 3 months without MEC approval [Comaf 7]</b>	<p>The Manager: Corporate Services position has been vacant since 2010. The position has been filled by an acting manager for a period exceeding 3 months without permission being obtained from the MEC for local government, for an additional period that does not exceed 3 months.</p> <p>This results in non-compliance with the Local Government: Municipal Systems Amendment Act, No.7 of 2011</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 11 (comaf 7).	Non-compliance with laws and regulations, and material misstatements	N/A
<b>Immovable assets</b>					
26	<b>VAT incorrectly claimed on capital expenditures [Comaf 3]</b>	<p>The following exceptions were noted regarding the VAT invoices of the A2/Mabungwe Joint Venture supplier:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None of the VAT invoices contained the VAT registration number of the supplier.</li> <li>• The VAT per the supplier invoices for payment vouchers 101281 and 101297 were R0 on the invoice, although VAT was claimed.</li> <li>• A2/Mabungwe Joint Venture could not be verified with a SARS VAT vendor search.</li> </ul> <p>As a result:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VAT were incorrectly claimed as the supplier invoices for A2/Mabungwe Joint Venture are not valid.</li> <li>• VAT invoices per the VAT act of South Africa, which could result in penalties and interest.</li> <li>• VAT receivable are overstated and property, plant and equipment understated by R372 353.</li> </ul>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 12 (comaf 3).	Non-compliance with laws and regulations, and material misstatements	Control measures have been put in place to ensure that no vat is claimed contrary to vat legislation
27	<b>Under spending of the capital budget [COMAF 3]</b>	According to the financial statements, the capital budget for the 2012 financial year was R72 077 120. However, capital spending for the year was R65 627 791, which resulted in an under spending of the capital budget of R6 449 329. This under spending could have a negative impact on service delivery to the Hessequa tax payers.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 13 (comaf 3).	Service delivery	1. At the end of January 2013 the following amounts were spent i.r.o. the capital budget: - 22.1% (R10.821m) of the total budget of R48.915m 2. The deviations from the SDBIP projections is 55% and an amount of R24.253m should have been spent. (Actual R10.821m) 3. The planning of the projects and the asking for tenders was done in the first half of the financial year, and spending on these started in January 2013. It is envisage that the maximum peak spending will take place between March and May 2013 and that the capital budget will be fully spent at yearend.
28	<b>Land not in the name or control of the Municipality [Comaf 4]</b>	<p>The valuation roll was reconciled to the land and buildings fixed asset register and it was identified that properties on the fixed asset register are not the property of the municipality as the ownership was transferred and the properties are not under the control of the municipality.</p> <p>As a result, Property, plant and equipment and accumulated surplus are overstated by R215 500 as ownership of these properties was transferred prior to the financial year ended 30 June 2012.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 14 (comaf 4).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This has been corrected
29	<b>Completeness of the land and buildings fixed asset register [Comaf 4]</b>	The valuation roll was reconciled to the land and buildings fixed asset register and it was identified that properties registered in the name of the municipality on the valuation roll are not included in the fixed asset register. As a result, The fixed asset register is incomplete and understated by R1 369 000.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 15 (comaf 4).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This has been corrected

30	<b>Infrastructure with no carrying values at 30 June 2012 [Comaf 3]</b>	<p>The asset register was inspected and it was identified that various infrastructure assets were fully depreciated and consequently did not have a carrying value in use at 30 June 2012. The total cost of these infrastructure assets with a zero carrying value amounts to R254 691 and are included in the table below.</p> <p>It was also identified that the useful life of these assets were adjusted but no correction to the depreciation and carrying value was made. These adjustments were consequently not treated as a change in accounting estimate as required by GRAP17: Property, plant and equipment and GRAP3: Accounting policies, change in accounting estimates and errors for accounting purposes.</p> <p>Consequently, the carrying value of infrastructure assets are understated by R41 379 if an adjustment of 2 years to the remaining useful life is used.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 16 (comaf 3).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This has been corrected
31	<b>Change in useful life of infrastructure assets [Comaf 4]</b>	<p>It was identified that the useful life of certain of these assets were adjusted but no correction to the depreciation and carrying value was made. These adjustments were consequently not treated as a change in accounting estimate as required by GRAP17: Property, plant and equipment and GRAP3: Accounting policies, change in accounting estimates and errors for accounting purposes. The total population was evaluated and if the change in the useful life was taken into consideration as a change in accounting estimate.</p> <p>Consequently, depreciation is understated with R175 341. • Infrastructure assets are not depreciated over its actual useful life, resulting in the understatement of the carrying value of infrastructure of R175 341. • Non-compliance with the accounting requirements of GRAP17 and GRAP3.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 17 (comaf 4).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This has been corrected

32	<b>Physical verification of assets exceptions [Comaf 4]</b>	<p>During the physical inspection of assets, the following exceptions were identified:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Descriptions in the asset register did not agree to the actual asset verified,</li> <li>• assets could not be identified due to Projects were incorrectly unbundled from tender documents and not from documents representative of the work actually done.</li> </ul> <p>Not all work as per the tender document was completed during the year and will be completed in the following year.</p> <p>There is no financial impact on the annual financial statements, as the detail descriptions etc. in the asset register are incorrect and not the value of the capital expenditure.</p> <p>Although the total value recognised as capital expenditure is correct, the incorrect unbundling and descriptions could result in incorrect individual component values and economic useful lives. Consequently, future depreciation could be incorrect resulting in the misstatement of the carrying value of property, plant and equipment.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 18 (comaf 4).	Internal Control Deficiency	This has been corrected
<b>Movable assets</b>					
33	<b>Accurate accounting treatment of Property, plant and equipment corrections of errors [Comaf 1]</b>	<p>The following exceptions were noted regarding the accounting treatment of corrections of errors relating to property, plant and equipment, as disclosed in note 10 to the financial statements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Included in the correction of error relating to land and buildings was the recognition of erf in "Stille Heuwels" to the value of R36 700. This correction was recognised as a debit in the 2011 "transfer of cost" movement. This erf was disposed of in the 2012 year and should consequently have been recognised as non-current assets held for sale.</li> <li>• The reversal of the 2011 disclosed incorrect other assets disposals amounting to R103 336 (cost) and R101 480 (accumulated depreciation), was incorrectly reversed against the carrying values at 1 July 2010, instead of against the 2011 disposals.</li> </ul> <p>The cost correction of error at 1 July 2010, as disclosed in note 10 to the financial statements of R146 179, incorrectly includes the 2011 disposal correction of R103 336, and the accumulated depreciation correction of error at 1 July 2010, as disclosed in note 10 to the financial statements of R71 227, incorrectly includes the 2011 disposal correction of R101 480.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The additional R61 484 depreciation recognised in the 2011 restated correction of error figures was incorrectly recognised as part of comparative other income, instead of</li> </ul>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 19 (comaf 1).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This has been corrected

		comparative depreciation.			
		<p>The land was recognised as land and buildings in order to recognise the asset to be able to dispose of the erf in the 2012 financial year.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Incorrectly recognised as part of the opening balance as at 1 July 2010 of property, plant and equipment.</li> <li>• Incorrectly recognised as part of other income as the additional other assets recognised was recognised as comparative income.</li> <li>• Land and buildings are overstated and non-current assets held for sale understated by R36 700 respectively as at 30 June 2011.</li> <li>• The cost, accumulated depreciation and carrying value as at 1 July 2010 are understated by R103 336, R101 480 and R1 856 respectively.</li> <li>• The comparative 2011 depreciation and amortisation and other income as disclosed in the statement of financial performance are understated by R61 484 respectively.</li> </ul>			
34	Change of useful lives of other assets [Comaf 3]	<p>It was identified that the useful life of various other assets in the fixed asset register was adjusted in the financial year ending 30 June 2012, although no change in accounting estimate disclosure was made in the financial statements. The change in useful lives in the fixed asset register occurred due to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The useful life of various other assets was adjusted due to the assets being at the end of its useful lives according to the fixed asset register, although the assets are still in use. It was however evaluated that these changes in useful lives are not due to new developments or information and should have been treated as a retrospective correction of error and not a prospective depreciation adjustment as the original estimation of the useful life was incorrect.</li> <li>• A change in useful life due to the allocation of new asset numbers for various toolbox items. This resulted that the incorrect date was brought forward from the previous asset register, resulting in the assets appearing to be at the end of its useful life, although it is not the case. Consequently, the useful life adjustments originated due to an error in the current fixed asset register and not due to an actual useful life adjustment.</li> </ul>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 20 (comaf 3).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This has been corrected

		<p>The total population of the above mentioned was inspected and recalculated and it was established that the misstatement regarding these useful life adjustments are clearly trivial. Consequently, it is not required that the financial statements should be adjusted. This is however reported due to the internal control deficiency and the financial effect and accuracy of the fixed asset register for future periods.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The fixed asset register contains inaccurate information and errors resulting in unnecessary useful life adjustments.</li> <li>•The useful life adjustments are not treated and disclosed in the financial statements as required by GRAP 3.</li> </ul>			
35	<b>Incorrect useful lives not in accordance with the accounting policy [Comaf 4]</b>	<p>It was noted that the useful lives of various assets as per the fixed asset register are not in accordance with the useful lives as per the accounting policy to the financial statements.</p> <p>It was identified that this resulted due to the retrospective recognition of assets with acquisition dates prior to 1 July 2007 in the fixed asset register with the status per the fixed asset register of "fair value – not recognized in 2010/2011"</p> <p>The useful lives of these moveable assets were evaluated and deemed to be not representative of the estimated economic useful life of these assets. The verified condition of the assets as documented in the fixed asset register was also inspected and identified to be fair to very poor. This is also representative that the useful lives as included in the fixed asset register are overstated.</p> <p>Based on a recalculation by adding an additional 3 years to the useful life from 1 July 2011 the book value of these assets as at 30 June 2012 are overstated by R30 976.</p> <p>The following misstatements exist:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Overstatement of the book value and understatement of accumulated depreciation of other assets as at 30 June 2011 by R27 454.</li> <li>•Overstatement of the book value and understatement of accumulated depreciation of other assets as at 30 June 2012 by R30 976.</li> <li>•Understatement of depreciation as at 30 June 2012 by R3 523.</li> </ul>	2011/12 final management report, annexure finding 21 (comaf 4).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This has been corrected
36	<b>Fixed asset register not reconciled on a monthly basis [Comaf 3]</b>	<p>The municipality did not perform the monthly reconciliation between the general ledger and the excel fixed asset register.</p> <p>Insufficient fixed asset register controls could result in unexplained differences, which could be costly and time consuming to address.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 22 (comaf 3).	Internal Control Deficiency	We are currently busy capturing the asset register on the Venus financial system. This will ensure that depreciation is calculated on a monthly basis as from March 2013. Once the assets have been captured, inventory items will be capitalized on a monthly basis, while all the other capital projects will only be captured at yearend once they have been unbundled. (most of the projects to be unbundled is still WIP)
<b>Operating expenditure</b>					



37	<b>Duplicate payment - Eskom [Comaf 2]</b>	<p>During the audit procedures performed on expenditure it was noted that a duplicate payment for supplier Eskom was made in August 2011. Cheque TES00100099373 was paid on 20 July 2011 and the duplicate payment cheque TES00100099464 was paid on 3 August 2011.</p> <p>The duplicate payment amounted to R2 005 904 (VAT exclusive) and VAT input amounting to R280 827 was also claimed.</p> <p>This has resulted in the loss of cash flow for the municipality due to the internal control deviation and non-compliance to the Value Added Tax Act 89 of 1991 as input VAT was claimed twice on the same invoice.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 23 (comaf 2).	Internal Control Deficiency	Another duplicate payment to Eskom occur in the beginning of the 2012/2013 financial year, and all possible steps have been put in place to avoid a recurrence of this.
38	<b>Invoice not paid within 30 days [Comaf 2]</b>	<p>During the audit procedures performed on general expenses it was noted that suppliers were not paid within 30 days of date of invoice received by Hessequa Municipality.</p> <p>The total extrapolated error is 1 809 invoices out of the total population of 31 115 invoices and represents non-compliance of 6% of the total invoices paid.</p> <p>It was also noted that there were no purchase order for payment voucher TES90190008235 amounting to R33 135. The result was that discount of R 1 643 was not received by the municipality and is regarded as Fruitless and Wasteful expenditure. The fruitless and wasteful expenditure of R1 643 was not disclosed in note 52.2 Fruitless and wasteful expenditure.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 24 (comaf 2).	Internal Control Deficiency	As a rule all invoices are paid within 30 days of date of invoice, except where goods have been procured in a non-compliant manner, or where there is an outstanding query on the invoice.
59	<b>Operating Expenditure: Incorrect vote allocation (COMAF 2)</b>	Printing and stationary is overstated and Travel and Subsistence is understated by R40 560, as disclosed in note 35 General Expenses in the notes to the financial statements for the year ended 30 June 2012.	2011/12 final management report, annexure C finding 3 (comaf 2).	Internal Control Deficiency	All possible steps are taken to avoid incorrect vote allocations. We cannot however ensure that this will not happen again on 'n smaller scale.
60	<b>Operating Expenditure: VAT input incorrectly claimed (COMAF 2)</b>	During the audit procedures performed it was noted that VAT input was incorrectly claimed on entertainment (donation of food). Non-compliance with the Value Added Tax Act 89 of 1991 section 17(2).	2011/12 final management report, annexure C finding 4 (comaf 2).	Internal Control Deficiency	This was as a results of an incorrect interpretation and will be limited as far as possible
<b>Payable</b>					
39	<b>Unallocated deposits older than three years [Comaf 5]</b>	<p>Included in other creditors of R6 173 085 (2011: R6 713 367) is unallocated bank deposits of R1 381 104 (2011: R1 560 848) of which R894 797 (2011: R758 577) is older than three years. It seems that the old outstanding balances is not followed up regularly, therefore the increase in amounts older than 3 years.</p> <p>In addition, the VAT Act stipulates that where more than four months have passed since the receipt of the overpayment or a deposit, and the consumer does not have an outstanding account against which the available funds can be utilised, the output VAT should be declared on the available amount (it is a 'deemed supply' per section 8(27) of the VAT Act, which deems the unallocated deposit to be consideration received for a supply of services performed by the vendor.</p> <p>Output VAT of a maximum of R169 609 should be declared and paid to SARS. As a result, creditors might be overstated by R894 797 while VAT payable and other revenue is understated with R169 609 and R725</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 25 (comaf 5).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This will be rectified during 2012/2013

		188 respectively.			
<b>Predetermined objectives</b>					
40	<b>Accuracy of actual performance disclosed in the annual performance report [Comaf 5]</b>	During the selection of key performance indicators tested it was evaluated that the actual results recorded and disclosed in the KPI report and annual performance report are inaccurate.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 26 (comaf 5).	Misstatements in the annual performance report	The internal audit section will monitor on a monthly basis. This will ensure more accurate reporting
41	<b>Section 72 mid-year report does not contain progress on problems identified in annual report [Comaf 4]</b>	During the audit of predetermined objectives it was confirmed that the section 72 mid-year report did not contain progress on resolving problems identified in the previous year's annual report.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 27 (comaf 5).	Misstatements in the annual performance report	This has now been addressed
42	<b>Integrated Development Plan does not contain Key performance indicators and targets [Comaf 3]</b>	The integrated development plan did not reflect the key performance indicators and key performance targets determined in terms of section 41 of the Municipal Systems Act. This results in non-compliance with the Municipal Systems Act section 26.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 28 (comaf 5).	Misstatements in the annual performance report	1. With the compilation of the 2013/2014 IDP the "indicators" have been included in the draft plan.
43	<b>No budget allocation per objective/development priority in integrated development plan [Comaf 3]</b>	<p>In terms of Local Government: Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations 2001, Section 120, read with sections 37, 43 and 49 of the MSA, the municipality should set a framework for performance targets consistent with the development priorities, objectives and strategies as per their integrated development plan (IDP).</p> <p>There should be a corresponding budget allocation for each development priority/objective in the approved integrated development plan. There was no corresponding budget allocation for each development priority/objective in the approved integrated development plan that could be linked to key performance indicators. (This exemption is underlying to the issue written regarding the integrated development plan not containing key performance indicators and targets.)</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 29 (comaf 3).	Misstatements in the annual performance report	We are currently busy connecting the cost centres to the relevant IDP objectives, and this will be included in the final IDP document for 2013/2014

44	<b>Performance management system does not establish a process of regular reporting [Comaf 4]</b>	During the testing of predetermined objectives it was confirmed that the municipality's performance management system did not establish a process of regular reporting to— (i) the council, other political structures, political office bearers and staff of the municipality; and (ii) the public and appropriate organs of state.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 30 (comaf 4).	Misstatements in the annual performance report	Reporting is now being done according to legislation
45	<b>Portfolio of evidence and measurability of performance information [Comaf 5]</b>	Sufficient appropriate audit evidence/relevant source documentation could not be provided to measure the validity and accuracy of the following key performance indicators selected: • % water quality level of waste water discharge • No of new water connections per annum • No of new electricity connections per annum • % water quality level The above mentioned represents 9% of the total indicators selected for testing. The actual results of the mentioned key performance indicators could not be measured in order to verify the accuracy and validity of the reported results.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 31 (comaf 5).	Misstatements in the annual performance report	We are currently revisiting the KPI in order to ensure that they are measurable.
46	<b>Key performance indicators [Comaf 5]</b>	Key performance indicators (KPI) and units of measurement (6,8% of indicators selected) were not well defined or did not correspond with the portfolio of evidence (POE). The accuracy and validity of the reported actual results could not be verified. Refer to the detail in the management report.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 32 (comaf 5).	Misstatements in the annual performance report	We are currently revisiting the KPI in order to ensure that they are measurable.
<b>Receivables</b>					
47	<b>Impairment of trade receivables [Comaf 5]</b>	The current financial year provision for impairment of trade receivables of R8 929 783 recognized in the financial statements was determined through evaluating each debtor account individually. By performing the audit procedures it was identified that the provision for impairment does not appear complete.  To verify that the amount recognized is reasonable we wanted to use the payment history percentage for the different categories of debtors and determine what amount of outstanding debt balances appear recoverable.  This information could not be provided due to the fact that the accounting system cannot produce such a report. A few large outstanding debt balances was specifically selected from the age analysis and the recoverability determined.  The only other method was to select a sample of debtors with long outstanding balances and inspect their related debtor accounts after year end, for any subsequent payments received. To evaluate if the provision for impairment calculated is reasonable and in line with the related risk concerning long outstanding debt, the provision amount was compared to the total outstanding debt amount for 90 days and older.	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 33 (comaf 5).	Misstatements in financial statements	Hessequa uses a system whereby the impairment of trade receivables is calculate on a line for line basis. The mayor debt lies vacant property and to calculate impairment for this will result in an overstatement of the provision, because the recovery of this debt is certain. (council has the right to attach vacant properties to settle the debt)
48		The remaining total outstanding debt balance for 90 days and older according to the age analysis is R13 070 101. The government debtor balance of R267 635 is excluded as no provision is made on government debt.  Based on the sample percentage of debtors with no subsequent payment received after year end, an amount of R9 056 251 appear to be a reasonable			Hessequa uses a system whereby the impairment of trade receivables is calculate on a line for line basis. The mayor debt lies vacant property and to calculate impairment for this will result in an overstatement of the provision, because the recovery of this debt is certain. (council has the right to attach vacant properties to settle the debt)

		<p>provision for impairment of trade receivables.</p> <p>The total provision for impairment bases on the available information is: The current year provision is therefore understated by R753 057.</p> <p>Our conclusion that long outstanding debtors becomes increasingly difficult to recover was further supported by comparing the current year monthly levies with the total amount of receipts for the year. It was determined that most of the current levies are paid each month and that the long outstanding debtors are difficult to recover. This calculation indicated that the increase in debtors due to the current year increase in trade receivables were sufficiently provided for by increasing the provision from R7 181 954 to R8 929 783.</p> <p>For the sample of debt balances selected the individual debtor accounts were scrutinized for the past two years to determine if regular payments were received. No assurance was obtained that outstanding debt is recoverable as there was very few payments received.</p> <p>The current difficult economic condition furthermore serves as a key indicator for possible impairment of the trade receivable balance, especially the long outstanding balances.</p> <p>Taking the above into account we conclude that the provision for impairment is understated. There is no process in place to ensure that the outstanding debt balances will be recovered within 12 months after year end, indicating that trade receivables are possibly incorrectly classified as current assets.</p> <p>Evidence regarding the fact that outstanding debt is actually recoverable could not be provided. Provision for impairment is understated by R753 057 which leads to trade receivables being overstated in the financial statements.</p>			
49	Trade receivables incorrectly recognised [Comaf 4]	<p>During the performance of the audit procedures it was identified that an amount of R2 283 214 which relates to government subsidies was incorrectly recognised as trade receivables.</p> <p>According to GRAP 1 an asset can only be recognised when the resources are controlled by the entity. Supporting documentation from National treasury was inspected and there is no indication that the amount will definitely be paid out to the entity. The entity therefore has no control over the asset.</p> <p>This outstanding amount comply with the definition of a contingent asset as this amount is only a possible asset and the existence will only be confirmed in the future when National Treasury makes the final decision.</p> <p>Trade receivables and government grants and subsidies are being overstated by R2 283 214.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 34 (comaf 4).	Misstatements in financial statements	We are in contact with National Treasury about this matter and we trust that it will be finalised during 2012/2013.

50	<b>Bad debts write offs not approved [Comaf 6]</b>	<p>During the performance of the audit procedures on bad debts written off, it was noted that the council approval was not obtained for the debts written off amounting to R2 069.87.</p> <p>It was also identified that council resolutions, regarding approval for bad debt write offs, were not always implemented by adjusting the debtor accounts. Outstanding debt balances can be written off as bad debt without council authorisation. This will lead to a loss of income for the municipality. The risk exists that council resolutions were not appropriately implemented.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 35 (comaf 6).	Misstatements in financial statements	Measures have been put in place to avoid a recurrence of this.
<b>General Information Technology Controls</b>					
51	<b>No evidence of IT service performance monitoring</b>	<p>Although meetings are held with IT service providers on a regular basis, no evidence could be provided to confirm that the IT services provided by third parties were being monitored.</p> <p>Without formal monitoring of the services provided by third parties there is no way to hold the third party accountable for non-delivery of agreed service levels, which could result in unplanned additional expenditure.</p>	2011/12 final management report, Annexure B finding 36.	Internal Control deficiency	This problem will be addressed once the proposed contract management system on collaborator is in place
52	<b>User account management policies and procedures</b>	<p>As reported during the previous audit, user access controls to mitigate the risk of unauthorised access to the network and application systems are informal and have not been documented or approved. As a result, the following user account management weaknesses still exist for the Venus and PAYDAY systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• User account management policies and procedures were not documented or approved.</li> <li>• Regular reviews of user access profiles were not performed to confirm whether access is appropriate to users' job roles and responsibilities.</li> </ul> <p>Weaknesses in user access controls increase the risk of unauthorised access being gained to the application systems which could compromise the integrity of the data on the system.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 37.	Internal Control deficiency	The financial system of the municipality has access controls in place. For the rest of the systems we have ask province for assistance .
53	<b>Disaster recovery plan</b>	<p>Although a disaster recovery plan was documented in 2009, no evidence was in place to confirm that the plan has been tested and reviewed.</p> <p>Without an adequate disaster recovery plan and disaster recovery site, the municipality may not be able to recover its operations within a reasonable period the event of a disaster.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 38.	Internal Control deficiency	We are currently in a tender process to procure a service provider to address this.
54	<b>Lack of program change management procedures</b>	<p>Change management procedures had not been designed or implemented. As a result, programmer access to the production environment is not being monitored.</p> <p>There is increased likelihood of unauthorised changes being introduced to key business systems if changes are not properly managed. This could result in the application being unstable.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 39.	Internal Control deficiency	We have ask Province to help us with this matter

55	<b>Weaknesses in physical access and environmental controls</b>	<p>Controls have been implemented since the prior year audit to improve the physical and environmental security of the servers at the municipality. However, these controls do not adequately address the risk of unauthorised access to the servers. As a result, the following weaknesses were still identified</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Although the area around the servers has been secured with walls and a door that can be locked, these are made of glass and can be easily compromised. The surrounding windows have also not been secured.</li> <li>• There were no water and smoke detectors in the server room.</li> <li>• The server room was not in a neat/tidy condition with loose cables as well as flammable materials in clear view.</li> <li>• No maintenance schedule for the environmental controls equipment is in place.</li> </ul> <p>The lack of adequate physical access security may result in unauthorised people gaining access to sensitive IT facilities, increasing the chances of hardware being stolen, devices being reconfigured without authorisation and confidential information being compromised.</p> <p>Without adequate environmental controls, IT processing facilities may be exposed to negative environmental impacts and unprecedented downtime due to power outages, fires, water damage and other facility-related risks. In addition, failure to adequately maintain or service environmental controls may result in the untimely breakdown of these controls and expose the server room to negative environmental impacts and downtime.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure B finding 40.	Internal Control deficiency	We have budgeted for this in the 2013/2014 budget
<b>Lease</b>					
58	<b>Finance leases incorrectly classified as operating lease (COMAF 5)</b>	<p>During the audit of operating leases it was identified that leases of equipment that should have been accounted for as Finance leases were treated as an Operating lease.</p> <p>The following leases were identified that should be accounted for as Finance leases:</p> <p>Konica Minolta, account number 457061600361 Konica Minolta, account number 3010041600361 Panasonic, account number 1585041600361</p> <p>The effect of the incorrect classification is trivial, but we would like to emphasize the importance of correctly identifying finance leases.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure C finding 2 (comaf 5).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This will be rectified in 2012/2013
<b>Revenue</b>					
61	<b>Revenue: Property rates revenue incorrectly recognised (COMAF 3)</b>	<p>During the performance of the audit procedures it was identified that an estimated amount of revenue was recognised for the interim valuation held between 1 January 2012 and 30 June 2012 regarding the interim valuation roll not yet received at year end.</p> <p>A total amount of R50 000 was recognised for property rates income and sundry debtors.</p> <p>Revenue cannot be recognised for probable revenue and should only be recognised when the amount is certain and the municipality is entitled to the income.</p> <p>An estimate of revenue for property rates could not be substantiated with an interim valuation roll. This leads to Revenue and Trade receivables being overstated by R50 000.</p>	2011/12 final management report, annexure C finding 5 (comaf 3).	Misstatements in the financial statements	This matter has been settled



## Supply Chain Management

### **Introduction**

As an organisation, Hessequa Municipality is focused on sustainability, service delivery excellence, local economic development and financial viability. With these values in mind, Hessequa municipality supports the “Proudly South African” campaign; promote “green” procurement and encourage preference for goods and services supplied, manufactured and produced within the Hessequa region.

As the supply chain leader, Hessequa Municipality is committed to improved performance of its supply chain and supplying both its internal and external customers with the highest quality goods and services at the right price, right time, right quantity, from the right supplier, to the right place.

### **Hessequa Municipality: Vision & Strategic Objectives**

A caring municipality where everyone reaps the fruit of cost effective and innovative service delivery, stimulated economic growth and sustainable use of natural resources

- ☐ Empowerment of communities through effective communication and participation
- ☐ Ensuring a sustainable future through effective conservation and restoration of natural resources, limiting the impact of our presence in the ecology and returning to a heritage of preservation
- ☐ An Innovative approach to maintenance of all services and assets, as we develop infrastructure that secures growth in a sustainable manner
- ☐ Efficient and cost effective service delivery to all our residents, of the best quality and quantity.
- ☐ Development of socially and culturally prosperous and safe communities through strategic investment in integrated human settlement
- ☐ A special focus on human development to enhance the social wellbeing of our residents
- ☐ Developmental interventions that would stimulate economic growth, to the benefit of all communities
- ☐ A prepared local authority with a fit for purpose workforce, creating equal opportunities for all residents in a transparent, accountable and measurable manner

### **SCM Vision**

“To have created and established an Efficient and Effective Supply Chain focused on improved service delivery and the promotion of economic and environmental sustainability aimed at local economic development and enhancing the financial viability of Hessequa Municipality by 30 June 2014

### **SCM Mission**

Hessequa Municipality procure goods and services to provide top quality service delivery for its constituency. These goods and services will be procured through a system which is fair, equitable,

transparent, competitive and cost-effective and in line with legislative provisions. Goods and services will be procured by means of sustainable practices in line with organisational objectives.

### ***SCM Values***

- Batho Pele (People First)
- Value for money
- Economic and Environmental sustainability
- Ethics (Doing the right thing)
- Service Delivery
- Legislative Compliance
- Risk Mitigation

### ***SCM Objectives***

- Improved Service Delivery
- Value for Money
- Local Economic Development
- Risk Mitigation

### ***Major Goals***

- Spent 60% of procurement budget on goods and services supplied in the Hessequa region by June 2014
- 100% Legislative compliance by June 2014
- Certified training on Municipal SCM related aspects for all officials involved in SCM by June 2013
- SCM unit 100% capacitated by June 2014 as per current approved structure
- Improve efficiency by reducing the requisition turnover time to an average of 3 working days and 60% of stock items available for immediate use by June 2014
- Zero Audit qualifications for SCM by June 2014

### ***Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities & Threats***

<u>Strengths</u>	<u>Weaknesses</u>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Dedicated and determined SCM unit</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Planning not integrated</li></ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuously strive for improvement</li> <li>•</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lack of capacity – Personnel and training</li> <li>• No Logistics system in place</li> <li>• No Contract management system in place</li> <li>• Lack of funds</li> <li>• No means of monitoring and evaluating progress</li> </ul>
<p><u>Opportunities</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop local suppliers to supply commodities and services not available in the region or to improve to a particular service level</li> <li>• Include developmental initiatives of local suppliers and local labour in all major projects e.g. NCDP</li> <li>• Donor funding for supplier/contractor development as well as the development of local labour, e.g. EPWP</li> <li>• Green Revolution</li> </ul>	<p><u>Threats</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tender Collusion or Bid Rigging</li> <li>• Local Suppliers do not have the competitive advantage</li> <li>• No suppliers for certain commodities or for certain expertise locally</li> <li>• Recessionary economic climate</li> </ul>

### ***Strategic Action Programmes***

Head: SCM – Develop Contract Man & Administration system

Head: SCM – Develop Logistics Management system

Head: SCM - Develop M&E system

Manager Socio-Economic Development & Housing - Develop LED Register

Managers – Conduct needs analysis

EPWP & CDP Champion – Devise and Implement contractor and supplier development programme

Managers Technical Departments - Obtain funding for these programmes

CFO, MM, Council - Capacitate the SCM unit

## **FOCUS AREA 2: EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATION AND PARTICIPATION**

### **Public Participation**

#### ***Public Participation Framework***

The Hessequa public participation framework identifies the need for the public to be involved in the matter of local government and attempts to structure their involvement in different categories. The primary reason for a structured approach is to be able to communicate the opportunities with the public. It also creates the opportunity to immediately communicate the goal of the participation opportunity with the public or interested individuals or groupings. The Hessequa Municipality structures these opportunities in three categories:

#### **Sector/Focus Group Engagements**

Sector and/or Focus Group Participation aims at getting interested groupings or individuals involved in processes strategic in nature. These are mostly driven by the IDP process and creates platforms with very specific outcomes to be reached. Examples of Sector / Focus Group Engagements:

- Social Development Engagements
- Community Safety Engagements
- Environmental Management Engagements
- Economic Development Engagements

#### **Broader Public Consultations**

Broader Public Consultations are opportunities that are created on a regular timeframe for engagement with the public in a broader and more open way. These types of engagements are mainly sorted into two different platforms.

1. Ward Committees
  - a. Ward committees are legislated requirements for municipalities and they are implemented for continuous participation of wards in the matters of local government
  - b. Ward committees do not have any decision-making powers, but serve as the primary public platform for advising the Council about matters relevant to a specific ward.
  - c. Ward Committees should meet on a monthly basis.
2. Mayoral Outreach Program
  - a. The Mayoral Outreach programme is a program where quarterly meetings are held in almost every town throughout the Hessequa region
  - b. Each quarter has a different theme and it is normally linked with municipal processes to inform the public about it.
    - i. Quarter 1: Communication of IDP & Budget processes for the coming year
    - ii. Quarter 2: Notice of due dates for inputs to the IDP & Budget processes
    - iii. Quarter 3: Overview of all Inputs to IDP & Budget Received and Budget Framework presented

- iv. Quarter 4: Concept IDP & Budget presented and communication of deadlines for comments on these documents.
- c. At each of these engagements an opportunity is given to all present to ask questions or raise issues that they experience with service delivery from all spheres of government and not only the local municipality.

### Subject Specific Participation Opportunities

Subject specific participation is opportunities where the public can influence or be involved in the development of various documents of sorts. Many times these opportunities are not dealt with by the organising of a meeting and inviting people to a venue, but mostly when documentation have been advertised for public comment. These range from changes to the Spatial Development Framework, policies, by-laws, etc.

It can also include formal meetings, but this is mostly where detailed technical information about a specific process or subject needs to be explained to the public in order for them to give proper input to the process.

### Ward Committees Participation and Overview of Broader Public Inputs.

During the 2012/13 financial year the Hessequa Municipality initiated a process of including the ward committees in the prioritisation of community inputs to the budget. All inputs were received for the 2013/14 budget and IDP Review by mid November 2012. All these inputs where included then in the assembly of the concept budget process for quantifying by the senior managers together with all the departmental inputs to the budget. At the same time all inputs was listed and sorted by ward by the IDP Unit. Each ward committee received a list of inputs relating to their ward and were tasked to prioritise the public inputs over a timeframe of three years with 5 priorities for each year.

The following list of inputs were received. You will note that some inputs where transversal to all wards and was duplicated then for consideration by each ward committee.

#	Ref. #	Public Input	Ward
1	1	Werkbestek-opname te Preekstoel vir meer effektiewe begrotingsamestelling	1
2	1	Permanente Opsigterspos vir Ellensrust karavaanpark	1
3	1	Oop grond by Lappiesbaai Oord te verbeter deur die daarstelling van 'n geseelde gruislaag	1
4	7	Vakansieprogramme in Stilbaai tydens Desember Vakansie	1
5	7	Voldoende Begroting vir Ellensrust Kamp - Verfraaiing en Opknapping	1
6	7	Begroting vir Stilbaai Gemeenskapsaal - Onderhoud en Herstel - Personeel	1
7	17	Opgradering van Stilbaai Skietbaan	1
8	20	Frokkies vir Laerskoolatletiekkode - Skole beskik nie oor fondse om gepaste klerasie aan kinders te verskaf nie	1
9	21	Studiebeurse vir Minder Bevoorregte Kinders	1
10	21	Befondsing vir Kuns & Kultuur Aktiwiteite	1
11	21	Ondersteuning aan Plaaslike Entrepreneurs	1
12	21	Skoonmaak Aksies in alle woongebiede	1



13	22	Kuns en Stokperdjie Ekspo	1
14	27	Feesligte Gedurende Feestyd	1
15	29	Opknapping van geteipoel en omgewing - Gmond	1
16	29	Opknapping van ou vywertjie - Gmond	1
17	29	vervoer van kinders na 'n Hoërskool - Gmond	1
18	29	Publieke vervoer - Gmond	1
19	29	Mediese Versorgingsdienste - Gmond	1
20	29	Toegang tot Staatsdienste - Geboortesertifikate/ID/sterftes/Paspoorte/ens. - Gmond	1
21	29	Instandhouding van bestaande infrastruktuur - Gmond	1
22	34	Befondsing vir Tuin op die Brak	1
23	35	Gouritsmond Bewaringstrust Befonding	1
24	36	Randstene moet dringend aandag kry - Sbaai	1
25	36	Ontwikkeling van die hawegebied - Sbaai	1
26	1	Teer van Doris Straat	1
27	1	Opgadering van Watersuiweringsaanleg	1
28	1	Installering van Randstene - Westekant van Hoofweg Oos	1
29	1	Voorsiening van Stormwater Stelsel - Steadfraylaan	1
30	1	Installering van Randstene - Steadfraylaan	1
31	1	Herseel van Hoofweg Oos	1
32	1	Herseel van Gordon Straat	1
33	1	Opgradering van Lewensreddershuisie te Lappiesbaai	1
34	1	Rekonstruksie van aansluiting na Preekstoelpad en Hoofweg Oos asook Stormwater verleiding	1
35	1	Herseel van paaie in die Ellensrus Karavaanpark	1
36	1	Installering van Randstene in Ellensrust Karavaanpark	1
37	1	Brandpad langs Pauline Bohnen daarstel en onderhoud van die brandpad	1
38	3	Stormwater Gouritsmond	1
39	3	Ingangsroete te Melkhoutfontein	1
40	3	Sportfasaliteite Melkhoutfontein	1
41	3	Braaigeriewe Melkhoutfontein	1
42	3	Drooglegging van gedeelte vanaf Erica Singel	1
43	5	Skulping by Klinieke vir Pasiente Vervoer	1
44	7	66KV Kraglyn na Stilbaai	1
45	7	Opgradering van Dorpsingang en verfraaiing van Hoofweg in Sakekern	1
46	7	Aanbring van goeie ontspanninggeriewe langs die kuslyn	1
47	7	Opgradering van Sportterrein te Stilbaai	1
48	13	Randstene Hoofweg Oos & Wes	1
49	14	Randstene	1
50	14	Opgradering van Sportterrein	1
51	24	Veiligheidskamerastelsel (CCTV) Riversdal	1
52	29	Addisionele Opgaardam en ook ontkalking sisteem - Gmond	1

53	29	Aansluitings by rioolwerke vir alle huise - Gmond	1
54	29	Teer van alle strate in Bitouville - asook Kusweg - Gmond	1
55	29	Stormwater pyp in kusweg - Gmond	1
56	29	Randstene in heelwat strate - Gouritsmond	1
57	29	Opgradering van Bitouville Sportterrein	1
58	29	Oefenbof vir gholfspelers - Gmond	1
59	29	Reddingstoerusting by die swemstrand - Gmond	1
60	29	Speelpark vir kleuters by die strand - Gmond	1
61	29	Opgradering van speelpark toerusting in Bitouville	1
62	29	Opknapping van Tennisbaan - G/mond	1
63	29	Opknapping van dak en betonbane by jukskeiklub - G/mond	1
64	29	Braai geriewe vir dagbesoekers weg van die geteipoel - Gmond	1
65	29	Skoonmaakgeriewe vir bote ens. by die rivier - Gmond	1
66	29	'n sterk bewegings sensitiewe lig by die slip en jetty - Gmond	1
67	36	Opgradering van strate en sydjies - Sbaai	1
68	36	Plavei van Wegestraat - Sbaai	1
69	36	Meer brandstroke in die gebied - Sbaai	1
70	36	Beplanning vir senior burgers en gestremde persone se mobiliteit in dorp - Sbaai	1
71	20	Frokkies vir Laerskoolatletiekkode - Skole beskik nie oor fondse om gepaste klerasie aan kinders te verskaf nie	2
72	21	Studiebeurse vir Minder Bevoorregte Kinders	2
73	21	Befondsing vir Kuns & Kultuur Aktiwiteite	2
74	21	Ondersteuning aan Plaaslike Entrepreneurs	2
75	21	Skoonmaak Aksies in alle woongebiede	2
76	32	Befondsing vir herdruk van Albertinia Boek - 200 Boeke	2
77	32	Befondsing vir herdruk van Albertinia Boek - 100 Boeke	2
78	35	Befondsing vir Albertinia Museum	2
79	5	Skulping by Klinieke vir Pasiente Vervoer	2
80	24	Veiligheidskamerastelsel (CCTV) Riversdal	2
81	39	Opgradering van Rioolstelsel - Koppeling van Uitbreiding 2 aan rioolstelsel	2
82	7	Begroting vir Stilbaai Gemeenskapsaal - Onderhoud en Herstel - Personeel	3
83	12	Uitbreiding van die Sakekern in Stilbaai - moet "vetter" gemaak word.	3
84	12	Minder stopstrate in Stilbaai	3
85	13	Verfraai van Morrispunt & Lapskuit tesame met bestaande verbeterings wat deur privaat instansies gedoen word	3
86	13	Openbare tuine te verander na arbeidslose tuine	3
87	15	Uitpomp van toilette Vermaaklikheid	3
88	15	Skoonmaak van Watertenke op gereelde basis - Vermaaklikheid	3
89	15	Kwartaalike Mini-Jamborees in Vermaaklikheid	3
90	15	Ondersteuning vir die skep van 'n Buurtwag - Vermaaklikheid	3

91	20	Frokkies vir Laerskoolatletiekkode - Skole beskik nie oor fondse om gepaste klerasie aan kinders te verskaf nie	3
92	21	Studiebeurse vir Minder Bevoorregte Kinders	3
93	21	Befondsing vir Kuns & Kultuur Aktiwiteite	3
94	21	Ondersteuning aan Plaaslike Entrepreneurs	3
95	21	Skoonmaak Aksies in alle woongebiede	3
96	27	Feesligte Gedurende Feestyd	3
97	33	Voorafbetaalde Kragmeters vir Inwoners langer as 9 maande per jaar	3
98	36	Randstene moet dringend aandag kry	3
99	36	Ontwikkeling van die hawegebied	3
100	5	Skulding by Klinieke vir Pasiente Vervoer	3
101	7	Fietsrybaan langs Hoofweg Wes	3
102	7	66KV Kraglyn na Stilbaai	3
103	7	Opgradering van Dorpsingang en verfraaiing van Hoofweg in Sakekern	3
104	7	Aanbring van goeie ontspanninggeriewe langs die kuslyn	3
105	7	Opgradering van Sportterrein te Stilbaai	3
106	8	Randstene vir Jongensfontein	3
107	12	Makliker Toegang tot Melkhoutruin, Platbos, Hoogte, Hawegebied, Little England en Stilbaai Oos vanuit Hoofweg	3
108	12	Sirkels by By bogenoemde Toegangsroetes	3
109	12	Sluit van kleiner ingange vanaf woonbuurte na Hoofweg Wes indien nodig	3
110	12	Versekerde bydrae tot Provinsiale Paaie se onderhoud vanuit Hessequa Begroting	3
111	13	Randstene Hoofweg Oos & Wes	3
112	13	Sportterrein se opgradering	3
113	14	Omheining van Riversal meentgrond tussen Begraafplaas en Oakdale se Buiteplaas - Met insette van Landbouers - Georganiseerde Landbou in Wyk 3 se Versoek	3
114	15	Waterverkooppunt by Biblioteek - Vermaaklikheid	3
115	15	Opsit van Son-Panele vir Waterverwarming - Vermaaklikheid	3
116	15	Jeugsentrum vir Vermaaklikheid - Opgradering van Saal met ontspanningsfasiliteite	3
117	24	Veiligheidskamerstelsel (CCTV) Riversdal	3
118	26	Opgradering van 2 Tennisbane te Stilbaai	3
119	30	Opgradering van die Jukskeibane te Jongensfontein	3
120	36	Opgradering van strate en sydjies	3

12 1	36	Plavei van Wegestraat	3
12 2	36	Meer brandstroke in die gebied	3
12 3	36	Bepanning vir senior burgers en gestremde persone se mobiliteit in dorp	3
12 4	6	Skoonmaak Aksies - Dien as Werkskepping	4
12 5	6	Daarstelling van meer kantoorpersoneel	4
12 6	6	Straatligte Onderhoud en Donkerkolle plek-plek	4
12 7	6	Beskikbaarstelling van Beskikbare kampe vir groentetuine en vrugteboorde	4
12 8	6	Hergruis van Strate	4
12 9	6	Skoonmaak Aksies - En Vullisoorlaaistase - Witsand	4
13 0	20	Frokkies vir Laerskoolatletiekkode - Skole beskik nie oor fondse om gepaste klerasie aan kinders te verskaf nie	4
13 1	21	Studiebeurse vir Minder Bevoorregte Kinders	4
13 2	21	Befondsing vir Kuns & Kultuur Aktiwiteite	4
13 3	21	Ondersteuning aan Plaaslike Entrepreneurs	4
13 4	21	Skoonmaak Aksies in alle woongebiede	4
13 5	37	Befondsing vir Lower Breederiver Conservancy	4
13 6	5	Skuling by Klinieke vir Pasiente Vervoer	4
13 7	6	Parkeerarea by Munisipale Gebou	4
13 8	6	Uitbrei van Gemeenskapsaal asook die Kombuis	4
13 9	6	Ontwikkeling van Besigheidserwe en Nooderwe asook die beskikbaarstelling van Woonerwe	4
14 0	6	Opgradering van Sportterrein en Gebou	4
14 1	6	Oprigting van Jeug Fasiliteite en Jeugsentrum	4
14 2	6	Plavei van Strate	4
14 3	6	Bou van Randstene	4
14 4	6	Lê van Stormwater pype	4
14 5	6	Skep van erwe vir Lae-koste Behuising	4
14 6	6	Herseel van Strate - Witsand	4
14 7	6	Oppgradering van Wes en middelkamp	4
14 8	6	Aangbring van Wheelie-Wagon Biblioteek	4

14 9	6	Skep enkel wooneenhede - Witsand	4
15 0	20	Frokkies vir Laerskoolatletiekkode - Skole beskik nie oor fondse om gepaste klerasie aan kinders te verskaf nie	5
15 1	21	Studiebeurse vir Minder Bevoorregte Kinders	5
15 2	21	Befondsing vir Kuns & Kultuur Aktiwiteite	5
15 3	21	Ondersteuning aan Plaaslike Entrepreneurs	5
15 4	21	Skoonmaak Aksies in alle woongebiede	5
15 5	23	Die oordrag van erf 1410 vanaf Provinsie	5
15 6	23	Erf langs AGS Kerk in Young Sirkel om gehersoneer te word vir gebruik vir Senior en Gestremde persone as Behuising	5
15 7	23	Aanbring van trappe en reëlins by 14 huise in Robertsweg	5
15 8	23	Oplei van interns in Rioolwerke en Waterwerke	5
15 9	23	Bevestiging van herwinningsprojekte saam met bewusmakingsveldtog	5
16 0	23	Die skep van werk deur middel van herwinningsprojekte	5
16 1	23	Die biblioteke op Heidelberg moet nogsteeds amalgameer	5
16 2	23	Akkommodasie vir die Senior Burger Klub	5
16 3	23	Befonds ABET ter ondersteuning van geletterdheidsprogramme in die Diepkloof Jeugsentrum	5
16 4	23	Befondsing vir M.I.V./Vigs projekte	5
16 5	23	Befonds Kultuur Organisasies soos Drama groepe en Kersfeeskore	5
16 6	23	Befonds die jaarlike Hessequa Sportdag	5
16 7	23	Befonds Sportorganisasies, Sopkombuise, gemeenskapstuine	5
16 8	23	Befonds Toerisme Projekte om PDI's kompetender te maak in die Hoofstroom Toerisme	5
16 9	23	R20 000 projekte om Entrepreneurs in die tweede ekonomie te ondersteun	5
17 0	23	Befonds Proe-bietjie Kunstefees	5
17 1	23	Befonds Wyksgebaseerde Ekonomiese Projekte	5
17 2	23	Verhoog Deernishulp na R4000	5
17 3	23	Tendervoorwaardes moet aangepas word om voorheenbenadeelde kontrakteurs beter te akkommodeer	5
17 4	23	Laer tariewe vir verdienstelike Organisasies by ons sale	5
17 5	23	Verlaag swembad tariewe	5
17 6	23	Alle vakante poste moet gevul word en 500 tydelike aanstellings moet gedoen word	5

17 7	23	Soek meer werkskeppingsprojekte om te dien as ekonomiese inspuiting	5
17 8	23	Skoonmaak Aksies moet in spanne plaasvind om meer mense te akkommodeer	5
17 9	23	Ondersteuning moet gegee word aan Entrepreneur en SMME en klein besighede	5
18 0	23	Verandering van Duivenhoks Biblioteek na Doris Cyster - eerste gekwalifiseerde Bibliotekaris	5
18 1	5	Skuling by Klinieke vir Pasiente Vervoer	5
18 2	23	Stel grond beskikbaar vir ligte nywerhede	5
18 3	23	Stel grond beskikbaar vir 150 opkomende boere oor die volgende 3 jaar	5
18 4	23	Identifiseer moontlike terrein vir "n truck stop	5
18 5	23	Identifiseer grond vir die sogenaamde Oosbegraafplaas	5
18 6	23	Ondersoek moontlikheid vir die vestiging van besighede in die sogenaamde Oos-Dorp	5
18 7	23	Behuising - voltooi die lae-koste behuisingsprojek - 670 eenhede	5
18 8	23	Brei lae-koste behuising uit na 500 eenhede per jaar vir die volgende 3 jaar	5
18 9	23	Voorsien grond vir GAP Housing - 300 eenhede	5
19 0	23	Voorsoen vir 300 nood-erwe om behuisingswaglys druk af te haal	5
19 1	23	Stel 150 residensiele erwe beskikbaar vir privaat kopers	5
19 2	23	Aanbring van plafonne in die ou sub-ekonomiese skema huise	5
19 3	23	Aanbring van toilette by ou sub-ekonomiese huise	5
19 4	23	Aankoop van grond vir behuising om gemeenskappe te integreer by Buitekantstraat en Middleton Straat	5
19 5	23	Huureenhede in die vorm van woonstelle 150 - 200 enhede	5
19 6	23	Uitbreiding van Rioollyn in Middedorp en Skoolkop	5
19 7	23	Aanbring van toilette in Joe Slovo Park waar mense nie toilette het nie	5
19 8	23	Voorsiening van toilette in informele areas	5
19 9	23	Voorsien voorafbetaalde meter aan alle deernis gevalle	5
20 0	23	Voorsien koeponkragmeters aan alle deernis gevalle en informele huise	5
20 1	23	Elektrifisering van toekomstige behuisingsprojekte	5
20 2	23	Spreiligte by openbare oopruimte vir beveiliging	5
20 3	23	Plavei van strate: Hartnick, Pretorius singel, Nelson Mandela Straat, Kona Laan	5
20 4	23	Plavei verbinding straatjie tussen Hoogstraat en Burnes Straat	5



205	23	Teer of plavei van Steggies in die nuwe blikksdorp woonbuurt	5
206	23	Teer of Plavei van strate in nuwe Diepkloof Uitbreiding	5
207	23	Herbou van Robertsweg en Burnes Straat	5
208	23	Opgradering van Leiwater slote - Haig en Burnes Straat	5
209	23	Herseel van alle lane in Heidelberg, Disa, Protea, Denne en Nerina laan	5
210	23	Lamoela Straat behoort opgradeer te word	5
211	23	Aanbring van speedwalle in Hoogstraat, barlowlaan en Eikeweg	5
212	23	Groen oopruimtes moet in gemeenskapsvriendelike parke omskep word	5
213	23	Omhein die groen ruimte op die hoek van geldenhuysweg en Haigstraat	5
214	23	Omhein die Diepkloof Jeugsentrum	5
215	23	Hernuwing van ons woonbuurte deur middel van Naamborde	5
216	23	Meer speelparke moet aangebring word om die druk te verminder op huidige	5
217	23	Bou van 'n Thusong Sentrum	5
218	23	Vergroot die Kindersorg geboue om verdere programme te akkommodeer	5
219	23	Brei EPWP projekte na Heidelberg toe ook uit.	5
220	23	Bou van 'n Teater op Heidelberg - Groot ekonomiese inspuiting kan wees	5
221	23	Befonds Mure van Herinnering	5
222	23	Opgradering van Duivenhoks Gemeenskapsaal	5
223	23	Opgradering van Sportterrein om voorsiening te maak vir verskillende sportkodes	5
224	23	Plaveiselprojekte moet arbeidsintensief wees	5
225	23	Verskaffing van Watertenke aan Plaaswerkers op plase	5
226	24	Veiligheidskamerastelsel (CCTV) Heidelberg	5
227	16	Skoonmaak aksies in wyk	6
228	16	Geïntegreerde Afval beplanning & bestuursplan	6
229	16	Ondersoek alternatiewe energiebronne	6
230	16	Skoonmaak van leë erwe in die wyk	6
231	16	Befondsing vir Entrepreneur en Kleinsake	6
232	16	Uitroei van indringer plante langs Goukou Rivier	6
233	16	Meer finansiële ondersteuning vir sokkombuise	6

3			
23 4	16	Opleiding vir besigheidsplanne en befondsing daarvan	6
23 5	20	Frokkies vir Laerskoolatletiekkode - Skole beskik nie oor fondse om gepaste klerasie aan kinders te verskaf nie	6
23 6	21	Herseel van Strate	6
23 7	21	Studiebeurse vir Minder Bevoorregte Kinders	6
23 8	21	Sport Ontwikkeling - Riversdal Krieketklub, Blues Netbal Klub & Valencia Krieketklub	6
23 9	21	Befondsing vir Kuns & Kultuur Aktiwiteite	6
24 0	21	Ondersteuning aan Plaaslike Entrepreneurs	6
24 1	21	Skoonmaak Aksies in alle woongebiede	6
24 2	31	Befondsing vir DROOM/Mosaiek Werkswinkel vir gestremde persone - Kersele	6
24 3	2	Sypadjies rondom Huis Ou Meule Plavei - Baie Ongelyk	6
24 4	11	Opgradering van Burgersentrum Kombuis & badkamer fasaliteite agter verhoog, en voorportaal	6
24 5	16	Plavei van alle oorblywende gruis strate	6
24 6	16	Aanbring van spoedwalle in alle strate	6
24 7	16	Opgradering van Amfiteater	6
24 8	16	Installering van voorafbetaalde watermeters	6
24 9	16	Herseel en opgradering van strate	6
25 0	16	aanbring van randstene - gedeelte van Barry Straat	6
25 1	16	Aanbring van sement bankies in Wyk 6	6
25 2	16	Opgradering van ontspanning en sportsgeriewe	6
25 3	16	Teer van Landelike pad na Palmietrivier	6
25 4	16	Openbare Vervoer vir landelike Inwoners	6
25 5	16	Gemeenskapsaal vir landelike gemeenskap	6
25 6	16	Opgradering van rioollyn vanaf pompstasie 1 tot by 2	6
25 7	18	Julius Gordon Africana Sentrum Projek	6
25 8	19	Opgradering van Sypadjies vir rolstoeltoegang sodat mense tussen Langstraat 25 - 46 nie in die straat hoef te ry nie - Klein kinders ook teenwoordig in die straat - Vinnige voertuie 'n probleem - Verkeerspoed vertraging benodig	6

25 9	19	Opgradering van Sypadjies vir rolstoeltoegang sodat mense tussen Langstraat 25 - 46 nie in die straat hoef te ry nie - Klein kinders ook teenwoordig in die straat - Vinnige voertuie 'n probleem - Verkeerspoed vertraging benodig	6
26 0	21	Opgradering van Riverville Sportterrein	6
26 1	24	Veiligheidskamerastelsel (CCTV) Riversdal	6
26 2	10	Herstel en Onderhoud by Tennis Klubhuis - Rommel Verwyder, Herstel, Verf	7
26 3	11	Skoonmaakaksies in alle wyke - R50 000 per wyk	7
26 4	11	Vergoeding Sportforum operasionele kostes tot Skype Stelsel installeer is	7
26 5	11	Strate Herseel in wyk 7 volgens Mnr Wesso se plan	7
26 6	11	Openbare busvervoerstelsel vir die landelike inwoners	7
26 7	11	Befondsing van die landelike rugbyliga om Landelike Ontwikkeling aan te help	7
26 8	11	Voltydse sopkombuis vir Kwanokuthula	7
26 9	20	Frokkies vir Laerskoolatletiekkode - Skole beskik nie oor fondse om gepaste klerasie aan kinders te verskaf nie	7
27 0	21	Studiebeurse vir Minder Bevoorregte Kinders	7
27 1	21	Befondsing vir Kuns & Kultuur Aktiwiteite	7
27 2	21	Ondersteuning aan Plaaslike Entrepreneurs	7
27 3	21	Skoonmaak Aksies in alle woongebiede	7
27 4	2	Sypadjies rondom Huis Ou Meule Plavei - Baie Ongelyk	7
27 5	10	Omhein van Tennis Klubhuis	7
27 6	11	Infrastruktuur verbeterings by Transnet gebou te Bekkerstraat 2	7
27 7	11	Hergruis van Garcia se grondstrate - Klein gedeelte	7
27 8	11	Opgradering van Burgersentrum Kombuis & badkamer fasaliteite agter verhoog, en voorportaal	7
27 9	11	Installering van Skype stelsel om kostes te verminder - Kommunikasie & Vergaderings	7
28 0	11	Opgradering van Tuine en Plaveisel rondom Burgersentrum	7
28 1	11	Uitwijkdam terugplaas op begroting	7
28 2	11	Joubertstraat se rioolprobleem - Uitbreiding na Barnes en Rouxstraat - Opgradering van Stelsel	7
28 3	11	Koeponstelsel vir elektrisiteitsverbruik by Muurbalbaan	7
28 4	11	Voetgang pad - Kwanokuthula na N2 - Plavei	7
28 5	11	Opgradering van Speelparkie oorkant Takkieskloof	7

28 6	11	Rolstoel vriendelike oorgange by spooroorgange (3) in wyk 7	7
28 7	11	Huidige watermeters opgradering na beter en betroubare meters	7
28 8	11	Grootmaat watermeters waar nog kort	7
28 9	11	Opgradering van elektrisiteitstoevoer te sekere dele in Kwanokuthula om alle onwettige konneksies hok te slaan en wettiglik te konnekteer	7
29 0	14	Omheining van Riversal meentgrond tussen Begraafplaas en Oakdale se Buiteplaas - Met insette van Landbouers	7
29 1	18	Julius Gordon Africana Sentrum Projek	7
29 2	19	Opgradering van Sypadjies vir rolstoeltoegang sodat mense tussen Langstraat 25 - 46 nie in die straat hoef te ry nie - Klein kinders ook teenwoordig in die straat - Vinnige voertuie 'n probleem - Verkeerspoed vertraging benodig	7
29 3	24	Veiligheidskamerastelsel (CCTV) Riversdal	7
29 4	25	Oprigting van speelpark te Oakdale Werkersgemeenskap	7
29 5	20	Frokkies vir Laerskoolatletiekkode - Skole beskik nie oor fondse om gepaste klerasie aan kinders te verskaf nie	8
29 6	21	Herseel van Strate	8
29 7	21	Studiebeurse vir Minder Bevoorregte Kinders	8
29 8	21	Sport Ontwikkeling - Riversdal Krieketklub, Blues Netbal Klub & Valencia Krieketklub	8
29 9	21	Befondsing vir Kuns & Kultuur Aktiwiteite	8
30 0	21	Ondersteuning aan Plaaslike Entrepreneurs	8
30 1	21	Skoonmaak Aksies in alle woongebiede	8
30 2	11	Opgradering van Burgersentrum Kombuis & badkamer fasaliteite agter verhoog, en voorportaal	8
30 3	18	Julius Gordon Africana Sentrum Projek	8
30 4	21	Opgradering van trappe en reëlins in Aloeridge en Morestond	8
30 5	24	Veiligheidskamerastelsel (CCTV) Riversdal	8

## Communications Strategy

The primary function of any municipality is to serve the inhabitants of its area of jurisdiction. A municipality owes its existence to the needs of the community, and not the other way round. To be successful it must therefore be committed to providing the best possible service to its customers, i.e. the inhabitants of its area of jurisdiction.

Research has, however, shown that people generally know little about Councils or municipalities and what they do. The less people know about an organisation, the less favourably disposed they are towards it. Local residents often see Councils as 'bureaucratic' rather than 'hard working' and as 'closed' rather than 'open and honest'.

Municipalities are furthermore tax-levying, law-enforcing institutions. In South Africa they generally have a monopoly on the supply of utilities such as electricity and water to the majority of their citizens. As a result there is a natural tendency of scepticism towards municipalities.

To ensure a positive operating environment, the modern municipality needs to build and maintain a favourable image as well as positive relationships and partnerships with all its stakeholders, externally as well as internally. It must ensure that the stakeholders understand how it works and what its responsibilities and capabilities are. The municipality must also ensure that it understands what the needs and the priorities of the stakeholders are.

To convert negative or neutral perceptions to positive perceptions, it is necessary for the municipality to be transparent and proactive in its interaction with the people it is supposed to serve.

Fundamental to this is communication, which is a two-way process that involves the continuous sharing of information with appropriate audiences on a timely basis and by the most effective means.

A communication plan provides a framework to ensure that the abovementioned interaction between the municipality and its stakeholders is executed in a planned, controlled and purposeful manner.

Public participation and public relations activities, community liaison, employee communication, media relations and campaigns, institutional advertising and customer care are all elements of the overall communication process. Effective and sustained communication is vital for the success of processes such as the IDP and transformation, the execution of municipal projects and the implementation and enforcement of municipal by-laws, etcetera.

Without a communication plan there is a risk that the Municipality will react rather than lead the communication process. Ad hoc, reactive communication often devalues the corporate and community reputation of Council projects, programmes and services. The quality and competence of communication is often the difference between the successful or the disappointing delivery of a Council initiative.

It should furthermore be noted that the Constitution of South Africa as well as the Municipal Systems Act, No 32 of 2000 places Municipalities under certain obligations with regard to the community.

Section 152 (1) (e) of the Constitution states that an objective of local government is "to encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government." Section 195 (1)(f) states that "transparency must be fostered by providing the public with timely, accessible and accurate information." Also, Section 160 (7) states that: "A municipal council must conduct its business in an open manner."

The Municipal Systems Act contains various clauses dealing with community relationships and communication, e.g. Section 6 which states inter alia that "the administration of a municipality must establish clear relationships, and facilitate co-operation between it and the local community."

The Promotion of Access to Information Act, No 2 Of 2002, is another Act which influences the communication responsibilities of a Municipality. In effect, it obliges organisations, including Municipalities, to be totally open in their affairs.

**This communication plan sets out the Hessequa Municipality's approach to communications and provides an overall framework and guidelines for managing and coordinating the communication processes between the Hessequa Municipality and all its stakeholders. It also includes action plans.**

## OBJECTIVES

The communication plan has the following objectives:

- To endorse communication as a priority issue for the Hessequa Municipality, and to encourage good communication practices with internal as well as external stakeholders.
- To support the aims and objectives of Council's corporate plans, vision, mission and values.
- To establish that good communication is everybody's responsibility, from Councillors and senior management, to front-line and support staff.
- Through credible, courteous, effective, consistent, relevant and pro-active communication create a positive operating climate and gain the confidence and support of the town's citizens, investors and visitors.
- To project the Municipality as a service-orientated organisation and foster an internal culture of service excellence.
- To keep the citizens of Hessequa informed of the services and the functions provided by the Municipality so that they may influence the quality, nature and range of services available to them.
- To convey Council decisions effectively and timeously to the inhabitants of Hessequa.
- To overcome public apathy, develop a culture of community participation and provide suitable and useful mechanisms, processes and procedures for these purposes as required by the Municipal Systems Act, No 32 of 2000



- To establish and maintain positive and constructive relations with the media.
- Establish and maintain effective internal communication channels and practices to ensure that staff is properly informed on the affairs of the municipality.
- Build and maintain employee morale and loyalty.
- Provide an action plan for improvement of the Municipality's communication systems and practices.

## SITUATION ANALYSIS

The Hessequa Municipality is a new entity that came into existence at the end of 2000 when the previous municipal structures of Riversdale Stilbaai Albertinia Gouritsmond Slangrivier Witsand Heidelberg were amalgamated to establish the current Hessequa Municipality.

The municipal area covers 5400 sq. km. It includes a large farming community and a number of relatively underdeveloped rural settlements. The new entity has inherited service as well as infrastructural backlogs from the previous structures, particularly in the rural areas. The large municipal area complicates service delivery, communication and public participation activities.

A substantial part of Hessequa population is poor, which impacts on the Municipality's income base. This, together with the restrictions imposed by the authorities on rates increases, makes it difficult to address backlogs and to improve or maintain infrastructure at the pace people expect. The situation results in some resentment towards the Municipality by both those who feel that they are historically neglected and those who feel that their needs are not met in proportion to their contribution to the municipal coffers.

Although several representative organisations exist in the Hessequa municipal area, a large part of the community is not affiliated to any of the existing structures. The opportunities for community liaison through organised structures are therefore limited.

The greater Hessequa has a diverse population of approximately 45 000 people and the main languages spoken are Afrikaans, English and Xhosa.

The population varies from illiterate and unskilled to highly qualified and skilled. While the town has a relatively fast-growing economy, poverty is rife in certain areas. The main industries in the municipal area are agriculture, fishing and tourism.

Tourism, in particular, is a fast-growing sector of the economy as the town is well-suited to becoming a prime tourist destination because of its location on the world-famous Garden Route, its particular scenic beauty, biodiversity, mild climate and rich cultural history.

Tourism development is of vital importance to the local economy because of the uncertainty of the agricultural industry and declining fish resources. Tourism development has therefore been identified as a priority by Council.

Tourism marketing, and to an extent, therefore, promotion of the town's overall image, is done by the Tourism Bureau. This appears to be working well.

While there are hot spots, Hessequa has a relatively low crime rate and its inhabitants generally live in harmony. It also has a stable labour environment.

The Municipality's external communication up till now generally tended to be ad hoc and one-dimensional, e.g. related to projects or processes, such as the IDP and SDF, and lacks clear goals.

News releases on Municipal announcements, achievements and projects are issued regularly but opportunities are still being missed due to inadequate practical-mindedness of municipal management towards communication.

The public's statutory right to attend all meetings of Council and its committees is fundamental to Council's public participation duties and transparency in general. Although meeting dates and an invitation to attend are included in the Municipality's newsletter only the dates of the full quarterly Council meetings are published in the Forum.

The Municipality has a customer care function in place, but feedback to the customer care managers on matters they report as well as follow-up on these issues is often slow. This neutralises the concept of "customer care" to some extent and also has a negative impact on the credibility of the customer care manager.

Internal communication, particularly employee communication, is mainly ad hoc and limited to notifications on conditions of employment, disciplinary or administrative matters. It is mostly top-down.

An esprit de corps seems to be lacking amongst employees, which could be due to the after-effects of the abovementioned amalgamation process, the drawn-out process to finalise and fill the new entity's structures, the lack of suitable employee communication in this regard and a hierarchical management structure that historically is not conducive to effective employee participation and initiative.

A positive team spirit and loyalty are important for the successful establishment and maintenance of a service culture. Care should be taken that the Municipality's hierarchical management system does not inhibit two-way communication and initiative by its employees.

Council has adopted a clear Vision, Mission and Values but they will be of little value if they are not communicated properly to external as well as the internal stakeholders of the Municipality, or if Councillors and municipal personnel do not live up to them.

It is highly likely that the research results referred to above (people generally know little about Councils or municipalities and what they do) apply to the Municipality of Hessequa as well. Proper communication planning and attention thereto is therefore important. It is also long overdue.

## SWOT ANALYSIS

The following is an analysis of the Municipality's strengths and weakness, potential threats it faces and available opportunities:

STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES	OPPORTUNITIES	THREATS
1. Dedicated management team 2. Sound financial state 3. Organisational stability 4. Low crime rate 5. Positive economic environment 6. Experienced management and staff 7. Good municipal infrastructure 8. Good planning mechanisms in place, e.g. IDP 9. Clean slate 10. Clear vision, mission and values.	1. Low management profile 2. Bureaucratic image 3. Esprit de corps lacking 4. Lack of service culture 5. Hierarchical management structure 6. Unstructured communication 7. Lack of skills in certain areas 8. Personnel shortages 9. Rural infrastructural backlogs 10. Vast area of jurisdiction 11. Divided communities 12. Financial constraints 13. Inadequate sensitivity towards communication 14. Controversial developments	1. Enhanced image 2. Improved community support and participation 3. Enhanced relationships with stakeholders 4. Culture of service excellence achieved 5. Improved service delivery 6. Greater customer satisfaction 7. Improved employee morale and loyalty 8. Improved operating climate 9. Improved esprit de corps 10. Positive local governance 11. Enhanced credibility	1 Slow local economic development 2. High unemployment 3. Internal labour unrest 4. Loss of skills 5. Lack of skills 6 Budget constraints 7 Lack of transparency 8. Economic decline 9. Increased crime 10. Internal resistance to change 11. Lack of commitment to communication 12. Council/management not actively involved in communication initiatives

	15. Insufficient attention to LED.		
--	------------------------------------	--	--

## STAKEHOLDERS

Stakeholders, also known as audiences, publics or strategic constituencies, are people, individually or in groups, as well as authorities who have a legitimate interest or stake in the Municipality's affairs, conduct or operations.

The Municipality's stakeholders include the following:

INTERNAL	EXTERNAL	
Councillors	Ratepayers / property owners	Visitors
Personnel	Users of municipal services	Tourists
Ward Committees	Voters	Suppliers
Employee organisations	Political parties	Contractors
Municipal pensioners	Representative community organisations, e.g. ratepayers, residents, civics	Property developers
	Local business owners	Investors
	Business organisations	Provincial Government & entities
	Labour organisations	National Government & entities
	Media	Eden District Municipality
	General public	Local law enforcement authorities
	Environmental/conservation groups	

## KEY MESSAGES

The Hessequa Municipality is:

1. A responsible, well-governed and well-managed organisation which manages taxpayers' money as well as Municipal assets responsibly and wisely.
2. A transparent, accessible organisation that keeps the community informed on its affairs as well as services provided by the Municipality.

3. A service-orientated organisation which is committed to providing the best possible service and infrastructure to the community.
4. Sensitive to the needs of the citizens of Hessequa and is committed to obtain their inputs into all matters affecting or of interest to them.
5. Committed to responsible local economic development with the ultimate objective of creating jobs and alleviating poverty.
6. Committed to a clean, healthy and tidy environment.
7. A caring and responsible employer which respects the dignity of each and every employee believes in a well-informed workforce and creates a climate in which employees can grow and develop.

### ACTION PLAN

The action plan aligns the key messages the Municipality wishes to convey to the intended recipients (stakeholders); identifies the methods or tools for this and assigns responsibilities and time scales in this regard.

1 KEY MESSAGE				
<b><i>The Hessequa Municipality is a responsible, well-governed and well-managed organisation which manages taxpayers' money and Municipal assets responsibly and wisely.</i></b>				
STAKEHOLDERS	STRATEGY	METHOD	RESPONSIBILITY	TIMING/STANDARD
1.1 All as per paragraph 5 above.	7.1.1 Publicise Municipal achievements, project progress, budgets and initiatives.	7.1.1 News releases; Advertisements; Web Site; Annual Report; Community Radio; Media Conferences and Interviews.	7.1.1 Head: Communication (Direct)/ Mayor/Municipal Manager/Directors (Supportive).	7.1.1 Media: As and when necessary/ Website: As and when necessary.
1.2 Community organisations, e.g.	7.1.2 Regional Mayoral/Council feedback or information	7.1.2 Presentations on Municipal structures,	7.1.2 Mayor/Municipal Manager / Directors / Head: Communication	7.1.2 Quarterly

ratepayers, residents, civics, general public.	meetings designed in conjunction with Mayor.	services, policies, etcetera; Feedback on issues.		
1.3 Community organisations, e.g. ratepayers, residents, civics; business, environmental and service organisations.	7.1.3 Pre-identified speaking engagements.	7.1.3 Address meetings as guest speakers.	7.1.3 Municipal Manager / Directors.	7.1.3 Minimum four meetings per annum.
<b>2 KEY MESSAGE</b>				
<i>The Hessequa Municipality is a transparent, accessible organisation that keeps the community informed on its affairs as well as services provided by the Municipality.</i>				
STAKEHOLDERS	STRATEGY	METHOD	RESPONSIBILITY	TIMING/STANDARD
2.1 All as per paragraph 5 above.	7.2.1 Publicise Municipal achievements , project progress, budgets and initiatives.	7.2.1 News releases; Advertisements ; Web Site; Annual Report; Community Radio; Media Conferences and Interviews.	7.2.1 Head: Communication (Direct)/Mayor/Municipal Manager/Directors (Supportive).	7.2.1 Media: As and when necessary/ Website: As and when necessary.
2.2 All as per paragraph 5 above.	7.2.2 Encourage public attendance of Council meetings.	7.2.2 Advertise all Mayoral meetings and General Council meetings in media and	7.2.2 Head: Communication/ Secretariat.	7.2.2 Monthly.



		newsletter.		
2.3 Media	7.2.3 Encourage media publicity of Council affairs.	7.2.3 Invite media to Council meetings; Mail Council Meeting Agendas and documentation to media; Media briefings.	7.2.3 Head: Communication / Mayor/ Municipal Manager/Secretariat.	7.2.3 Monthly.
2.4 Community organisations, e.g. ratepayers, residents, civics, general public.	7.2.4 Workshops.	7.2.4 Presentations on Municipal structures, services, policies, programmes, participation procedures, etcetera.	7.2.4 Head: Communication / Municipal Manager/Directors (Supportive).	7.2.4 When required
<b>3 KEY MESSAGE</b>				
<i>The Hessequa Municipality is a service-orientated organisation which is committed to providing the best possible service and infrastructure to the community.</i>				
<b>STAKEHOLDERS</b>	<b>STRATEGY</b>	<b>METHOD</b>	<b>RESPONSIBILITY</b>	<b>TIMING/STANDARD</b>
3.1 All as per paragraph 5 above.	7.3.1 Respond to all queries and complaints promptly and within set period of time.	7.3.1 Introduce Customer Care Standard and Complaints Handling Procedure; Make public and staff aware of procedure.	7.3.1 Directors	7.3.1 On-going; feedback to complainant / enquirer within 10 working days.
3.2 All as per paragraph 5	7.3.2 Front-line staff	7.3.2 Train	7.3.2 Directors	7.3.2 On-going.

above.	responds professionally to all calls and refer enquiries to right person all the time.	front-line staff.		
3.3 All as per paragraph 5 above.	7.3.3 Publicise Municipal service delivery achievements and practices.	7.3.3 Issue news releases; Publish in newsletter and on website.	7.3.3 Head: Communication	7.3.3 As and when possible.
3.4 All as per paragraph 5 above	7.3.4 Market customer care function	7.3.4 Publish in newsletter and on website.	7.3.4 Head: Communication	7.3.4 As and when possible.
3.5 All as per paragraph 5 above	7.3.5 Maintain effective public enquiry / complaint register system	7.3.5 Implement Eden DM-sponsored customer care computer program	7.3.5 Head: Communication.	7.3.5 On-going.
<b>4 KEY MESSAGE</b>				
<i>The Hessequa Municipality is sensitive to the diversity and needs of the citizens of Hessequa and is committed to obtaining their inputs into all matters affecting or of interest to them.</i>				
<b>STAKEHOLDERS</b>	<b>STRATEGY</b>	<b>METHOD</b>	<b>RESPONSIBILITY</b>	<b>TIMING/STANDARD</b>
4.1 All as per paragraph 5 above.	7.4.1 Increase public awareness of IDP, SDF, budget and other municipal	7.4.1 Publicise / advertise process. - Direct mailing. - Public sessions on Operational Budget	7.4.1 Head: Communication / Head: Change Management/ <i>Directors</i> - Head: Change Management. - Head: Communication /	7.4.1 As and when required. - Budget: Prior to drawing up budget (August)/ feedback (combine with Community

	processes.		Director Finance	Forums)
4.2 All as per paragraph 5 above	7.4.2 Educate public on right to participate in above processes.	7.4.2 Media articles / municipal newsletter / Presentations at community forums (see 7.1.2 / 7.2.4 above)/ Workshops.	7.4.2 Head: Communication /Municipal Manager/Directors.	7.4.2 Included in community forum program / workshop program as in 7.2.4 above.
4.3 All as per paragraph 5 above.	7.4.3 Respond to all queries and complaints promptly and within set period of time.	7.4.3 Train and continuously monitor performance of front-line staff.	7.4.3 Directorate.	7.4.3 On-going.
<b>5 KEY MESSAGE</b>				
<i><b>The Hessequa Municipality is committed to responsible local economic development with the ultimate objective of creating jobs and alleviating poverty.</b></i>				
<b>STAKEHOLDERS</b>	<b>STRATEGY</b>	<b>METHOD</b>	<b>RESPONSIBILITY</b>	<b>TIMING/STANDARD</b>
5.1 All as per paragraph 5 above.	5.1 Increase public awareness of Municipality's LED initiatives.	5.1 - News releases. - Web Site. - Annual Report. - Community Radio. - Media Conferences and Interviews.	5.1 Head: LED / Head: Communication.	5.1 On-going.

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Community Presentations.</li> <li>- Workshops.</li> </ul>		
5.2 All as per paragraph 5 above.	5.2 Invite public inputs into Municipal developments	5.2 Publicise developments and invite inputs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Targeted public meetings.</li> </ul>	5.2 Head: LED/Head: Communication	5.2 As and when required.
<b>7.6 KEY MESSAGE</b>				
<i>The Hessequa Municipality is committed to a clean, healthy environment.</i>				
STAKEHOLDERS	STRATEGY	METHOD	RESPONSIBILITY	TIMING/STANDARD
6.1 All as per paragraph 5 above.	6.1 Increase public awareness of Municipal environmental care initiatives.	6.1 News releases, media conferences and interviews. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Web Site.</li> <li>- Annual Report.</li> <li>- Community Radio.</li> <li>- Community presentations.</li> <li>- Workshops.</li> </ul>	6.1 Director/Head: Communication	6.1 On-going.
6.2 All as per paragraph 5 above.	6.2 Increase public awareness of municipal health programs and initiatives.	6.2 News releases, media conferences and interviews. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Web Site.</li> <li>- Annual Report.</li> <li>- Community</li> </ul>	6.2 Head: Communication	6.2 On-going.

		Radio. - Presentations. - Workshops.		
<b>7 KEY MESSAGE</b>				
<i>The Hessequa Municipality is a caring and responsible employer which respects the dignity of each and every employee, believes in a well-informed workforce and creates a climate in which employees can grow and develop.</i>				
STAKEHOLDERS	STRATEGY	METHOD	RESPONSIBILITY	TIMING/STANDARD
7.1 Employees.	7.1 Keep employees informed on Council / Municipal issues, policies and projects.	7.1 Regular staff circulars;	7.1 Head: Communication / Directorate.	7.1 Monthly / ongoing.
7.2 Employees.	7.2 Create opportunities for two-way communication between employees / senior management.	7.2 Quarterly round-table discussions for departmental representatives.	7.2 Head: Communication/ Directorate.	7.2 Monthly / ongoing.
7.3 Employees.	7.3 Encourage employees to suggest process and service delivery improvements.	7.3 Suggestion boxes. Incentives.	7.3 Head: Communication / Directorate	7.3 Monthly / ongoing.
7.4 Employees.	7.4 Encourage service	7.4 Introduce monthly	7.4. Head: Communication /	7.4 Monthly / ongoing.

	excellence, initiative, and etcetera.	recognition reward system (non-intrinsic value).	Directorate.	
--	---------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------	--------------	--



### **FOCUS AREA 3:**

#### **MAINTENANCE AND DEVELOPMENT OF ALL SERVICES**

##### *Streets, Storm water, Parks & Resorts*

*This department is responsible for the management, maintenance and upgrading of streets, storm water, parks and resorts within the Hessequa municipal area. The towns where these services are rendered include Riversdale (administrative centre), Heidelberg, Albertinia, Stillbay, Jongensfontein, Melkhoutfontein, Gouritsmond, Slangrivier and Witsand. Please note that this section provides a summary of findings of the following sectoral Plans which forms an integral part of the IDP:*

- 1. Hessequa Integrated Transport Plan of 2010*
- 2. Eden Integrated Transport Plan of 2010*
- 3. Hessequa Pavement Management System of 2009*
- 4. Hessequa Storm water Management System of 2007*
- 5. Hessequa Roads and Transport Master Plan of 2009-10*
- 6. Hessequa Building Maintenance Management Plan of 2010*

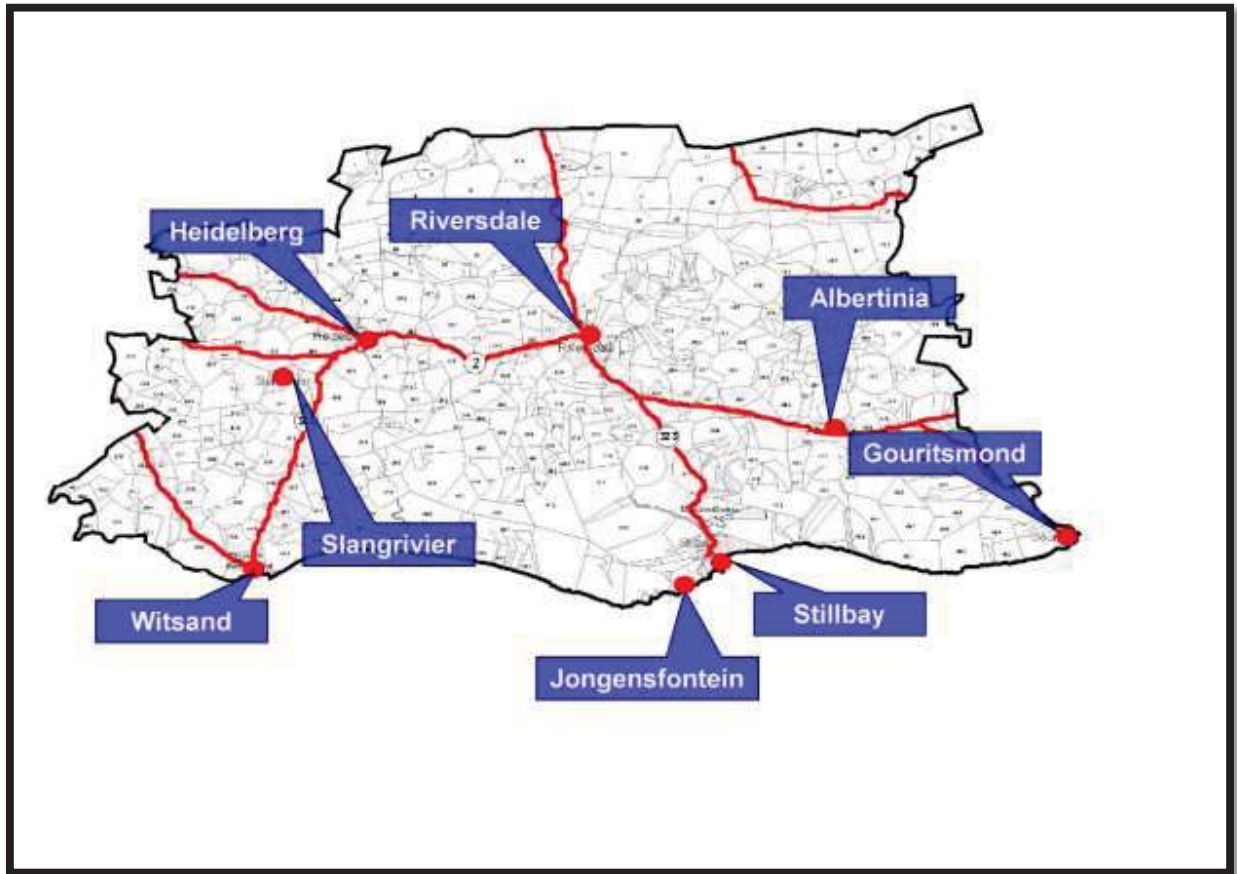
*The parks include all municipal public opens spaces, beaches, sport grounds, cemeteries and recreational parks. There are furthermore six (6) municipal resorts which are managed by this department and these resorts are situated in Riversdale, Stillbay, Witsand, Gouritsmond and Jongensfontein.*

*Various sectors of our community uses the above facilities and ranges from the normal inhabitant of Hessequa to Churches, Sport clubs, Tourists, Public Transport Operators, Motorists and individuals.*

*The aim of this department is to deliver a safe, accessible, reliable and affordable service insofar streets, storm water, parks and resorts are concerned.*

*The levels of service currently provided are within reasonable standards and access to streets and amenities are within acceptable ranges. The latter therefore imply the all home owners within Hessequa have sufficient access to streets en storm water services. Although the overall streets and storm water network's conditional rating can be classified as being are rated below average, many factors influence such ratings like aging infrastructure and extreme weather patterns and lack of sufficient funds which influence the overall performance of infrastructure.*

Hessequa Municipal area can be classified as geographically sparsely spread with distances in excess of 200km between towns located at the outer boundaries of the Hessequa Municipal area. The map below illustrates the latter and Riversdale is the administrative centre of the region.



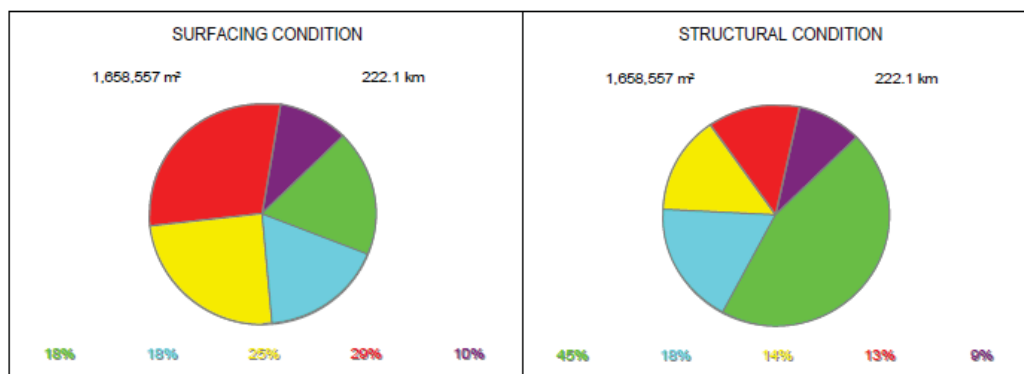
The N2 connects all in-land towns and provide access to all coastal towns via the Provincial Road network. Within each town, the extents of the street and storm water network are indicated in the table below:

TOWN	STREET NETWORK (km)		STROMWATER NETWORK (m)		
	SURFACED	GRAVEL	PIPE LENGTHS	OPEN CANALS	MANHOLES (no)
Riversdale	58.3	7.4	19655	9744	741
Stilbaai (+MHF)	70.5	3.2	15026	1417	334

<i>Albertinia</i>	27.3	4.3	6933	2149	180
<i>Heidelberg</i>	31.7	5.1	11086	6423	289
<i>Gouritsmond</i>	11.5	0.4	673	64	28
<i>Jongensfontein</i>	10.7	0.3	2903	428	71
<i>Witsand</i>	13.8	0.2	1022	437	32
<i>Slangrivier</i>	2.5	9.8	500	300	22
<b>TOTALS</b>	<b>226.3</b>	<b>30.7</b>	<b>57798</b>	<b>20962</b>	<b>1697</b>

*Detailed information regarding the condition of the streets and storm water network can be found in the Pavement and Storm water Management Systems (PMS and SMS) and can be summarized as follows as extracted from the 2009 PMS and 2007 PMS respectively:*

The total length of the paved network is 226.4km (222.1km tar, 3.7km block paving and 1.6km concrete pavements) with an estimated replacement value of R507.7 million. The average condition of the network can be rated as poor to very poor, with 39% of the surfacing and 22% of the structure in the poor to very poor category.



The estimated Funding Backlog on the bituminous pavements at this stage is R 105 million with the following immediate needs on the paved network:

#### **(2009 HESSEQUA PMS)**

*The 2007 SMS conclusions suggest that future development of new infrastructure should be done according to best practice guidelines and all drainage infrastructure including streets, should be designed to accommodate run-off for 20-year storm events. In the past all drainage infrastructure was designed to accommodate 2-year storm events only due to economic factor as cost could increase exponentially for higher return periods.*

*As stated previously, all households do have adequate access to streets and a storm water system although future upgrades are required as towns and suburbs expands.*

## **Basic Municipal Services**

### **Streets:**

*Three guideline studies exist which informs the development and maintenance of the street network namely:*

- 1. The **Hessequa Pavement Management System** is used to manage the municipal street network of Hessequa. The Pavement Management System is a subset of the Road Infrastructure Management System. The use of a Pavement Management System is generally accepted as being essential for determining the maintenance needs of road networks in a scientific manner. Implemented in a sequence of phases, it first identifies maintenance projects from a visual assessment of the pavement condition within the road network. It then determines the most economical alternative maintenance treatment. A Pavement Management System enables road authorities to establish their budget requirements objectively, as well as maintaining control over the pavement performance.*
- 2. The Hessequa Roads and Transport Master Plan were developed for the bigger town centres of Riversdale, Stilbaai and soon Heidelberg and Albertinia as well. The objective of these Master Plans are to address future scenarios for roads and transport development and propose future upgrades for the following:*
  - Road classification*
  - Operation conditions*
  - Road infrastructure*
  - Parking*
  - Public Transport*
  - Pedestrians and,*
  - Freight Transport*

*The Master Plans are also importantly used as guideline to inform decisions on new developments or rezoning application, contributions to be paid by developers, highlights infrastructure shortcomings, informs budgets and is also used to apply for funding from other state departments.*

- 3. The Hessequa Integrated Transport Plan (HITP) is a statutory planning document in terms of the National Land Transport Act 2009, (Act 5 of 2009) and its purpose is to*

*address key challenges w.r.t. land transport issues where people's mobility are adversely affected by high transport cost. Land transport in general is characterized by private and public transport and as integrated transport planning attempts to promote public transport usage due to its benefits of being a mass people mover. The HITP identified non-motorised transport (pedestrians and bicyclist) as being the major form of movement within towns due to the relative compact nature of our smaller towns.*

*Some of the findings in the HITP indicate that there is a need for improved public transport services in and between towns especially amongst the captive users of the system where no alternative mode exists. Since most users make use of walking within town, there is a further need for improved non-motorised infrastructure. One of the findings of the Eden ITP recommended the undertaking of an Eden Mobility Strategy and in February 2011, the Western Cape Department of Transport and Public Works commissioned the study to be undertaken. The objective of the study is to amongst other things; determine the feasibility of implementing an Eden wide public transport service which will connect all towns in Eden.*

### **Storm water**

*The principles and procedures for storm water management establishment and formalization were focused on:*

- *The hydrological modelling of urban and rural drainage regions*
- *The hydraulic analysis of conduits and natural waterways*
- *The compilation of management scenarios*
- *To identify, prioritize, find solutions and costing to upgrade sub-standard systems*
- *Maintenance management*

*The storm water management system comprises of the following modules:*

- *Hydrological modelling module. This module forms the basis of all urban modelling processes and management procedures*
- *Flood lines module which incorporates the most important information extracted from flood line studies conducted using different hydraulic and hydrological software packages. The data are represented in tables as well as graphically.*
- *As-build data capturing module which is divided into two separate sub-modules and which differentiates between two as-built collection methods namely:*
  - *Plan data collection from plans labelled as such*
  - *Site data collection from site visits.*

*The Hessequa storm water management system was completed in June 2007. The objectives of the study were to identify, analyse and quantify storm water problems in the areas as listed in the pavement management system. The storm water management system further envisaged to find solutions and costs associated with upgrading storm water in Hessequa and to provide guidelines regarding storm water drainage through developing and existing residential areas.*

*It was found that all areas in the Hessequa Municipal area do not have a sufficient storm water system to accommodate a true 1 in 20 year flood scenario. The resulting measures to address such deficiencies reflect in the cost estimates which can be summarised as follows:*

*Total new infrastructure: R24.8 million*

*Upgrading existing infrastructure: R 4.1 million*

*These figures represent new infrastructure and upgrades to be implemented across the Hessequa municipal area and in order for the storm water system to function as per the Guidelines for Human Settlement Planning and Design.*

*It is therefore also clear that a significant backlog exist in the provision of new storm water reticulation in the Hessequa Municipal area and the municipality is tasked to maintain an existing system with an estimated replacement value of approximately R168 million (V& V report of June 2007)*

### **Municipal Buildings**

*The primary objective of the rapid assessment of the Hessequa Building Maintenance Management Plan (HBMMP) was to inspect each facility and note physical or operational deficiencies. The information gathered in the field would then be imported into a life cycle cost model and used to calculate the repair and replacement cost of the particular facility.*

*Given the financial and time frame limitations, we drastically reduced the list of buildings to be assessed in the field from 275 to 166. The most important buildings were however included in this reduced list.*

- *The State of the Buildings was determined from the fieldwork collected in February 2010. The lifecycle model which hosts all of the gathered information tells us the following:*

*What buildings do you we own and where it is?*

*What are these buildings worth? (Replacement value)*

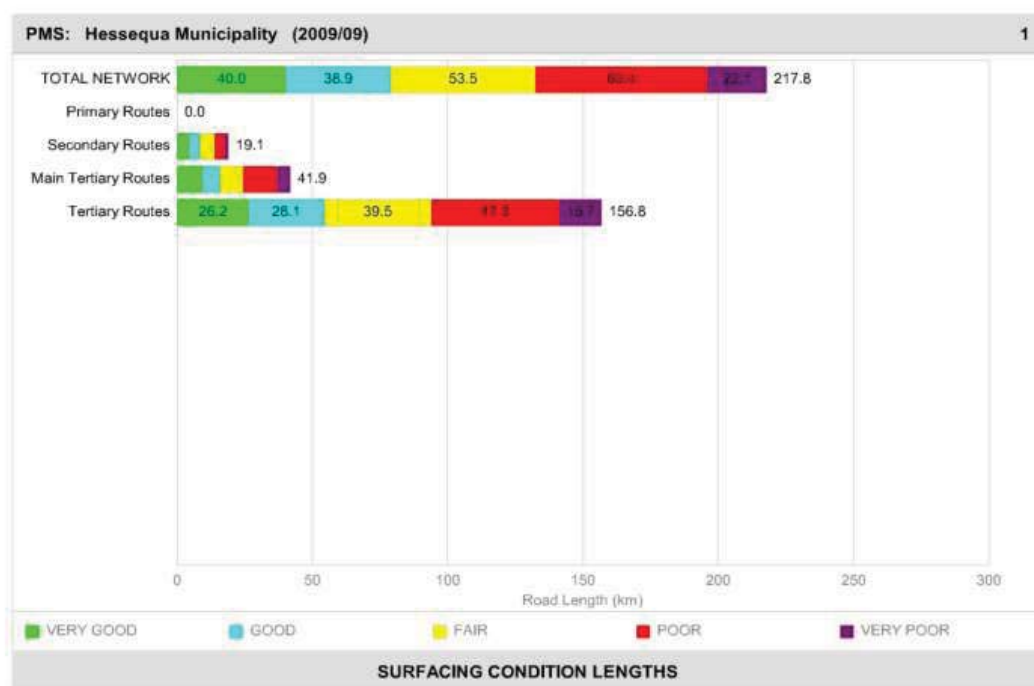
*What is its condition and expected remaining service life? (Condition and Capability Analysis)*

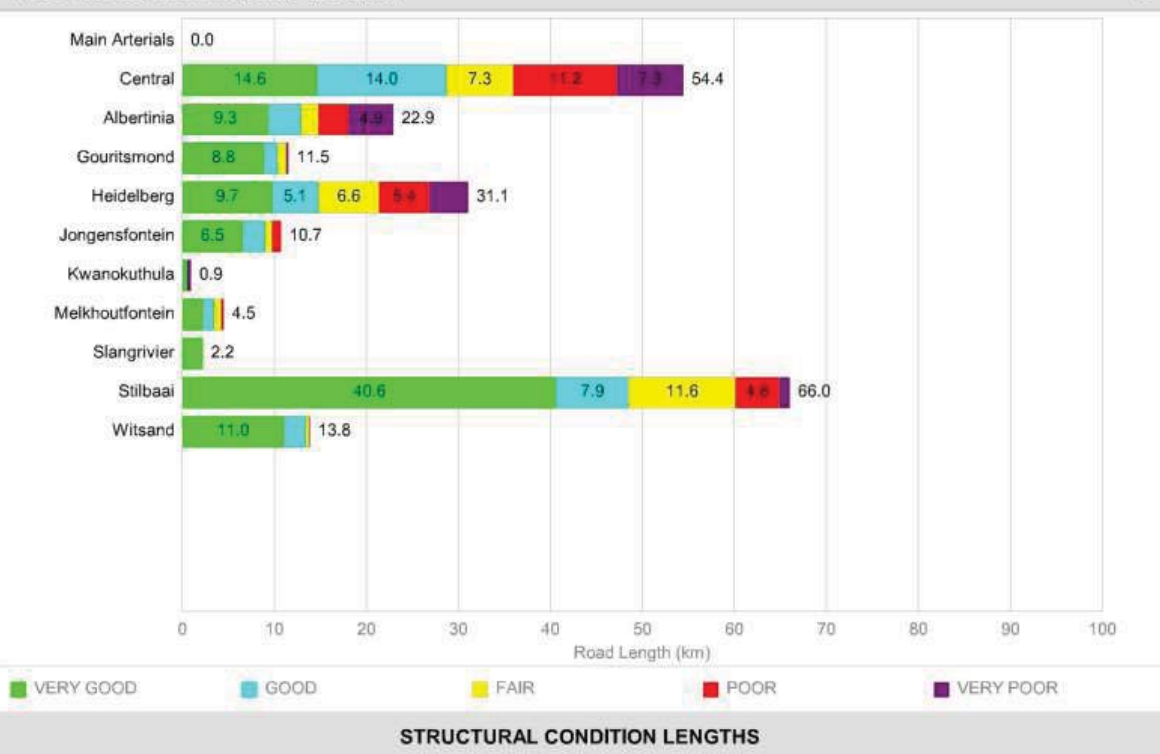
*Hessequa Municipality is responsible for the management of municipal buildings which have an estimated current replacement cost (CRC) of R233,666,005 based on current Rand value (February 2010) by the time the building assessment was carried out*

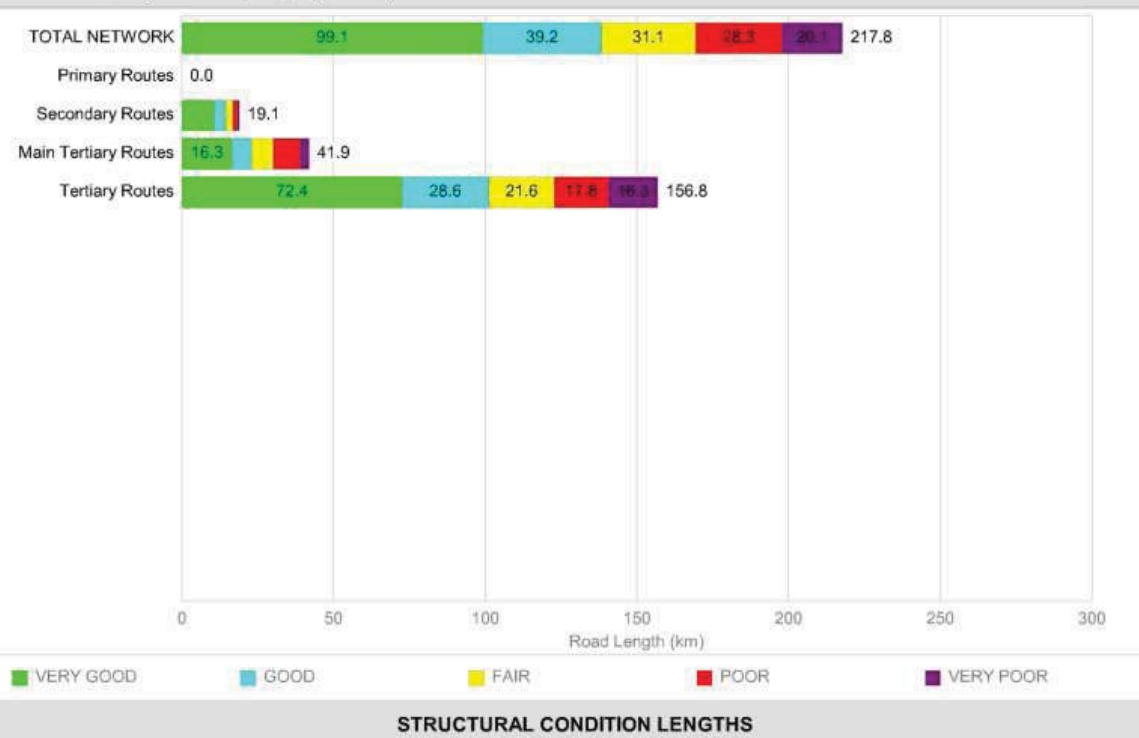
.

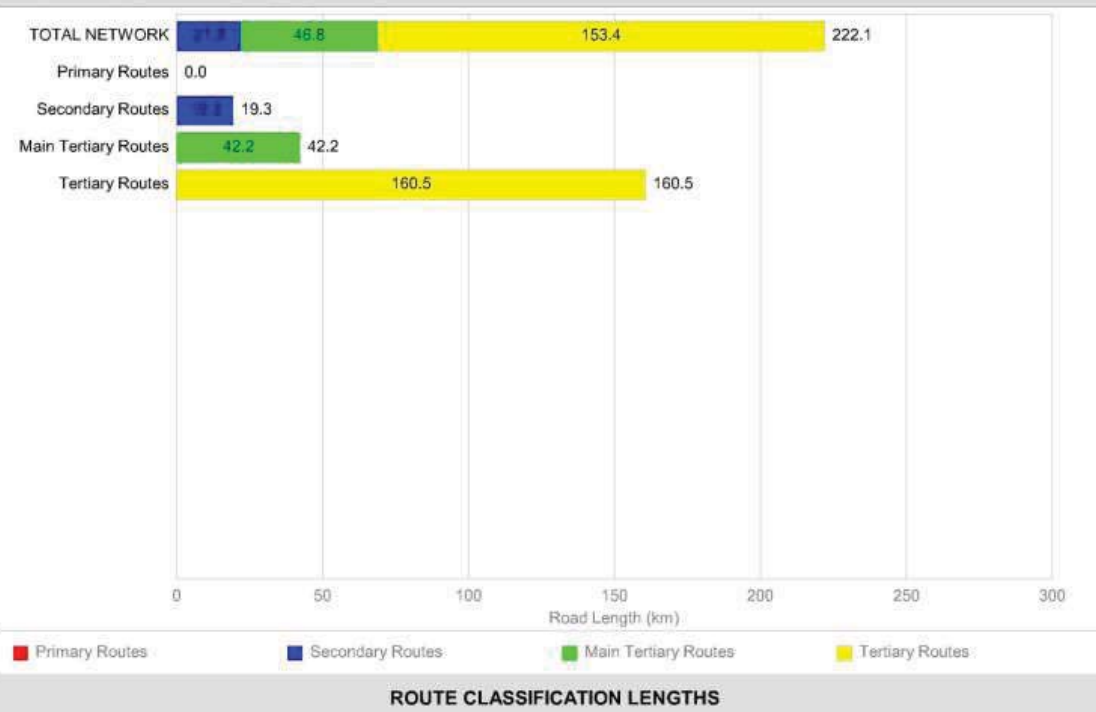


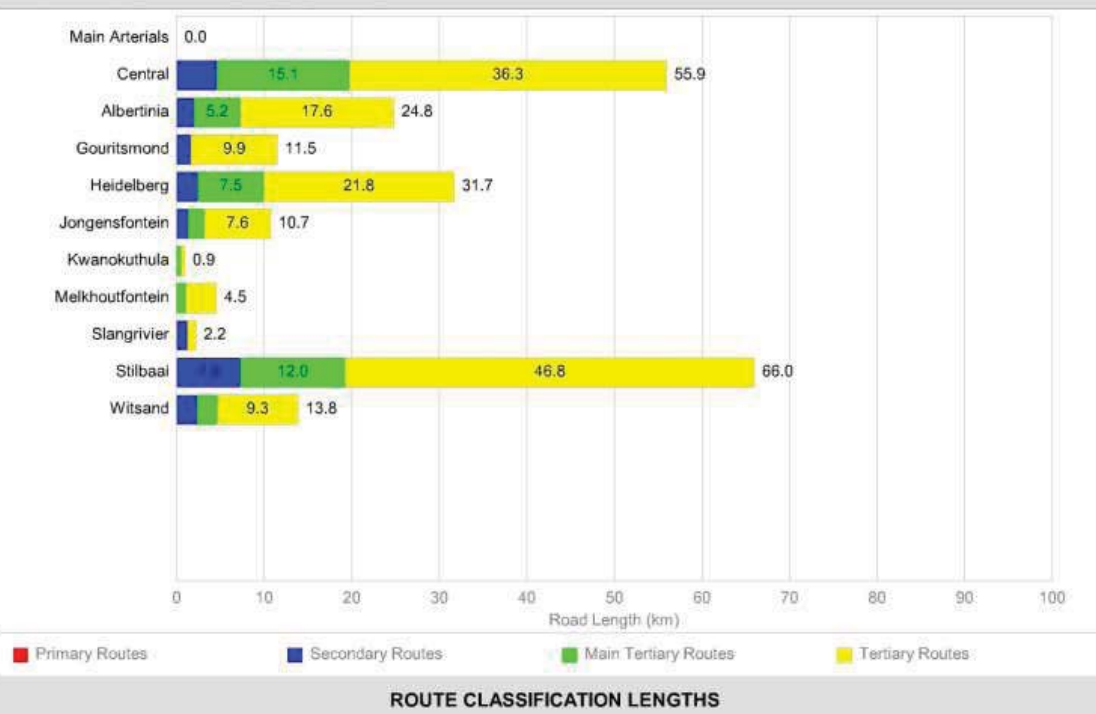
## Infrastructure Overview











## Water Services Delivery, Resources & Infrastructure Planning

For any Local Government to supply sustainable water services to their customers it is important to regard the issues listed below in planning and implementation to ensure continuous service delivery at the required standards. The issues are important aspects within the Water Services Development Planning process for the specific area of authority. The information provided below are required issues that need to be addressed in an IDP as reflected in the IDP Analysis Framework and was extracted from the detail WSDP Module 1 document compiled for the municipality.

<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs WATER</b>	<b>Evidential Criteria / KPIs SANITATION</b>
<p>Is the WSDP</p> <p>a) Adopted: Yes</p> <p>b) has it been reviewed in last year.= No</p>	<p>Does the IDP reflect knowledge, implementation, strategies and target programmes w.r.t.</p> <p>a) Backlogs</p> <p>b) Basic services provision</p> <p>c) Free basic sanitation</p> <p>d) Higher levels of service requirements</p> <p>e) Associated services e.g. Schools and clinics</p>
<p>Do the IDP reflect knowledge, implementation, strategies and target programmes w.r.t.</p> <p>a) Backlogs</p> <p>b) Basic services provision</p> <p>c) Free basic water</p> <p>d) Higher levels of service requirements</p> <p>e) Associated services e.g. Schools and clinics</p> <p>f) Water for growth and development.</p>	<p>Does the WSDP reflect multi - year projects to address the backlog?</p>
<p>Did the IDP integrate other sector programme's water requirements and specially address the impact on water planning.</p> <p>a) Housing</p> <p>b)Agriculture</p> <p>c)Mining</p> <p>d)Tourism</p> <p>e)Public Works programmes</p>	<p>Does the municipality have a sanitation implementation plan put in place?</p>
<p>- Did the IDP provide a proper project list that addresses all the needs as identified in</p>	<p>Does the municipality have the CAPEX Plan which indicates allocation for sanitation for the next three years?</p>
	<p>Does the municipality manage (a) waste water treatment?</p>
	<p>Is there a plan to manage untreated effluent?</p> <p>Has this Municipality determined the need / extent for basic services, (a) free basic and (b) higher level service?</p>
	<p>Is the sanitation service financially viable and is there a budget that is ring fenced?</p>
	<p>Is the licensing/contractual arrangement i.t.o. of (a) WSA, (b) WSP, (c) WWTW working?</p>
	<p>- Is there a plan and budget for Operations and Maintenance for sanitation services and infrastructure?</p>

the future plans and implementation strategies?
- Are there approved budgets in the MTEF allocations for all these projects?
- Is there a plan and budget for Operations and Maintenance for Water services and infrastructure?
- Is the water services programme financially viable w.r.t. Cost recovery, Metering and billing with an associated budget that is ring fenced?
Does the IDP address water resources development w.r.t. demand management, water balance issues and ecological reserve?
Are there specific references to the status of all contracting and licensing issues?
Does the IDP reflect the status of water quality monitoring w.r.t. drinking water quality, water resources quality and WWTW releases?

### ***Wasp Adoption Status***

Status	Modules: All/1/2/3 or 4	Date Submitted
Interim	Module 1,2,3	31 March 2011
Draft		
Adopted		
Annual Review		
New		
Public Viewed		

[Link to Topic 1 page 1 in WSDP Module 1](#)

### ***Knowledge Overview***

### ***Demographics***

Number of People	50952
Total Number of Settlements	16
Total Number of People: Urban	36084
Total Number of People: Rural	14868
Total Number of Settlements: Urban	15
Total Number of Settlements: Rural	1

[Link to Page IV in WSDP Module 1](#)

### ***Associated Services***

Public	Type	No. Of	No. Of consumer units with access to:
--------	------	--------	---------------------------------------



amenities consumer types		consumer units (HH)	None or inadequate Supply		Communal supply	Controlled volume supply	Uncontrolled volume supply
			Water	Sanitation			
Police Stations	Urban	5	0	0	0	0	5
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0
Magistrate offices	Urban	3	0	0	0	0	3
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0
Businesses	Urban	236	0	0	0	0	236
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0
“Dry” Industries	Urban	81	0	0	0	0	81
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0
Office Buildings	Urban	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0
Prisons	Urban	2	0	0	0	0	2
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0
Schools	Urban	15	2	1	0	0	12
	Rural	27	6	8	0	0	15
Hospitals	Urban	1	0	0	0	0	1
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0
Clinics	Urban	7	0	0	0	0	8
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0
“Wet” Industries	Urban	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Rural	0	0	0	0	0	0

[Link to Topic 3 Page 7 in WSDP Module 1](#)

### ***Backlogs: Water Need Description & Status Of Supply***

Water Priority	Water Need Description	Settlements	Population	Households
Definition 1	No Water Services	1	116	39
Definition 2	Inadequate RDP Infrastructure Need: Extension Required	0	0	0
Definition 3	Inadequate RDP Infrastructure Need: Upgrade Required	0	0	0
Definition 4	Inadequate RDP Resource Need	0	0	0
Definition 5	Inadequate RDP Management Need: O&M Required	0	0	0
Definition 6	Inadequate RDP Management Need: Refurbishment Required	0	0	0
Definition 7	Inadequate Housing Interim Solutions	0	0	0
Definition 8	Inadequate Housing Permanent Solutions	10	12480	3147
Adequate:	Standpipe	0	0	0
Adequate:	Yard Connection	0	0	0
Adequate:	House Connection	16	38356	11682
TOTALS		27	50952	14868

[Link to Page IV & Topic 3 Page 5 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Planning Strategies For Inadequate Supplies

Water Priority & Levels of Supply		Future Plan to address the issue		Future Strategy to address the issue	
Water Priority	Water Need Description	In Place?	Sufficient?	In Place?	Sufficient?
Definition 1	No Water Services	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Definition 2	Inadequate RDP Infrastructure Need: Extension Required	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Definition 3	Inadequate RDP Infrastructure Need: Upgrade Required	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Definition 4	Inadequate RDP Resource Need	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Definition 5	Inadequate RDP Management Need: O&M Required	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Definition 6	Inadequate RDP Management Need: Refurbishment Required	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Definition 7	Inadequate Housing Interim Solutions	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Definition 8	Inadequate Housing Permanent Solutions	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

[Link to Page IV & Topic 3 Page 5 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Future Plans To Address Service Delivery & Growth And Development

Water Priority	Water Need Description	Are the future plans indicated in 2.4 sufficient to address service delivery at :		Do future plans cater for the Growth & Development strategy	Are these plans included in Module 3 of the WSDP <i>(Provide reference)</i>
		RDP LEVEL	HIGHER LEVEL		
Definition 1	No Water Services	Yes			
Definition 2	Inadequate RDP Infrastructure Need: Extension required				
Definition 3	Inadequate RDP Infrastructure Need: Upgrade required				
Definition 4	Inadequate RDP Resource Need				
Definition 5	Inadequate RDP Management Need: O&M required				
Definition 6	Inadequate RDP Management Need: Refurbishment required				
Definition 7	Inadequate Housing Interim Solutions				
Definition 8	Inadequate Housing Permanent Solutions	Yes			

[Link to section 1.1 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Free Basic Water

Is there a Free Basic Services Policy in Place? YES

Subsidy Targeting Approach	Current % of HH's requiring FBW	% of HH Targeted: Water	% of HH Targeted: Sanitation
Rising block tariff		100%	100%
Service level targeting		100%	100%
* Credits to Water account		100%	100%
* Credits to Sanitation account			
* Number of units requiring free basic services (Water)		Unknown	
* Number of units requiring free basic services (Sanitation)			Unknown
Number of units with access to free basic services		2997	2997

[Link to Topic 10 Page 33 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Sector Integration

Consultation and Integration with other Sector Plans to incorporate their needs

Sector	Interaction (None, Limited, Partial, Good, Excellent)
Agri-Culture	None
Mining	None
Tourism	None
Public Works programmes	None
Other 1:	
Other 2:	
Other 3:	
Other 4:	

### INTERACTION

To which extend has interaction taken place?

None - 0%

Limited - 10%

Partial - 30%

Good - 75%

Excellent - 90%

[Link to Topic 1 Page 3 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Project Lists

### Total Number Of Projects

Total number of projects	99
Total number of projects: <b>Water</b>	49
Total number of projects: <b>Sanitation</b>	46

## Levels Of Service

Total number of projects aimed at <b>Basic Levels of Services</b>	
Total number of projects aimed at <b>Higher levels of Services</b>	
Total number of projects aimed at <b>System Improvement</b>	

**Population Benefitting**

	Water	Sanitation
<b>Basic Levels of Services</b>		
<b>Higher levels of Services</b>		
<b>System Improvement</b>		

**Funding Sources (Rm) [2010/2011]**

MIG	8.320271
RBIG	0
ACIP	0
DROUGHT RELIEF	0
MUNICIPAL INTERVENTION	0
DWA	0
<b>Own/Other</b>	<b>0</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>8.320271</b>

**Detail Project Lists [2010/2011]**

Description		Services Type	Programme type	Project Primary Class	Proposed project funding (RM)		
Project number	Name & Description				09/10	10/11	11/12
		W: Water S: Sanitation	Water Services WIB: Internal Bulk WRB: Regional Bulk WT: Treatment WWT: Waste Water Treatment WR: Reticulation SS: Sanitation Service H: Housing O: Other	B - Basic H - Higher S - System Improvement	Total	Total	Total
HQ0708001	Telemetry system - AB	Water O&M Management: Refurbishment	Water Reticulation		0	0	0.2
HQ0708003	Albertinia: Colour remove plant	Water Infrastructure Upgrade	Water Treatment Works		0	0	0.5
HQ0708005	Backup borehole pumps - AB	Water O&M Management: Refurbishment	Water Internal Bulk		0.05	0.55	0.06
HQ0708006	Albertinia: Rehab fountains	Water Infrastructure Upgrade	Water Internal Bulk		0	0.08	0.1

HQ0708008	Upgrading of water network - Oosdorp - HB	Water Infrastructure Upgrade	Water Internal Bulk		0.1	0	0
HQ0708010	Backup borehole pumps - WS	Water O&M Management: Refurbishment	Water Internal Bulk		0.025	0.028	0.031
HQ0708013	Replace low-pressure waterworks - RD	Water Infrastructure Replace	Water Treatment Works		0.3	0.4	0.5
HQ0708014	Backup Water pumps - RD	Water O&M Management: Refurbishment	Water Internal Bulk		0.015	0	0.05
HQ0708016	Water valves for "Berglyn" - RD	Water O&M Management: Refurbishment	Water Reticulation		0.015	0.05	0.05
HQ0708017	Replace water valves strategic places - SB	Water O&M Management: Refurbishment	Water Reticulation		0.05	0.05	0.05
HQ0708025	Air valves - Extension 2 - SR	Water O&M Management: Refurbishment	Water Reticulation		0	0.015	0.015
HQ0708026	Prepaid water meters	Water O&M Management: Refurbishment	Water Reticulation		0.5	0.7	0.52
HQ0708034	Reservoir and surge line to Platbos - Stilbaai East - SB	Water Infrastructure Upgrade	Water Internal Bulk		2.5	0	7.5
HQ0708037	New Reservoir - HB	Water Infrastructure New	Water Internal Bulk		2.266	0	0
HQ0708040	Backup sewerage pump - HB	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Sanitation Bulk		0.06	0.07	0.075
HQ0708045	Colorimeter - RD	Sanitation O&M Management:	Internal Sanitation		0	0	0.02

		Refurbishment					
HQ0708047	Submersible pump - RD	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Internal Sanitation		0.03	0.03	0.035
HQ0708048	Stilbaai: WWTW phase 2 (Kwezi V3 report)	Sanitation Infrastructure Upgrade	Sanitation Bulk		0.5	0	2.0
HQ0708056	Sludge pump - SR / HB / AB	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Sanitation Bulk		0.015	0.016	0
HQ0708059	Replacement of sewerage line - Braak - AB	Sanitation Infrastructure Replace	Sanitation Bulk		0.5	0	0
HQ0708062	Housing - Sewerage provision - HB	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Sanitation Bulk		0.120	0	0.0308
HQ0708063	Moving of Sewerage works - HB	Sanitation Infrastructure Replace	Sanitation Bulk		12.598	0	0
HQ0708067	Upgrading of Sewerage pump stations - SB	Sanitation Infrastructure Upgrade	Sanitation Bulk		0	0	3.0
HQ0708070	Housing - Sewerage provision - SR	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Internal Sanitation		0	3.125	1.773
HQ0708072	Heidelberg: Rehabilitate WWTW [0086/S/05/06]	Sanitation Infrastructure Upgrade	Sanitation Bulk		0	0	0.887
HQ0708073	Albertinia: New Bulk Water Supply [0120/W/05/05]	Water Infrastructure New	Water Internal Bulk		1.063	0	3.186
HQ0708074	Heidelberg: Bucket Eradication: New Sewer Pump Station Phase 2	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Sanitation Bulk		0.406	0	0.353

	[0571/S/07/07]						
HQ0708107	Riversdale: 1237 m x 315 mm R gravity pipe	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Sanitation Bulk		0.5	0	0
HQ0910001	Housing - Water Provision	Water Infrastructure New	Water Reticulation		0.652	0.344	0
HQ0910002	Housing - Water Provision	Water Infrastructure New	Water Reticulation		0	0	1.417
HQ0910003	New Reservoir - RD	Water Infrastructure New	Water Internal Bulk		0	2.716	2.327
HQ0910005	Housing - Sewerage Provision - SB	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Internal Sanitation		0	0	2.080
HQ0910006	Slangrivier: New Oxidation Ponds Ph2 [WC0838/S/10/11]	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Sanitation Bulk		0	0.041	0.674
HQ0910007	Slangrivier: New Bulk Water Pump Station & Rising Main [WC0625/W/08/10]	Water Infrastructure New	Water Internal Bulk		5.075	0.288	0
HQ0910008	Slangrivier: New Oxidation Ponds [WC0839/S/10/11]	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Sanitation Bulk		0.212	0.832	4.164
HQ0910010	Heidelberg East: New Sewer Pump Station & Rising Main [WC0628/S/07/08]	Sanitation Infrastructure Replace	Sanitation Bulk		0.803	0	0.919
HQ1011002	Upgrading of sludge dams	Sanitation Infrastructure Upgrade	Sanitation Bulk		0	1.500	1.500
HQ1011003	Investigate alternative Water	Feasibility Only	Strategic Planning		0	3.0	0



	Sources - HQ						
HQ1011004	Upgrade Bio filter	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Sanitation Bulk		0	0.07	0
HQ1011005	Backup sewerage pump - RD	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Sanitation Bulk		0	0.075	0
HQ1011013	New Waste Water Treatment Works: Mechanical & Electrical Installation [WC0911/S/10/11]	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Sanitation Bulk		4.280	1.641	0
HQ1011014	Sewer Reticulation - Albertinia Ph 10 [1964/S/06/08]	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Internal Sanitation		0.798	0	0.0019
HQ1011015	Housing Sewerage Provision - AB	Sanitation Infrastructure New	Internal Sanitation		0	0.073	0
HQ1011016	Water Provision - AB	Water Infrastructure New	Water Reticulation		0	0.0147	0
HQ1011017	Flow Meter for Sewerage	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Internal Sanitation		0	0	0.035
HQ1011018	Emergency Generator for Sewerage Pump station	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Internal Sanitation		0	0.5	0
HQ1011019	Bio filter for Sewerage Works	Sanitation O&M Management: Refurbishment	Sanitation Bulk		0	0.5	0

[Link to Topic 13 Page 41 – 43 \(optional\) in WSDP Module 1](#)

### Approved Budgets in The Met Allocations

Are there approved budgets in the MTEF allocations for all these projects?

Income Subsidies From:	Housing	Trading Services							Grand Total
		Environmental Protection	Waste Management (solid waste)	Waste water management	Road transport	Water	Electricity	Other Trading Services	
		RM	RM	RM	RM	RM	RM	RM	
National Government									
Provincial Government									
Local Government									
Other									
Grants (including the equitable share) from:									
National Government									
Provincial Government									
Local Government									
Other									
Spent conditional grants									
Metering & Billing Income									
Other Income									
Deficit			-0,141	-3248		-6053	-13740		
<b>Total Income</b>	15625		9721	16536	300	23245	92683		

[Link to Topic 10 Page 30 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Preparation & Maintenance

Is there an Operation & Maintenance Plan in place?

YES

### Water Services Infrastructure:

#### Existing Groundwater Infrastructure

Staff to perform the function	3
Budget to perform the function	3
Sufficient for:	
RDP	
Higher level services:	Yes
the Growth & Development Strategy of the WSA:	Yes



Z - Zero Compliance  
1 - Below minimum requirement  
2 - Minimum basic requirement  
3 - Above minimum requirement  
N/R Not Required

#### Existing Surface water Infrastructure

Staff to perform the function	3
Budget to perform the function	3
Sufficient for:	
RDP	
Higher level services:	Yes
the Growth & Development Strategy of the WSA:	Yes

#### Existing Water Treatment Works Infrastructure

Staff to perform the function	3
Budget to perform the function	3
Sufficient for:	
RDP	
Higher level services:	Yes
the Growth & Development Strategy of the WSA:	Yes

#### Existing Pump Station Infrastructure

Staff to perform the function	3
Budget to perform the function	3
Sufficient for:	
RDP	
Higher level services:	Yes
the Growth & Development Strategy of the WSA:	Yes

#### Existing Bulk Pipeline Infrastructure

Staff to perform the function	3
Budget to perform the function	3
Sufficient for:	
RDP	
Higher level services:	Yes
the Growth & Development Strategy of the WSA:	Yes

#### Existing Tower & Reservoir Infrastructure

Staff to perform the function	3
-------------------------------	---

Budget to perform the function	3
Sufficient for:	
RDP	
Higher level services:	Yes
the Growth & Development Strategy of the WSA:	Yes

[Link to Topic 6 Page 14 - 17 in WSDP Module 1](#)

### ***Financial Viability, Income, Metering & Billing***

#### ***Residential: Water***

	URBAN	RURAL
Units Supplied	9890	0
Metered %	98	0
Billed %	98	0
Not Metered	2	0
Income Received %	92	0
Non Payment %	9	0

[Link to Topic 10 Page 34 in WSDP Module 1](#)

#### ***Industrial: Water***

	URBAN	RURAL
Units Supplied	7	0
Metered %	100	0
Billed %	100	0
Not Metered	0	0
Income Received %	91	0
Non Payment %	9	0

[Link to Topic 10 Page 34 in WSDP Module 1](#)

#### ***Commercial: Sanitation***

	URBAN	RURAL
Units Supplied	509	0
Metered %		0
Billed %	98	0
Not Metered	N/A	0
Income Received %	90.2	0
Non Payment %	9.8	0

[Link to Topic 10 Page 35 in WSDP Module 1](#)

#### ***Industrial: Sanitation***

	URBAN	RURAL
Units Supplied	7	0
Metered %		0

Billed %	100	0
Not Metered	N/A	0
Income Received %	90.2	0
Non Payment %	9.8	0

[Link to Topic 10 Page 35 in WSDP Module 1](#)

### ***Water Resource Development***

#### ***Water Resources Development W.R.T. Demand Management, Water Balance Issues And Ecological Reserve?***

Is there Water conservation and demand management strategy in place?	Yes
Is there Budget to perform the function	Yes
Sufficient Personnel perform the function	Yes
Adequate for Higher Level Services	Yes
Does the municipality have a strategy in place to meet 2014 targets?	Yes

### ***Water Resource Management***

#### **Conjunctive use of surface – and groundwater (Number of settlements)**

Ground Water	8
Surface Water	8
Conjunctive Use	0

[Link to Topic 8 Page 22 in WSDP Module 1](#)

### ***Water Balance & Losses***

#### **Water Losses (%)**

Raw Water Bulk Loss	
Treated Water Loss :Bulk	
Treated Water Loss :Internal	

[Link to Topic 8 Page 24 in WSDP Module 1](#)

#### **Water Balance (Volume Units in Mℓ/d)**

Bulk	
Usage	
Discharged	
Balance value	

[Link to Topic 8 Page 24 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Contracting & Licensing

### References to the status of all contracting and licensing issues

<b>FUNCTIONS</b>	<b>% in place</b>
GENERAL FUNCTIONS	80%
BULK & RETAIL FUNCTIONS	60%
WATER SERVICES PROVIDERS	80%

[Link to Topic 11 Page 37 – 38 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Contracting Issues

GENERAL FUNCTIONS	Policy in Place	Budget to perform the function	Personnel to perform the function	Gazetted	Council approved	Adequate for Basic Services
<b>Policy development</b>						
Indigent Policy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Free basic water policy (including equitable share)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Free basic sanitation policy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Procurement policy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Credit control & debt collection policy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Regulation and tariffs</b>						
Water Services bylaws with conditions as required by the Water Services Act	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mechanisms to ensure compliance with bylaws	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Tariff structure	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Tariffs promulgated	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

<b>Water Services Providers</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Contract type</b>	<b>% Consumers served by the WSP</b>
Retail water	Overberg Water Board	Unknown	Unknown
Sanitation	Hessequa Municipality	Not Applicable	100%

[Link to Topic 11 Page 37 – 38 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Licensing Issues

<b>CURRENT Water sources</b>	<b>Number of sources</b>	<b>Current abstraction (Mm³/A)</b>	<b>Licensed abstraction (Mm³/A)</b>	<b>Community water supply</b>	
				<b>Rural</b>	<b>Urban</b>
Groundwater	18	0.699	2.795	Unknown	Unknown

Surface Water	2	1.501	1.578	Unknown	Unknown
External Sources (Bulk purchase)	1	0.798	0.798	Unknown	Unknown
Water returned to source	0	0	0	0	0

FUTURE Water sources	Number of sources	Current abstraction (Mm <sup>3</sup> /A)	Licensed abstraction (Mm <sup>3</sup> /A)	Community water supply	
				Rural	Urban
Groundwater					
Surface Water					
External Sources (Bulk purchase)					
Water returned to source					

[Link to Topic 9 Page 26 in WSDP Module 1](#)

### ***Quality & Monitoring***

#### ***Monitoring***

% Compliance to drinking water acceptable limits 98%

% Compliance to effluent release acceptable limits Unknown

#### ***Water Quality***

Is there a Water Quality Plan in Place? Yes



WATER QUALITY	% or Number of / Yes No	Policy in Place	Budget to perform the function	Personnel to perform the function	Gazetted	Council approved	Adequate for Basic Services
Reporting on quality of water taken from source: urban & rural	100%	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Quality of water returned to the resource: urban	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Quality of water returned to the resource: rural	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Is there a Pollution contingency measures plan in place?	100%	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Quality of water taken from source: urban - % monitored	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Quality of water taken from source: rural - % monitored	0%	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Quality of water returned to the source: urban - %	100%	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Quality of water returned to the source: rural - %	0%	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Are these results available in electronic format? (Yes/no)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
% Time (days) within SABS 241 standards per year	98%	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

[Link to Topic 9 Page 27 in WSDP Module 1](#)

## Waste Management

### INTRODUCTION

The waste management services in the Hessequa Municipality were investigated and assessed with consideration to waste generation, summary of collection volumes, existing collection systems, equipment, personnel and landfill status. Based on these findings a status quo for is done.

The various settlements in the study area can be divided into the following categories:

**Table 1 - Settlement Categories**

<b>Settlement Type</b>	<b>Short Description</b>
Urban	Formal TLC's
Dense Settlements	Dense, un proclaimed settlements. Formal and informal.
Villages	Less dense, informal un proclaimed settlements.
Scattered Settlements	Low-density, scattered informal settlements.
Farmland	Farmland and privately held land.

These settlements are described in more detail below:

### URBAN SETTLEMENTS

This category includes formal residential areas where township establishment has taken place and informal settlements, which are contiguous with these areas. Here the term “informal” implies relatively recent settlement: People who have settled on land, which they do not own, in order to be closer to urban economies. The term “contiguous” could be taken to mean that the edge of informal area is not further than 5 km from the edge of established townships.

#### 1.1 Settlement density

A density criterion could be applied here to deal with smallholdings (with no squatters) and to help define a cut-off for those situations where there is a peri-urban fringe, which expands continuously outwards from an urban core. This latter situation is often associated with towns adjacent to former homeland areas. In this case land ownership has not been a constraint for people in settling close to urban cores. A typical density limit would be of the order of 5 dwellings per hectare.

#### 1.2 Settlement size

Urban settlements will generally be relatively large (greater than 5 000 people). However, there are some small towns, which are below this limit. If a situation is found where an urban area accommodates less than 2 500 people, then this should be categorised as a village.

#### 1.3 Institutions

Within the urban category there will generally be an established local council, which has been delegated executive authority to provide services. The offices of this council will typically be within the settlement.

#### 1.4 Types

The urban category would include all the census categories called “urban”. With regard to the “semi-urban” census category the following guidelines are proposed: “Semi-urban formal” should be treated as urban, with the size qualification mentioned above.

“Semi-urban informal” is likely to be the hardest to judge, as many areas in this census category may be away from urban cores and thus would fit more appropriately into the dense settlement category or, if they are smaller than 5 000 people, even into the villages

category.

“Semi-urban hostels and institutions” would typically be regarded as urban. “Rural formal and semi-formal” are unusually handled in the census as they refer to formal areas and are even given the name “towns”. If these rural formal and informal settlements are larger than 5 000 people, they belong with the urban category. If they are smaller than 2 500 people, they belong with villages. If they are of in-between size it becomes a judicial call.

## **2.DENSE SETTLEMENTS**

Typically the term “dense settlements” has been used for large settlements associated with people who were forcibly removed under the apartheid government. A substantial distance (generally greater than 50 km) separates these settlements from urban areas. They are typically located in former homeland areas and have not had townships proclaimed. They have little of their own urban economic activity and typically do not have central business districts.

### **2.1Settlement density**

When is a settlement a single settlement and when is it a group of individual settlements?

It is proposed here that if the density of settlement in an area is greater than 0.5 dwellings per hectare (dwellings an average of 150 m apart) it should be considered a single settlement. However, the nature of dense settlements is that they seldom have densities this low and will almost always have densities of greater than 5 dwellings per hectare and often have densities of greater than 15 dwellings per hectare.

### **2.2Settlement size**

The dense settlement category is reserved for settlements of greater than 5 000 people.

### **2.3Institutions**

Dense settlements often do not have local councils with executive responsibility for providing services. Although some may be in this situation, the council will seldom have an office within the settlement. From a service provider point of view, dense settlements typically require more formal service provision arrangements since community-based management is not well suited to settlements of this size. Their size generally warrants some formally employed service provider staff being based in the settlement.

### **2.4Types**

The dense settlement category would include some of the following:

1. “Semi-urban informal” (see discussion under urban above).
2. “Rural tribal villages and informal”. If these settlements are larger than 5 000 people they should be included under dense settlements.

## **3.VILLAGES**

This category is primarily used for traditional settlements in former homeland areas. However, small towns of less than 500 people and small informal settlements are also included. (The separation between “traditional” and “informal” settlement relates primarily to the history of the settlement, but also to the nature of the dwellings).

### **3.1Settlement density**

The density limit for a single settlement is similar to those for dense settlements. But villages will often have relatively low densities, in the range of 0.5 to 5 dwellings per hectare. However, higher densities do not preclude a settlement from being categorized as a “village”.

### 3.2 Settlement size

The term “village” is reserved for settlements of between 500 and 5 000 people.

### 3.3 Institutions

Villages typically do not have local councils with executive responsibility for service provision, although this is not necessarily always the case. Regardless of the local authority’s situation, service provision is frequently best performed in such settlements through informal, community-based arrangements. The main reasons for this are the distance from formal service provider offices, and the low viability of having a formally employed person based in the village.

### 3.4 Types

This category would include some of the following: 1. “Urban” settlements which are smaller than 2 500 people.

2. “Semi-urban formal” if it is between 500 and 2 500 people in the settlement.

3. “Semi-urban informal” if they are between 500 and 5 000 people in size.

4. “Rural formal and semi-formal”. As mentioned under “dense settlements”, if these rural formal and informal settlements are larger than 5 000 people they belong with the “urban” category. If they are smaller than 2 500 people they belong with “villages”. If they are of in-between size it becomes a judgement call.

5. “Rural tribal villages and informal”, if these settlements are 500 to 5 000 people in size.

## 4. SCATTERED SETTLEMENTS

These terms is reserved for all settlements, which are less than 500 people in size, excluding commercial farms.

### 4.1 Settlement institutions

In scattered settlements the situation with service provider arrangements is similar to that with villages. However, the establishment of even community-based arrangements becomes difficult.

## 5. FARMLAND

This is a sub-category of “scattered” to provide for people living on commercial farms or associated with other commercial activity. Settlement sizes are lower than 500 people are and/or densities are lower than 0.5 dwellings per hectare. This category includes a mix of landowners and tenants, with the assumption that tenants are employed on the farm or by some other commercial entity.

### 5.1 Institutions

There is a specific institutional arrangement associated with this category, in that the owner of the commercial enterprise is responsible for service provision.

(This annexure is based on the settlement type definitions of the District Services Model Manual, Version 1.1. The District Services Model is one of a number of infrastructures planning models that has been developed for the Development Bank of Southern Africa).

Solid Waste Disposal Services can be structured into three departments. The Status Quo investigation of the division Solid Waste Disposal Services considered each of these aspects of service delivery by the various Local Municipalities as listed in Table 3 below:

**Table 3 - Aspects of Solid Waste Disposal Services**

SERVICE CATEGORY	SERVICE ASPECTS CONSIDERED
------------------	----------------------------

Refuse collection and removal	Waste generation, collection system, collection equipment, personnel, medical and hazardous waste, mining industry, obvious needs.
Street Cleansing	Regularity of service, equipment, personnel, obvious needs
Dumping Site, Transfer Stations and Bulk Containers	Waste generation, collection and transportation, personnel, equipment, landfill operation, garden refuse sites, obvious needs

## EDEN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

The Eden District Municipality (EDM) is situated in the east of the Western Cape, bordering the Eastern Cape on the eastern side and the Indian Ocean on the southern side. EDM comprises the Local Municipalities of Bitou, George, Hessequa, Kannaland, Knysna, Mossel Bay and Oudtshoorn. The Municipal Area is mainly characterised by the scenic garden route with its coastal villages and a considerable extent of high intensity agricultural land uses and forestry. The EDM has an estimated population of approximately 455 000 people<sup>2</sup>.

The District Municipality at the moment performs specific functions with relation to waste management. Powers and functions are set out in various legislations that should be assigned to the Local Municipalities with regards to cleansing or refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste disposal.

The following legislation is specifically applicable:

### Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996

Section 155 and 156 of the **Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996** (Act No. 106 of 1996) sets out certain responsibilities and functions to be performed by the Local Municipalities. Section 156 (1):

*"A municipality has executive authority in respect of, and has the right to administer (a) the local government matter listed in Part B of Schedule 4 and Part B of Schedule 5; and (b) Any other matter assigned to it by national or provincial legislation.*

For the purpose of this study Part B of Schedule 5 amongst other things includes: • Cleansing

- Public Places
- Refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste disposal.

<sup>2</sup> Population figures are based on information provided in the EDM draft revised IDP 2005/2006.

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc22

## HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY STATUS QUO

### Local Government: Municipal Structures Act 1998

Section 83 (1) of the Local Government Municipal Structures Act 1998 (Act No. 117 of 1998) assigns to the District Municipality the following responsibilities:

*"A District Municipality must seek to achieve the integrated, sustainable and equitable social and*

*economic development of its area as a whole by*

- b) promoting bulk infrastructure development and services for the district as a whole;*
- c) building the capacity of local municipalities in its area to perform their functions and exercise their powers where such capacity is lacking; and*
- d) Promoting the equitable distribution of resources between the local municipalities in its area to ensure appropriate levels of municipal services within the area.”*

Section 84(1), amongst other things, states that:

*“A district municipality has the following functions and powers:*

- (e) Solid waste disposal sites serving the area of the district municipality as a whole;*

Section 85 states that the MEC for Local Governments may adjust the division of functions between a district and local municipality.

### **Defined Roles**

According to Section 156(1) of the Constitution and Section 84 (1&2) of the Municipal Structures Act, cleansing has not been clearly defined. The Constitution however, distinguishes between the acts of refuse removal and cleansing. Cleansing is therefore generally accepted to include street sweeping, litter picking and the general cleaning of public areas.

According to Section 156(1) of the Constitution and Section 84 (1&2) of the Municipal Structures Act, refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste disposal function is a shared municipal function. Refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste disposal can be defined as: *the removal of any household or other waste and the disposal of such waste in an area, space or facility established for such a purpose, and includes the provision, maintenance and control of any infrastructure or facility to ensure clean and healthy environment for the inhabitants of the municipality.*

The responsibility of the District Municipality regarding the above relates to: • The determination of a waste disposal strategy for the district as a whole; • The regulation of the waste disposal strategy for the district as a whole; and

- The establishment, operation and control of waste disposal sites, bulk waste transfer facilities and waste disposal facilities for more than one Local Municipality in the district.

The responsibility of the Local Municipality regarding the above relates to: • The determination of a waste disposal strategy for the local municipality only; • The regulation of the waste disposal strategy for the local municipality only;

- The collection and removal of waste and transportation to a local waste disposal site, bulk transfer facility and district waste disposal site; and
- The establishment, operation and control of waste disposal sites, bulk waste transfer facilities and waste disposal facilities for the local municipality only.

**The responsibility of cleansing, refuse removal and local waste disposal site management is therefore the responsibility of the various local municipalities unless specifically stated otherwise.**

Each Local Municipality is responsible for waste management and the various disposal sites within their own boundaries. The boundaries of the different municipal areas are clearly shown on the Locality Plan in Section 2.3. The different disposal facilities in the municipal area are as

set out in Table 4 below:

**Table 4 - Waste disposal facilities in the local municipal areas**

**Local Municipality**

**Hessequa Local Municipality**

**Waste Disposal Facilities**

1. Gouritsmond Landfill Site
2. Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site
3. Riversdale Landfill Site

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc24

**HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY STATUS QUO**

4. Slangrivier Landfill Site
5. Heidelberg Landfill Site
6. Witsand Landfill Site

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc25

**HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY STATUS QUO**

**HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY  
SERVICE AREA**

The Hessequa Local Municipality is situated in the southern part of the Eden District Municipal Area, bordering the Indian Ocean on the southern side, the Gourits River on the eastern side and the Breede River on the western side. The Hessequa Municipal Area is approximately 95 731.1 km<sup>2</sup> in extent and consist mainly of rural areas, coastal villages like Stilbaai and Witsand, with a large influx during peak season, and the larger towns of Riversdale and Heidelberg. One national road in the form of the N2 traverses the Municipality.

Hessequa Local Municipality has an estimated population of 44 117 for 20053. The composition of the population is approximately 4.04% African, 70.14% Coloured, 25.72% White, 0.09% Indian and Others.

The Municipal Service Areas is set out as follows: **URBAN:** Albertinia, Heidelberg and Riversdale.

**VILLAGES:** Melkhoutfontein, Gouritsmond, Jongensfontein, Slangrivier, Stilbaai and Witsand. The Hessequa Municipal Area is shown on the following Map.

3 Population figures based on information as set out in the Revised IDP 2004/2005 for the Hessequa Municipality

**WASTE GENERATION RATES**

Accurate records of waste collected and disposed of are not kept at any of the disposal sites. The waste generation quantities have been calculated using population figures and generation coefficients. The temporary visitors at Gouritsmond, Jongensfontein, Stilbaai and Witsand during the holiday season have a large influence on the waste generated and an estimate for the waste they generate was also determined. The generated waste based on population (permanent and temporary) is given below in Table 5.

**PERMANENT POPULATION**

Town	Estimated Total Population	Total Estimated	Total Estimated Waste Generation/p/p/d
------	-------------------------------	--------------------	-------------------------------------------



	(2005)	Waste Generation in T/day Business, Domestic	Waste Generation(kg/p/day) (T/year)	
Albertinia	4 688	3.5	1 283	0.75
Gouritsmond	459	0.3	126	0.75
Jongensfontein	284	0.2	78	0.75
Heidelberg	6758	8.1	2 960	1.2
Riversdale	12012	14.4	5 261	1.2
Slangrivier	2347	1.8	642	0.75
Stilbaai	3011	2.3	824	0.75
Witsand	198	0.1	54	0.75
Rural Areas	14357	7.2	2620	0.5
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>44114</b>	<b>37.9</b>	<b>13 848</b>	

## TEMPORARY POPULATION

Town	Estimated Total Population (2005)	Total Estimated Waste Generation in T/day Business, Domestic	Total Estimated Waste Generation(kg/p/day)* (T/year)	Total Estimated Waste Generation/p/p/d
Gouritsmond	4 500	6.8	405	1.5
Jongensfontein	4 000	6	360	1.5
Stilbaai	45 000	67.5	4 050	1.5
Witsand	4 500	6.8	405	1.5
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>58 000</b>	<b>87.1</b>	<b>5 220</b>	
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>102 114</b>	<b>125</b>	<b>19 068</b>	

## SERVICE DELIVERY

Hessequa Municipality provides a weekly door-to-door waste removal service to all residents within the specified area (Refer Section 4.4.1). The Municipality utilise a refuse bag system. Red bags are used for the disposal of garden refuse and black bags are used for the disposal of domestic waste. Residents are not limited to the amount of bags utilised. However, residents should provide their own bags and can purchase it from the Municipality. Red and Black bags are removed on the same collection day.

In **Gouritsmond** households and businesses receive a waste removal service once a week

(Mondays) during off-peak season and twice a week during peak season. The waste removal services in Gouritsmond are outsourced to CCM Transport. The Hessequa Municipality has a three year contract with CCM Transport. CCM Transport utilise their own equipment and personnel for the waste removal services and disposes the waste at the PetroSA Landfill Site in Mossel Bay.

Waste collected at **Stilbaai, Jongensfontein and Melkhoutfontein** is disposed of at the Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site. Waste collection in **Melkhoutfontein** is outsourced.

5 Calculations based on the 2004/2005 Revised IDP.

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc29

## HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY STATUS QUO

Waste generated in **Albertinia** is collected with a REL compactor and disposed at the Riversdale Landfill Site. Households receive a waste removal service on Mondays and businesses receive a waste removal service on Wednesdays.

In **Riversdale** residential waste is collected on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Business waste is collected on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays. All waste is disposed of at the Riversdale Landfill Site.

Heidelberg collects household waste at **Witsand** as well, which is disposed of at the Heidelberg Landfill Site.

Vermaaklikheid is a low cost housing development of 36 households which receives no solid waste removal services.

Street cleaning is done on a daily basis within all CBD areas. People are specially appointed to clean the CBD of Albertinia, Heidelberg and Riverdale on Saturdays, Sundays and Holidays. Drivers have first choice whether they want to clean the CBDs on these days. They can use a municipal LDV for the work and receive double payment on holidays.

**Table 7 - Summary of waste collection service in the Hessequa Municipal Area**

Area	Number of domestic service points	Number of commercial service points	Number of stands serviced	Type of service/ Frequency	Receptacles
Black & Red					
Albertinia	1230	840		Weekly Bags Weekly (off peak)	
Black & Red					
Gouritsmond	330	60			
				Bags 2 x per Week (peak)	
Jongensfontein					Black & Red
			2754	1560 Weekly	
& Stilbaai					Bags Black & Red
Heidelberg			1478	630 Weekly	
					Bags 30
209950PW0/03/0629_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc					
domestic service points	commercial service points	stands serviced	not service/ Frequency		

Black & Red

Riversdale24901510Weekly

Bags

Black & Red

Slangrivier55510Weekly

Bags

Black & Red

Witsand45430Weekly

Bags

#### **4.3.5 ILLEGAL DUMPING**

Illegal dumping does occur, but is not a major concern and the Municipality does manage to control it.

#### **4.3.6 GARDEN REFUSE AND BUILDER'S RUBBLE**

As stated previously garden refuse is only collected together with domestic waste by the Municipality if the red bags are utilised for disposal.

Bulk garden refuse is collected on request only and should be paid at the municipal counter. The burning of garden refuse on private premises is a problem.

The Municipality does not render a service for the collection of building rubble. The disposal of building rubble is therefore the responsibility of the owner. The control over the large amount of building activities in the municipal area is therefore a concern.

#### **4.3.7 SEWAGE SLUDGE**

Sewage sludge is only identified as solid waste and addressed in the IWMP if it does not remain on the Wastewater Treatment Works (WWTW) premises. As long as the sludge remains within the premises of the WWTW it is addressed by the WWTW permit in terms of Section 21 of the Water Act.

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc31

#### **HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY STATUS QUO**

Sewage sludge is classified in four types namely A, B, C, and D in a decreasing order of potential to cause odour nuisance and fly-breeding as well as to transmit pathogenic organisms to man and his environment. Type D is of similar hygienic quality as type C but the metal and inorganic content of type D are limited to acceptable low levels.<sup>6</sup> Only Type D Sludge (dry sludge) may be

disposed on a permitted landfill site. Should any Type C Sludge be disposed elsewhere than the WWTW or a permitted landfill site, the repeated use of a specific area for the sewage sludge disposal will only change that area into a disposal site if it exceeds the maximum application rate of 8 dry tonnes/ha/yr.

Hessequa has wastewater treatment works at Albertinia, Riversdale, Stilbaai and Heidelberg respectively. Sludge is dried on the wastewater treatment sites and sold off to surrounding farmers on an ad hoc basis. This action can proceed as long as the amount of sewage sludge disposed is limited to the maximum disposal rate of 8 dry T/ha/yr, as stated above. No sewage sludge is disposed of on the local landfill sites.

#### 4.3.8 WASTE MINIMISATION STRATEGIES

The Hessequa Municipality does not exercise any waste minimisation strategies. A private company, Riversdale Recycling, has a depot in Riversdale and till recently recycled mainly paper, carton and glass. Riversdale Recycling collected recyclable material from businesses in Riversdale, sorted it at their depot and transported it to Southern Cape Waste in George. Southern Cape Recycling received approximately **20 tonnes** of recyclable material per month from the Riverdale area. However, Riversdale Recycling has recently closed down and the responsibility for collecting recyclable material has now become that of the Hessequa Municipality themselves.

Recycling does occur on a very small scale in the smaller villages. This generally takes the form of the re-use of specific items such as plastic bags and tins. Cardboard / Greyboard and other paper are also collected at source making the presence of these articles on the landfill site scarce. There are no records available for the volumes of waste recycled in the area. An analysis of the waste stream was conducted to determine the amount of recyclable waste present in the waste body on the landfill site.

The absence of a weighbridge and the informality of the waste disposal systems in the smaller towns have as result very limited waste volume records. The reliability of this feasibility level analysis of the potential to recycle refuse collected in the area requires reasonable estimates of the quantities of material currently collected for recycling, and quantities of refuse collected by the Municipality from different socio-economic categories.

6 Refer "Permissible Utilisation and Disposal of Sewage Sludge", Edition 1.

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc**32**

#### HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY STATUS QUO

The composition of the waste stream was conducted by inspecting the waste currently disposed of on the landfill sites. The analysis was done by investigating samples taken on the landfill sites and estimating the percentage composition of the various waste elements. Note that the commercial waste stream was not considered separately as most pre consumer waste is already largely reclaimed. All the stated assumptions are believed to err on the conservative side.

The population breakdown obtained during the compilation of the Status Quo was used to determine the size of the various income groups (low, middle and high). It is generally accepted that the higher the income group the larger the percentage of recyclable wastes produced and disposed of. The breakdown of the population in the Municipal area is as follows:

Income Group	Percentage
High and Very High	1.95%
Middle to High	11.66%
Low to Middle	41.07%
Very Low to Low	45.32%

As can be seen from the above table there is a low percentage of higher income people within the Municipality. Since the Municipality also delivers a refuse removal service to a larger percentage of the population the amount of recyclables on the landfill site is expected to be more.

For the composition of the waste stream the sampled waste body was divided into 11 categories that include both recyclable and non-recyclable material. This included plastic bottles, plastic film, paper separated by grade such as newspaper and inserts versus higher quality office paper, glass, organic material and ash. The table below shows the sort categories followed and provides definitions for each. Burning of the waste body is not allowed on the landfill site and therefore the amount of ash is negligible.

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc33

## HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY STATUS QUO

Category Name	Description
<b>Plastic Bottles</b>	All clear and tinted polyethylene terephthalate (PET) plastic bottles typically including water and juice bottles and other food packaging.
<b>Rigid Containers</b>	All plastic containers including dairy, food packaging, polystyrene foam and plastic nursery pots.
<b>Film - Retail Bags</b>	All plastic film retail bags. Expanded polystyrene (EPS) foam packaging and food service

### Packaging Foam

from containers.

Newspapers including glossy inserts coloured paper, office paper,

### News

junk mail and paper cartons.

Chipboard or paperboard boxes such as cereal, food packaging

### Grey board

and shoe boxes.

<b>Magazines</b>	Magazines, catalogues and other bound paper.
<b>Metal Cans</b>	All bi-metal food cans and bi-metal beverage containers including soda, beer and other carbonated drinks containers
<b>Glass</b>	All clear, green and brown glass jars and containers.
<b>Organic Material</b>	Organic food products such as vegetables and food waste.
<b>Ash</b>	Charcoal and wood ash

The Table below indicate the waste composition as a percentage of the sample. It should however be noted that the organic percentage is probably lower than expected due to burning that does occur from time to time. The quantity of waste on the landfill site will also limit the

feasibility of any recycling activities. The waste on the landfill site is not covered regularly and the uncovered waste body present represents a relatively long disposal period. Recycling potential is therefore very limited due to contamination of the material.

## Waste Stream Composition

Hessequa LM (Sample Site: Riversdale)	Percentage
<i>Plastic Bottles</i>	12
<i>Rigid Containers</i>	8
<i>Film - Retail Bags</i>	9
<i>Packaging Foam and similar</i>	4
<i>Newsprint</i>	3
<i>Cardboard</i>	2
<i>Magazines</i>	5
<i>Metal Cans</i>	13
<i>Glass</i>	10
<i>Organic Material and wet waste (mainly foodstuffs)</i>	32
<i>Ash</i>	2
<i>Total</i>	100

**Figure 1 - Riversdale Recycling depot**

The Municipality does not have any By-Laws to address waste minimisation and recycling.

### 4.3.9 PERSONNEL

The Hessequa Municipality has sufficient personnel to provide the existing waste management services. However, additional waste management resources are required during peak season and the closure of Riversdale Recycling has a major impact on the effectiveness of the existing cleansing program as the Municipality now has to collect recyclables at shops and businesses, putting stress on the available resources, especially on Mondays and Wednesdays when collections are done in Albertinia as well..

Personnel responsible for management, refuse removal, street cleansing and land filling in the Hessequa Municipal Area is listed in Table 8 below:

**Table 8 - Summary of personnel employed within the Hessequa Municipality**

#### ALBERTINIA

Description	Number		Employment Status	Where Utilised
	Existing Posts	Vacant Posts		
Foreman	1	0	Permanent	Albertinia: Technical Services: Water, Sewerage and Cleansing
Supervisor and Tractor Driver	1	0	Permanent	Albertinia: Cleansing
General Workers	4	1	Permanent	Albertinia: Cleansing
General Workers	1	0	Permanent	Albertinia: Landfill
Superintendent	1	0	Permanent	Gouritsmond: Community Services

#### HEIDELBERG

Description	Number		Employment Status	Where Utilised
	Existing Posts	Vacant Posts		

	Existing Posts	Vacant Posts		
Foreman	1	0	Permanent	Heidelberg: Technical Services:
Driver (Refuse Truck)	1	0	Permanent	Water, Sewerage and Cleansing
General Workers	5	0	Permanent	Heidelberg: Refuse Removal
Driver (Tractor)	1	0	Permanent	Heidelberg: Refuse Removal
General Workers	3	0	Permanent	Heidelberg: Refuse Removal
Superintendent	1	0	Permanent	Witsand: Community Services
Supervisor	1	0	Permanent	Witsand: Community Services
Driver (Tractor)	1	0	Permanent	Witsand: Community Services
General Workers	3	1	Permanent	Witsand: Community Services
Supervisor	1	0	Permanent	Slangrivier: Community services
General Foreman	1	0	Permanent	Slangrivier: Community services
Driver (Tractor)	2	0	Permanent	Slangrivier: Community services
General Workers	4	0	Permanent	Slangrivier: Community services

Description	Number		Employment Status	Where Utilised	
	Existing Posts	Vacant Posts			
Foreman	0	1	Permanent	Riversdale: Technical Services:	Cleansing Services
Driver (REL compactor)	0	1	Permanent	Riversdale: Refuse Removal	

Description	Number		Employment Status	Where Utilised	
	Existing Posts	Vacant Posts			
General Workers	4	0	Permanent	Riversdale: Refuse Removal	
Driver (Tractor)	1	0	Permanent	Riversdale: Refuse Removal	
General Workers	3	0	Permanent	Riversdale: Refuse Removal	
Senior Worker	1	0	Permanent	Riversdale: Cleansing	
General Workers	3	0	Permanent	Riversdale: Cleansing	
Operators	2	1	Permanent	Riversdale: Landfill	
General Workers	1	0	Permanent	Riversdale: Landfill	
Driver	1	0	Permanent	Riversdale: Garden Removal	Refuse
General Foreman	1	1	Permanent	Riversdale: Garden Removal	Refuse

Description	Number		Employment Status	Where Utilised	
	Existing Posts	Vacant Posts			
Superintendent	1	0	Permanent	Jongensfontein: Community Services	
Driver (Tractor)	1	0	Permanent	Jongensfontein: Community Services	
General Workers	4	0	Permanent	Jongensfontein: Community Services	
Supervisor	1	0	Permanent	Stilbaai: Technical Services:	Cleansing



Driver	1	0	Permanent	Stilbaai: Refuse Removal
General Workers	6	1	Permanent	Stilbaai: Refuse Removal

#### 4.3.10 EQUIPMENT

Melkhoutfontein waste is collected with a tractor and trailer by a private contractor. Two REL 12 m<sup>3</sup> compactors are utilised for collection purposes within the Jongensfontein and Stilbaai area. Trucks and trailers are used during peak season and a tractor and trailer is used as and when required. Waste is collected with a tractor and trailer in the Slangrivier area.

As stated in Section 4.3.10 the Municipality is experiencing difficulty to continue effective service delivery due to the closure of Riversdale Recycling. The Municipality now has to collect recyclables themselves. This leads to an increase in travelling distances and on Mondays and Wednesday when the compactor has to go to Albertinia, the tractor and trailer cannot keep up.

The Municipality has its own workshop where general repair work and services is done. Equipment that needs any major work is sent to George.

Most of the tractors and trailers is very old and requires replacement whereas the REL compactors are in quite fair conditions.

The existing equipment utilised in Hessequa Municipal Area is listed in Table 9 below:

**Table 9 - Summary of waste management equipment for Hessequa Municipality**

#### HEIDELBERG

Type	Model	Application	VEHICLE CONDITION**		
			Poor	Fair	Good
CAT D4 Bulldozer		Landfill	X		

CEG 2631, Nissan	2000	Refuse Removal	X		
12 m <sup>3</sup> REL Compactor		(Household Waste)			
CEG 6547, Ford	1985	Refuse Removal	X		
Tractor		(Household Waste)			
CEG 1248, Welfit	1970	Refuse Removal	X		
Oddy Trailer		(Garden Refuse)			
CEG 1957, Welfit	1970	Refuse Removal	X		
Oddy Trailer		(Garden Refuse)			

#### ALBERTINIA

Type	Model	Application	VEHICLE CONDITION**		
			Poor	Fair	Good
CES 1468, Tip Trailer	1971	Refuse Removal	X		
		(Garden Refuse)			
CES 1743, Tip Trailer	1996	Refuse Removal	X		
		(Garden Refuse)			
CEG 4974 "Busaf Toebak"	1994	Refuse Removal	X		
		(Household Waste)			

STILBAAI					
Type	Model	Application	VEHICLE CONDITION**		

			PoorFair	Good
CAT D6D Bulldozer	1980 Landfill		X	

CCC 8953, Mazda	1994 Refuse Removal	X		
B1800 LDV	(Street Cleansing)			

CCC 1787, Nissan	1996 Refuse Removal	X		
12 m³ REL	(Household Waste)			
Compactor				

CCC 4457, Ford	1979 Refuse Removal	X		
Tipper	(Household Waste)			

CCC 1298, Trailer	1964 Refuse Removal	X		
	(Garden Refuse)			

**Figure 2 - Stilbaai Collection Equipment**

## RIVERSDALE

Type	Model	Application	VEHICLE CONDITION**	
			PoorFair	Good
CAT D5D Bulldozer		Landfill	X	

CCC 4321, Isuzu	1998 Refuse Removal	X		
FTR 12 m³ REL	(Household Waste)			
Compactor				

CCC 12686, Fiat	1995 Refuse Removal	X		
Tractor	(Household Waste)			

CCC 12731, Trailer	1995 Refuse Removal	X		
	(Household Waste)			

Type	Model	Application	VEHICLE CONDITION**	
			PoorFair	Good
CES 2176, Landini	2000 Refuse Removal	X		
Tractor	(Street and Garden Refuse)			
CES 1569, Trailer	1998 Refuse Removal	X		
	(Street and Garden Refuse)			

## SLANGRIVIER

Type	Model	Application	VEHICLE CONDITION**	
			PoorFair	Good

CEG 523, International	1988 Refuse Removal	X		
Tractor 750	(Household Waste)			

CEG 2602, Trailer	1985 Refuse Removal	X		
	(Household Waste)			

CCC 12686, Fiat	1995 Refuse Removal	X		
Tractor	(Household			

Waste)

CCC 12731, Trailer1995Refuse RemovalX  
(Household  
Waste)

\*\* Note that the indicated **VEHICLE CONDITION** is a subjective assessment of the vehicles and no mechanical assessment of the vehicles had been conducted for this study. Most of the vehicles are currently in a fair condition and other distinction that has been made between fair and good was purely based on the age of the vehicle. Vehicles that

are 14 years and older is likely to have to be replaced in the near future. The Municipality owns all equipment and vehicles and all vehicles are maintained and serviced by the Municipal workshop.

**Figure 3 - Slangrivier Collection Equipment**

The Municipality has no policy according to which the rate of waste management vehicle and equipment replacement is determined.

**4.3.11 HESSEQUA MUNICIPALITY LANDFILL SITES**

The Hessequa Municipality has eight landfill sites currently operating namely Droëkloof General Waste Landfill Site, Droëkloof Garden Refuse Landfill Site, Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site, Steynskloof Landfill Site, Slangrivier General Waste Landfill Site, Slangrivier Garden Refuse

Landfill Site, Gouritsmond Landfill Site and Witsand Landfill Site. The Albertinia and

Jongensfontein Landfill Sites are closed down. No permits for closure were submitted for these two landfill sites.

**Figure 4 - Gouritsmond Landfill Site**

**Figure 5 - Closed Jongensfontein Landfill Site**

A permit for closure of the Albertinia Landfill Site was submitted but not yet approved. Formal site operations have stopped but the public still utilise the site for disposal purposes. Farmers also dispose their waste at the Albertinia Landfill Site during weekends.

**The status of the Albertinia Landfill is summarised below:**

<b>Position of site:</b>	The site is situated on the north western edge of the town of Albertinia.
<b>Permit:</b>	No
<b>Year issued:</b>	N/A
<b>Classification of site:</b>	GCB-
<b>Type of Operation (end - tip, trench, cell):</b>	End - tip
<b>Estimated size of site:</b>	Approximately 3 ha.
<b>Estimated remaining life of site:</b>	Approximately 1 years
<b>Separation of fresh and contaminated water:</b>	No
<b>Groundwater monitoring:</b>	No groundwater monitoring is done.
<b>Volumes per day, week or month:</b>	Estimated at 3.5 tonnes per day
<b>Is cover material available?</b>	No
<b>Is the drainage sufficient?</b>	Yes
<b>Is there access control?</b>	Yes. Only during operating hours.
<b>Is the site fenced?</b>	Yes
<b>Does the site have a sufficient buffer zone?</b>	Yes. There are no houses within 500m of the site.
<b>Type of equipment utilised on site:</b>	None
<b>Operating hours:</b>	Operating during business hours from Mondays to

	Fridays. Gates are open during weekends.
<b>Site facilities, i.e. ablutions, guard house:</b>	Ablution and guard house facilities
<b>Estimating cost for closure:</b>	No estimate regarding closure exists. There is

currently no savings plan in place for the closure

**Saving plan for closure:**

of the site.

## Figure 6 - Albertinia Landfill Site

The **Melkhoutfontein** Landfill Site is not permitted. A permit for further operations on the site was submitted but not yet approved as investigations of the underground water are required. However, the 2005/2006 and 2006/2007 municipal budget does provide for future investigation for the identification of a new landfill site.

Garden refuse and building rubble are disposed of separately from the domestic waste at the Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site. Garden refuse and building rubble are covered and compacted on a daily basis. Domestic waste is disposed of in a trench. Domestic waste is not cover and compacted and is burnt from time to time. Fish refuse is disposed of in trenches at the site and covered immediately after disposal.

**The status of the Melkhoutfontein Landfill is summarised below:**

<b>Position of site:</b>	The site is situated approximately 5km from Stilbaai
<b>Permit:</b>	No
<b>Year issued:</b>	N/A
<b>Classification of site:</b>	GCB <sup>-</sup>
<b>Type of Operation (end - tip, trench, cell):</b>	Trench (domestic waste) and Cell (garden waste)
<b>Estimated size of site:</b>	Approximately 3 ha
<b>Estimated remaining life of site:</b>	The remaining life of the site is estimated at ±8

years

**Separation of fresh and contaminated water:** No

**Groundwater monitoring:** Yes. Monitoring is done at 4 boreholes around the site. Water samples are taken every 6 months.

**Volumes per day, week or month:** Approximately 15 tonnes/day

**Is cover material available?** Limited

**Is the drainage sufficient?** No

**Is there access control?** No

**Is the site fenced?** Yes

**Does the site have a sufficient buffer zone?** Yes. There are no houses within 500m of the site.

**Type of equipment utilised on site:** CAT D6D Bulldozer

**Operating hours:** The site is operated during business hours from Monday to Friday. Gates are open during weekends.

**Site facilities, i.e. ablutions, guard house:** None

**Estimating cost for closure:** No estimate regarding closure exists. There is currently no savings plan in place for the closure

**Saving plan for closure:**

of the site.

## Figure 7 - Area for disposal of domestic waste at the Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site

**Figure 8 - Garden refuse disposal area at the Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site**

**Figure 9 - Fish refuse disposal area at the Melkhoutfontein Landfill site**

The **Steynskloof** Landfill Site in Riversdale is permitted and properly managed. As stated previously, the Riversdale Landfill Site is utilised for the disposal of waste generated by both Albertinia and Riversdale. Waste is covered and compacted on a daily basis. There are no informal reclaimers on site. Riversdale Recycling is the only recyclers allowed access to the site. The site is not fenced. Leachate is properly controlled.

**The status of the Steynskloof Landfill Site is summarised below:**

<b>Position of site:</b>	The site is located on the eastern border of the town of Riversdale.
<b>Permit:</b>	Yes
<b>Year issued:</b>	1995
<b>Classification of site:</b>	GSB <sup>-</sup>
<b>Type of Operation (end - tip, trench, cell):</b>	Cell
<b>Estimated size of site:</b>	Approximately 10 ha
<b>Estimated remaining life of site:</b>	The site has approximately 9 years left
<b>Separation of fresh and contaminated water:</b>	Yes
<b>Groundwater monitoring:</b>	No groundwater monitoring of the ground water takes place.
<b>Volumes per day, week or month:</b>	Approximately 17.9 tonnes per day
<b>Is cover material available?</b>	Yes
<b>Is the drainage sufficient?</b>	Yes
<b>Is there access control?</b>	Yes
<b>Is the site fenced?</b>	Yes
<b>Does the site have a sufficient buffer zone?</b>	Yes. There are no houses within 500m from the site.
<b>Type of equipment utilised on site:</b>	Bulldozer
<b>Operating hours:</b>	The site is operated during business hours from Mondays to Fridays. However, gates are not locked during Saturdays and Sundays.
<b>Site facilities, i.e. ablutions, guard house:</b>	Ablutions and guard house facilities
<b>Estimating cost for closure:</b>	No estimate regarding closure exists. There is currently no savings plan in place
<b>Saving plan for closure:</b>	for the closure of the site.

**Figure 10 - The Steynskloof Landfill Site**

The **Droëkloof** Landfill Site at Heidelberg is permitted. Domestic waste collected at Witsand and Heidelberg is disposed of at the Heidelberg Landfill site. Witsand has a landfill site that is only utilised for the disposal of garden refuse and building rubble. The Heidelberg Landfill Site is utilised for the disposal of household waste, garden refuse and building rubble. Waste is compacted and covered on a daily basis. Domestic waste is disposed of separately from garden refuse and building rubble. Drainage seems to be a problem at the domestic waste disposal area. Garden Refuse and building rubble is well managed.

**The status of the Droëkloof Landfill Site is summarised below:**

<b>Position of site:</b>	The site is located on the western side of the town of Heidelberg.
--------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

<b>Permit:</b>	Yes
<b>Year issued:</b>	1996
<b>Classification of site:</b>	GSB <sup>-</sup>
<b>Type of Operation (end - tip, trench, cell):</b>	Trench (domestic waste) and Cell (garden refuse)
<b>Estimated size of site:</b>	Approximately 3 ha
<b>Estimated remaining life of site:</b>	The site has approximately 5 years left
<b>Separation of fresh and contaminated water:</b>	Yes
<b>Groundwater monitoring:</b>	No groundwater monitoring of the ground water takes place.
<b>Volumes per day, week or month:</b>	Approximately 9 tonnes per day
<b>Is cover material available?</b>	Yes
<b>Is the drainage sufficient?</b>	No
<b>Is there access control?</b>	Yes
<b>Is the site fenced?</b>	Yes
<b>Does the site have a sufficient buffer zone?</b>	Yes. There are no houses within 500m from the site.
<b>Type of equipment utilised on site:</b>	Bulldozer
<b>Operating hours:</b>	The site is operated during business hours from Mondays to Fridays. However, gates are not locked during Saturdays and Sundays.
<b>Site facilities, i.e. ablutions, guard house:</b>	Ablutions and guard house facilities
<b>Estimating cost for closure:</b>	No estimate regarding closure exists.

There is currently no savings plan in place

**Saving plan for closure:**

for the closure of the site.

#### **Figure 11 - Garden refuse disposal area at Droëkloof Landfill Site**

##### **Slangrivier**

The **Slangrivier** Landfill Site is permitted. The landfill is used for the disposal of household waste, garden refuse and building rubble. The site serves the area of Slangrivier only. Waste is disposed of in trenches and no equipment is used for site operations. Waste is not covered or compacted but burnt on occasion to increase landfill space. The site is fenced with proper signage.

**The status of the Slangrivier Landfill Site is summarised below:**

<b>Position of site:</b>	The site is located east of the village of Slangrivier.
<b>Permit:</b>	Yes
<b>Year issued:</b>	1996
<b>Classification of site:</b>	GCB <sup>-</sup>
<b>Type of Operation (end - tip, trench, cell):</b>	Trench
<b>Estimated size of site:</b>	Approximately 0.5 ha
<b>Estimated remaining life of site:</b>	The site has approximately 5 years left
<b>Separation of fresh and contaminated water:</b>	No
<b>Groundwater monitoring:</b>	No groundwater monitoring of the ground water takes place.
<b>Volumes per day, week or month:</b>	Approximately 1.8 tonnes per day
<b>Is cover material available?</b>	Yes
<b>Is the drainage sufficient?</b>	No
<b>Is there access control?</b>	No

<b>Is the site fenced?</b>	Yes
<b>Does the site have a sufficient buffer zone?</b>	Yes. There are no houses within 500m from the site.
<b>Type of equipment utilised on site:</b>	None
<b>Operating hours:</b>	The site is operated during business hours from Mondays to Fridays. However, gates are not locked during Saturdays and Sundays.
<b>Site facilities, i.e. ablutions, guard house:</b>	None
<b>Estimating cost for closure:</b>	No estimate regarding closure exists. There is currently no savings plan in place
<b>Saving plan for closure:</b>	for the closure of the site.

#### Figure 14 - Slangrivier Landfill Site

The permit application for **Witsand** Landfill Site is submitted but not yet approved. The site is properly managed and fenced with proper signage. Garden refuse and building rubble is disposed of in trenches.

#### The status of the Witsand Landfill Site is summarised below:

<b>Position of site:</b>	The site is located along the R322 to Heidelberg, 500m north of the R324 and the R322 intersection.
<b>Permit:</b>	No
<b>Year issued:</b>	N/A
<b>Classification of site:</b>	GCB <sup>-</sup>
<b>Type of Operation (end - tip, trench, cell):</b>	Trench
<b>Estimated size of site:</b>	Approximately 1.8 ha
<b>Estimated remaining life of site:</b>	The site has approximately 20 years left
<b>Separation of fresh and contaminated water:</b>	Yes
<b>Groundwater monitoring:</b>	No groundwater monitoring of the ground water takes place.
<b>Volumes per day, week or month:</b>	Approximately 2 tonnes per day
<b>Is cover material available?</b>	Yes
<b>Is the drainage sufficient?</b>	Yes
<b>Is there access control?</b>	Yes
<b>Is the site fenced?</b>	Yes
<b>Does the site have a sufficient buffer zone?</b>	Yes. There are no houses within 500m from the site.
<b>Type of equipment utilised on site:</b>	None
<b>Operating hours:</b>	The site is operated during business hours from Mondays to Fridays. However, gates are not locked during Saturdays and Sundays.
<b>Site facilities, i.e. ablutions, guard house:</b>	None
<b>Estimating cost for closure:</b>	No estimate regarding closure exists.

There is currently no savings plan in place for the closure of the site.

#### 4.3.12 TRANSFER STATIONS

There are no official transfer station facilities within the Hessequa Municipal Area. Albertinia has an enclosed area where waste is kept during breakdowns of the Riversdale REL compactors. Should a breakdown occur, waste is collected with a tractor and trailer and temporary disposed at the enclosed area. When vehicles are then available, waste is collected and disposed at the



Steynskloof Landfill Site.

#### 4.3.13 ABATTOIRS

Riversdale has an abattoir. Solids and rejected carcasses from the abattoir and dead animals from the veterinarians are disposed in trenches at a special municipal site. The trenches are covered with lime and soil on a daily basis by municipal personnel. The abattoir and veterinarians transport their own waste to the disposal site.

As stated previously, fish refuse and abattoir solid waste, generated within the Stilbaai area, is disposed of in trenches at the Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site.

#### Figure 15 - Abattoir disposal area

The disposal of fish and abattoir refuse is a major concern and instances do occur where people dig out and remove the buried material from the premises.

#### 4.3.14 HEALTH CARE RISK WASTE

Riverdale has the following medical generators (Refer Annexure B: Hessequa Municipality Health Care Risk Waste Generators Breakdown):

.....

....

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc 2 x Private Practices (Medical Doctors) 3 x Dentists 2 x Clinics 1 x Provincial Hospital 2 x Old Age Homes 1 x Veterinary Surgeon

Heidelberg has the following Health Care Risk Waste generators (Refer Annexure B: Hessequa Municipality Health Care Risk Waste Generators Breakdown): 2 x Private Practitioners (Medical Doctors) 1 x Old Age Home 1 x Clinic

1 x Veterinary Surgeon 55

Stilbaai has the following Health Care Risk Waste generators (Refer Annexure B: Hessequa Municipality Health Care Risk Waste Generators Breakdown):

....

... 1 x Private Practice (Medical Doctors) 2 x Dentists 2 x Clinics 2 x Old Age Homes

Albertinia has the following Health Care Risk Waste generators (Refer Annexure B: Hessequa Municipality Health Care Risk Waste Generators Breakdown):

1 x Private Practitioner (Medical Doctor)

1 x Clinic

1 x Old Age Home

There is one clinic in Melkhoutfontein and a small clinic in Slangrivier.

All Health Care Risk Waste generated by the above mentioned facilities is collected by either Envirollogic, located in Mossel Bay or Sanumed, located in Cape Town (Refer Annexure B). Plastic containers are used for sharps and carton boxes, lined with red bags, are utilised for the disposal of bio-Health Care Risk Waste. Envirollogic collects approximately **1 501 tonnes** of Health Care Risk Waste from Hessequa per month.

Although, according to officials, medical health practitioners dispose their Health Care Risk

Waste in a responsible and safe manner, the Municipality does not have proper and effective control over the disposal of Health Care Risk Waste. The Municipality does not keep record of the medical generators within the municipal area as well as the quantity of waste generated and means of Health Care Risk Waste disposal. The Municipality does not have any By-Law that enforces responsible and safe handling of all Health Care Risk Waste generated in the municipal area.

#### 4.3.15 INDUSTRIAL WASTE

According to municipal officials there are no major industrial waste generators within the Hessequa Municipal Area that have a significant impact on the quantity or type of waste disposed at any of the Hessequa Municipal landfill sites. Riversdale has a sawmill. Wooden off cuts are used for heaters and sawdust is used for agricultural purposes. Riversdale also has a furniture factory and the main waste material generated by this factory is saw dust. Albertinia has an aloe products factory. The Municipality does not keep record of the type of industries and waste they generate within the municipal area. KV3 therefore was not able to obtain and information on the specific types of hazardous waste generated within the area (Refer Annexure C: Typical Contaminants from Land Uses/Sources & Annexure D: List of Industries within the Hessequa Municipality). The Municipality has no proper By-Laws addressing the liability, generation, storage, transport and disposal of industrial waste.

At the Nestlé factory it sometimes occur that large quantities of milk has a high antibiotic content and is then rejected and needs to be disposed of but there is no appropriate waste disposal site in close proximity that accepts this type of waste. At times road accidents occur which involve the spillage of large quantities of food. Approximately 200 to 400 trucks pass through this area per day. The disposal of fish waste, tinned and spoilt food is a major concern within the municipal area as there is no hazardous waste disposal site in close proximity that accepts this type of waste.

The disposal of tyres and empty toxic containers is also a concern. There are no local facilities that can provide for the disposal of these materials.

#### BUDGET AND RATES

The Municipality has a set monthly tariff structure for removal of waste for the residents and businesses in their municipal areas that is payable on a monthly or yearly basis. There are no tariffs charged for disposal of waste at any of the local landfill sites except for farmers. The specific rates are as listed in Table 10 below.

**Table 10 - Waste removal tariffs for the Hessequa Municipality**

<b>Service</b>	<b>Cost (excl. VAT)</b>
<b>Diverse Payments</b>	
Garden refuse	R 110.00/load
Black Bags	Cost plus 10%
Garden Refuse Bags	R 1.80
Refuse Bins	Cost plus 10%
<b>Outside Municipal Boundaries</b>	
Bakkie Load	R 12.50
Truck Load	R 30.00
Disposal Fees - Outside Mun.(Stilbaai)	R 55.00/year/unit
Grootvadersbosch (Heidelberg)	10 x 0.60 x 0.40 x normal tariff
<b>Service</b>	<b>Cost (excl. VAT)</b>
<b>Refuse Removal</b>	
1 x Removal per Week	R 497.95
2 x Removals per Week	R 1 120.40

Bulk Removals	R 2 489.77
Rotten Food	R 3 236.70

The estimated expenditure and income for cleansing in the Hessequa Municipality, given in their operating budget, is tabulated below in Tables 11.

**Table 11 - The estimated income and expenses for cleansing in the Hessequa Municipality**

## **OPERATING**

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>BUDGET (R)</b>
	<b>2005/6</b>
Riversdale	(84 255)
Stilbaai	(527 813)
Heidelberg	(244 083)
Albertinia	(514 667)
Gouritsmond	34 341
Slangrivier	(108 935)
Witsand	89 871

209950PW0/03/0629\_Final IWMP Hessequa.doc58

## **HESSEQUA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY STATUS QUO**

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>OPERATING BUDGET (R)</b>
	<b>2005/6</b>
<b>RIVERSDALE</b>	
Total Expenditure	1 415 901
Total Income	(1 500 156)
<b>NET (Surplus) /</b>	
	<b>(84 255)</b>
<b>Deficit</b>	

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>OPERATING BUDGET (R)</b>
	<b>2005/6</b>
<b>ALBERTINIA</b>	
Total Expenditure	481 938
Total Income	(996 605)
<b>NET (Surplus) /</b>	
	<b>(514 667)</b>
<b>Deficit</b>	
<b>GOURITSMOND</b>	
Total Expenditure	203 978
Total Income	(169 637)
<b>NET (Surplus) /</b>	
	<b>34 341</b>

**Deficit****SLANGRIVIER**

Total Expenditure 163 761

Total Income (272 646)

**NET (Surplus) /****(108 935)****Deficit****OPERATING****BUDGET (R)****ITEM****2005/6****WITSAND**

Total Expenditure 89 871

Total Income (0)

**NET (Surplus) /****89 871****Deficit**

The tables above indicate that the expenses on cleansing in all the areas within Hessequa Municipality, except Gouritsmond and Witsand, are less than the actual income. The loss in the Gouritsmond area can possibly be attributed to the outsourced services.

**4.3.17 BYLAWS AND IDP**

Each town within the Hessequa Municipal Area has its own regulations and since amalgamation no revision was done.

Provision of waste removal services is listed in the Revised 2004/2005 IDP as high priority in Witsand and rural areas.

**4.3.18 GAPS AND NEEDS ANALYSIS**

The following Gaps and Needs have been identified in the study as well as from discussion workshops:

- The provision of proper waste management services during peak season is a concern regarding limited resources. An additional REL compactor is required for improvement of waste collection service provided in the Stilbaai, Jongensfontein and Melkhoutfontein area.
- The cleansing service whereby individual contractors, supported by the municipal infrastructure, clean the residential areas is an extremely effective, though an expensive service. The future continuance of the service will be entirely dependent on the availability of funds.
- The disposal of abattoir solid waste and fish refuse at the Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site is a concern as this waste get mixed with general waste and causes bad odours. Buried abattoir waste is also dug out and removed from disposal sites.
- Waste management services should be extended to rural and other un-serviced areas.
- A uniform set of By-Laws is required for Hessequa Municipality that addresses all the necessary aspects regarding solid waste management. By-Laws should be compiled in such a way to improve and encourage waste minimisation. The By-Laws should also enforce responsible and safe handling and disposal of all Health Care Risk Waste

generated in the municipal area. By-Laws, addressing the liability, generation, storage and disposal of industrial refuse can only be properly implemented if sufficient recordkeeping of all industries is done and a suitable hazardous landfill site is provided to the public.

- Proper record keeping at the disposal sites is required.
- Eden District municipality needs to investigate the establishment of a regional hazardous waste landfill site.
- The Municipality should keep proper record of all Health Care Risk Waste generators, the quantity of Health Care Risk Waste generated and the means of Health Care Risk Waste disposal.
- Proper record keeping of industries within the Hessequa area and the type of waste generated should be established and kept updated.
- All landfill sites need to be permitted, Jongensfontein Landfill Site and Albertinia Landfill Site for closure and Melkhoutfontein Landfill Site for continued operation.
- The Municipality requires a policy according to which the rate of waste management vehicles and equipment replacement are determined.
- The disposal of empty toxic container and tyres need to be investigated and provided for. • Public awareness of proper waste management should be established. • The Municipality needs to address and improve the existing waste recycling activities.

## Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) Project Planning

### **Introduction**

The MIG Programme is part of government's overall strategic programmes to eliminate poverty and create conditions for local economic development. It will, therefore, maximise opportunities for employment creation. The programme is demand driven and service delivery is decentralised to municipalities. Municipalities play a central role in coordinating development activity and delivery of municipal infrastructure in their Jurisdictions.

The Aim of the Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) Program is to assist the poor to gain basic access to infrastructure thereby also improving the opportunity to maximise economic benefits.

This purpose of this report is to evaluate Hessequa Municipality's performance in respect of the Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) to the National Treasury in terms of Chapter 3 section 11(6)) of the 2010 Division of Revenue Act. This report also indicates the planned projects to be funded through the Municipal Infrastructure Grant.

### **The objectives of the evaluation are:**

- To record the actual performance of the municipality throughout the financial year under consideration;
- To identify factors that caused delays in the execution of projects with a view of eliminating these in future;
- To critically evaluate performance with a view to improve performance in future.

The "Division of Revenue Act" (DORA) indicated the following granted allocations toward Hessequa Municipality. The Mig Allocation that needed to be spend by end of the 2012/13 financial years is R 13,965,000 which consists of the 2012/13 allocation of R 12,799,000 and the approved 2011/12 rollover amount of R 1,166,000.

The approved MIG allocations for 2013/14 and 2014/15 are R 12,622,000 and R 13,003,000 of which all the projects implemented for 2013/14 is multi year projects that started construction already in the current financial year. See CASHflows

These allocations were directed through the MIG programme to facilitate the management thereof.

### **Background**

Hessequa Municipality covers an area of approximately 5 600 km<sup>2</sup> and is situated in the Eden District Municipal Area in the Western Cape Province. It is bounded on the north by the Langeberg mountain range and stretches along the Southern Cape coast from the Gourits River in the east to the Breede River in the west.

Hessequa is a predominantly rural agricultural region while the rise of tourism in the last half century has resulted in the establishment of four coastal towns namely Witsand, Jongensfontein, Stilbaai and Gouritsmond. Riversdale can be classified as the primary regional service centre and seat of the Hessequa Municipality while Heidelberg and Albertinia can be classified as secondary service centres. Slangrivier can be classified as a rural town, mainly residential, although some trades and services are found, while Vermaaklikheid and Groot-Kragga are rural settlements.

Hessequa can be taken to have a population of some 50,952 (counted in 2009/10 by fieldworkers of Hessequa Municipality who were provided with data collecting devices of which 20 were procured to address the statistic dilemma of municipalities where the most recent available statistics were from the 2001 census). Significant portions of Hessequans live below the poverty line and pockets of extreme poverty exist, for example in Kwanokuthula in Riversdale and in Slangrivier. Employment

fluctuates around 50%. The WSDP indicates at 70% of the population falls under the predisadvantages group.

The Hessequa PMU was established at the beginning of the 2011/12 financial year. The PMU is fully integrated into the technical services section of the municipality and receives excellent support from all the other municipal departments as and when needed.

**The main challenges faced during the 2012/13 as a result of the following:**

- Heidelberg New 1MI Reservoir – Additional funding needed –delay in start date of construction.
- Upgrading of streets in Slangrivier - was approved only on 21 November 2012, construction to start only in April 2013.
- Riversdale Refurbishment of WwTw- result to the length of the EIA process delay
- Projects planned for implementation in 2013/14 had to be brought forward due to outstanding EIA's.
- The late confirmation of the R1, 166,000 roll-over funds caused a delay in implementing the total 2012/13 allocation.

***Backlogs in Civil Engineering Services***

An infrastructure backlog survey by Eden District Municipality in 2007 revealed the following for Hessequa Municipality:

***Water:***

Water infrastructure is sufficient for current requirements while the water resources are currently utilized to full capacity. Coastal towns regularly experience shortages in summer holiday season. Current water demand is 6,692 m<sup>3</sup>/day (AADD), predicted to increase to 13,993 m<sup>3</sup>/day when all vacant plots are built upon, and to 24,244 m<sup>3</sup> in future till 2025. Current water treatment capacity is 10,600 m<sup>3</sup>/day, predicted to increase to 22,990 m<sup>3</sup>/day when all vacant plots are built upon, and to 38,298 m<sup>3</sup>/day in future till 2025.

***Sewage***

All formal households have access to a basic level of service and the sewage treatment works have sufficient capacity for the present demand as well as for the future demand till 2025. Backlog in access to sanitation of informal households, households with shared services and backyard dwellers that do not meet basic service criteria is 3,623, and expected to increase by a further 1,360 by 2025.

The average daily volume of sewage treated is 5,52MC.



### ***Roads***

The condition of the 203km of surfaced and 31 km of non-surfaced roads in Hessequa is defined as follows:

<b>Condition Assessment</b>	<b>Surfacing (%)</b>	<b>Road Structure (%)</b>
Very Good	31	52
Good	15	17
Fair	28	13
Poor	17	7
Very Poor	9	11

To eradicate the backlogs on road maintenance it is estimated that some R15,6 million will have to be spent on resurfacing over the next two years and some R30,4 million on rehabilitation.

### ***Progress to Date***

That Projects that were earmarked for execution in 2012/13 financial year and financially largely by thr 2012/14 MIG allocation of R 12,799,000 an approved amount of R 1,166,000 form prevouis financial years has to be added to the 2012/13 allocation increasing the 2012/13 allocation value to R 13,965,000. Actual expenditure to date is shown in the table below:

The revised budget for the next 2 term is supported with approved projects and realistic Cash flow and draw-down forecast which will ensure to eliminating these in future.

# **HESSEQUA MUNICIPALITY: STATUS OF ACTUAL MIG EXPENDITURE CLAIM TO DATE 03 APRIL 2013:**

**2012/13 ALLOCATION:** R12, 799,000 plus 2011/12 roll/over R1, 166,000

**TOTAL TO BE SPEND:** R13, 965,000

FORM ID	PROJECT NO.	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	REGISTERED MIG AMOUNT	CLAIM SUBMISSION TO DATE	AMOUNT CLAIMED			MIG CLAIM REPORTED	BALANCE
					DIRECT + INDIRECT	VAT	TOTAL		
15/4/1/3/1/9		PMU	639,950	Total of claims to date 03/05/2013	533,290		533,290	533,290	106,660
204739	WWC/8831/11/13	Albertinia New 2.0 ML Reservoir	3,864,478	Total of claims to date 03/11/2012	1,837,359	257,230	2,094,589	2,094,589	0.00
209209	WWC/9009/12/14	Heidelberg:New 1.0ML Water Reservoir	5,431,859	Total claims to date 03/05/2013	861,154	120,562	981,716	981,716	4,450,143
206818	SWC/8922/12/13	Riversdale:Refurbishment W Water treatment Plant	4,332,000	Total claims to date 03/05/2013	457,647	64,071	521,718	521,718	3,342,760
204250	ST/WC/8753 /12/13	Heidelberg:Slangrivier: Olieboomsskraal road	925,000	Total claims to date 03/05/2013	216,721	30,341	247,062	247,062	677,938
205262	ST/WC/8754 /12/13	Heidelberg: Slangrivier Stormwater Lotz & Booyesen	950,000	Total claims to date 03/05/2013	134,036	18,765	152,801	152,801	797,199
204316	ST/WC/8755 /12/13	Heidelberg: Stormwater in High & Burn street	800,000	Total claims to date 03/05/2013	544,736	76,263	620,999	620,999	179,001
204252	ST/WC/8824 /12/13	Albertinia: Storm water Oker, Mission,Kiewietjie streets	925,000	Total claims to date 03/05/2013	415,637	58,189	473,826	473,826	451,174
211880	WC/1243/R.ST/13 /16	Upgradings of streets in Slangrivier Ph1	18,593,970	Total claims to date 03/05/2013					18,593,970
WC/1119/ST /12/13	204753	Riversdale: Aloeridge storm water	2,000,000	Total claims to date 03/05/2013					2,000,000
Project satisfactorily completed.									

### HESSEQUA MUNICIPALITY: MIG CASH FLOW PROJECTIONS FOR 2012/13

**MIG Allocation for 2012/13: R 12,799,000**  
**2011/12 Rollover: R 1,166,000**

**Total to be spend R 13,965,000**

**DATE: 30 June 2013**

PROJ ID No.	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	TOTAL PROJ. COST	REG. MIG AMOUNT	MIG Fnds Spent in 2011/12	CASHFLOW PROJECTIONS (MIG FUNDS) FOR 2012/13												
					Jul-12	Aug-12	Sep-12	Oct-12	Nov-12	Dec-12	Jan-13	Feb-13	Mar-13	Apr-13	May-13	Jun-13	2012/13
	PMU 2012/13	639,950	639,950	533,290	53,332	53,328	53,329	53,329	53,329	53,329	53,329		106,658	53,329	53,329	53,329	<b>639,950</b>
204739	Albertinia: New 2 ML Reservoir	5,072,573	3,864,478	3,864,473		428,035	636,579	631,012	398,963								<b>2,094,589</b>
209209	Heidelberg New 1ML Reservoir	5,431,859	3,802,301	1,145,752									541,427	440289	893,304	857,652	<b>2,732,671</b>
206818	Riversdale Refurbishment WWTW	4,608,985	4,332,000	521,718			284,382						107,630	129,706	39664		<b>561,382</b>
204250	Slangrivier: Storm water Olieboomskraal road	1,054,500	925,000	247,062									78,361	168,701	374,014	303,924	<b>925,000</b>
204262	Slangrivier: Storm water Lotz & Booysen str	1,083,000	950,000	152,801									134,036	18,765	405,617	391,582	<b>950,000</b>
204316	Heidelberg: High & Burn street SW	912,000	800,000	620,999									160,597	460,402	179,002		<b>800,000</b>
204252	Albertinia: Stormwater Oker, Mlssion, kiewietjie	1,054,500	925,000	473,826									103,501	370,325	255,676	195,498	<b>925,000</b>
211880	Heidelberg: Slangrivier Various roads & SW	18,593,970	18,593,970												2,647,475	1,200,000	<b>3,847,475</b>
204753	Riversdale: Storm water Aloeridge	2,280,000	2,000,000												488,933		<b>488,933</b>
<b>TOTALS 2012/13</b>		<b>40,091,387</b>	<b>35,763,069</b>		<b>53,332</b>	<b>481,363</b>	<b>974,290</b>	<b>684,341</b>	<b>452,292</b>	<b>53,329</b>	<b>53,329</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1,232,210</b>	<b>1,641,516</b>	<b>5,337,013</b>	<b>3,001,985</b>	<b>13,965,000</b>

CUM. TOTALS (12/13)	-----	-----	-----	53,332	534,695	1,508,985	2,193,326	2,645,618	2,698,947	2,752,276		3,984,486	5,626,002	10,963.015	13,965000	
---------------------	-------	-------	-------	--------	---------	-----------	-----------	-----------	-----------	-----------	--	-----------	-----------	------------	-----------	--

**\*\* Project registrations process**

**HESSEQUA MUNICIPALITY: MIG CASH FLOW PROJECTIONS FOR 2013/14**

**MIG Allocation for 2013/14: R 12,622,000**
**To be spend by: 30 June 2014**

PROJ ID No.	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	TOTAL PROJ. COST	REG. MIG AMOUNT	MIG Fnds Spent in 2012/13	CASHFLOW PROJECTIONS (MIG FUNDS) FOR 2013/14												
					Jul-13	Aug-13	Sep-13	Oct-13	Nov-13	Dec-13	Jan-14	Feb-14	Mar-14	Apr-14	May-14	Jun-14	2013/14
	PMU		631,100		52,591	52,591	52,591	52,591	52,591	52,591	52,591	52,591	52,591	52,591	52,595	52,595	631,100
213519	Heidelberg: New 1.0 MI Water Reservoir	5,431,859	2,732,671	2,732,671	356,543	356,543	356,544										1,069,630
206818	Riversdale: Refurbishmentof W Water Treatment Plant	4,608,985	4,332,000	561,382				202,207	202,207	202,209	458,413						1,065,036
204753	Riversdale: Stormwater in Aloeridge	2,280,000	2,000,000	488,932		111,068	200,000	400,000	400,000	400,000							1,511,068
211748	Upgrading of sports facilities for Theronsville,Alberti nia	5,604,810	4,259,656		150,000			608,522	608,522	608,522	608,522	608,522	608,522	458,524			4,259,656
211880	Upgradings of streets in Slangrivier Ph1	18,593,970	18,593,970		449,572	649,572	738,504	449,572	449,572	674,360	674,358	449,572					4,085,510
TOTALS 2013/14		36,519,624	32,549,397	7,630,461	1,008,706	2,178,480	3,526,119	5,239.011	6,951.903	8,889.585	10.683.469	11.344.582	12.005.695	12.516.810	12.569.405	12.622.000	12.622.000

**Project identification/prioritization process:**

The PMU will be responsible for the coordination of the project identification and prioritization process while ensuring proper integration of the respective Infrastructure Investment Framework (IIF) and Integrated Development Planning (IDP) with the appropriate input from the various government departments to ensure synchronized service delivery. The feasibility process necessitates that consideration be given to the feasibility of the project in terms of Provincial growth strategies, integrated regional-level infrastructure planning and technical feasibility of the project. The PMU will not be directly responsible for planning but will liaise closely with the municipal planning department and the other departments involved in the establishment of infrastructure.

**Programme/ Project Management**

The Manager Technical services have been acting as PMU Manager Assisted by a Mig Project Coordinator. The PMU is responsible for management of the Local Infrastructure Program (municipal Level) as well as physical implementation activities while ensuring that all projects meet the overall planning objectives. The PMU Unit must also ensure the associated project management administrative functions, from project registration and evaluation through to final project completion report is taken care of.

The PMU is responsible for the management of the MIG Database (MIS) and the preparation of all necessary reports to the Provincial MIG Management Unit and then National MIG Unit as well as the relevant provincial and national department. In the past the projects were captured by the officials of the Western Cape Provincial Government on the municipalities behalf, early in the beginning of 2013 all official was registered and can the municipality upload their own application on the system.

***As part of the MIG obligation the Municipality need to submit an updated DPIIP (Detail Project Implementation Plan) which reflects the projects that the municipality planned to implement over the 3 year period starting in 2012/13 until 2014/15.***

***Please find below the planned project for the 2013/14 and 2014/15.***

**Cash flow for 2013/14:**

<b>MIG Allocation for 2013/14:</b>					<b>R12,622,000</b>		
PROJ. No.	FORM ID	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	TOTAL PROJ. COST	REG. MIG AMOUNT	MIG FUNDS SPEND IN	MIG Funds To be Spent by 30 Jun '14	Balance of MIG Funds to be spent
					PREVIOUS 2012/13 FY		
15/4/1/3/1/19		PMU		631,100		631,100	
W/WC/ 9009 /12 /14	213519	Heidelberg: New 1.0 Ml Water Reservoir	5,431,859	3,802,301	2,732,671	1,069,630	
S/WC/ 8922/ 12/13	206818	Riversdale: Refurbishment of W Water Treatment Plant	4,608,985	4,332,000	561,382	1,065,036	2,705,582
ST/WC/ 8769/ 12/13	204753	Riversdale: Stormwater in Aloeridge	2,280,000	2,000,000	488,932	1,511,068	
WC/1257/ CF(SP)13/14	211748	Upgrading of sports facilities for Theronville, Albertinia	5,604,810	4,259,656		4,259,656	
WC/1243/R.ST/13/16	211880	Upgradings of streets in Slangrivier Ph1	18,593,970	18,593,970	3,847,476	4,085,510	10,660,984
<b>TOTALS (2013/14):</b>			36,519,624	32,549,397	7,630,461	<b>12,622,000</b>	13,366,566

**Cash flow for 2014 /15:**

<b>MIG Allocation for 2014/15:</b>					<b>R13,003,000</b>		
PROJ. No.	FORM ID	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	TOTAL PROJ. COST	REG. MIG AMOUNT	MIG FUNDS SPEND IN	MIG Funds To be Spent by 30 Jun '14	Balance of MIG Funds to be spent
					PREVIOUS 2012/13 FY		
		PMU		650,150		650,150	
**	211755	Stilbay Melkhoutfontein New Bulk Water	4,081,741	4,081,741		700,750	3,380,991
SWC/ 8922/ 12/13	206818	Riversdale: Refurbishment of W Water Treatment Plant	4,608,985	4,332,000	1,626,418	2,706,582	
**	211767	Stilbay Melkhoutfontein New Bulk Sewer	3,151,787	3,151,787		676,569	2,475,218
WC/1243/R.ST/13/16	211880	Upgradings of streets in Slangrivier Ph1	18,593,970	18,593,970	7,932,986	6,197,992	4,462,992
**	212031	Riversdale Stormwater Pipe Inlet Structures	570,000	500,000		500,000	
WC/1269/SW/13/18	211753	Hessequa Solid Waste Transfer StationS	45,720,094	22,567,429		1,571,957	20,995,472
<b>TOTALS (2014/ 15):</b>			<b>76,726,577</b>	<b>53,877,077</b>	<b>9,559,404</b>	<b>13,003,000</b>	<b>31,314,673</b>

As indicated in the DPIP 90% of the projects implemented over the 3 years period is multi year projects, which foreseen no problem to fully spend the 2013/14 and 2014/15 allocations.



## **FOCUS AREA 4:**

### **DEVELOPMENT OF SAFE AND INTEGRATED HUMAN SETTLEMENTS**

#### **Spatial Development Framework**

The Hessequa Spatial Development Framework has been updated through the Built Environment Support Programme of the Department of Development Planning and Environment. The final concept plan was advertised for public comments and the comments are currently under review. These comments will be tabled at the Council meeting of April 2013 to consider the approval of the Hessequa SDF in terms of the Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000). The final IDP will include the findings and appropriate maps of the Final SDF when approved in April/May 2013

# Development of Sustainable Human Settlements

## HESSEQUA MUNICIPALITY: HUMAN SETTLEMENT PLAN

### 5.1 The Hessequa Integrated Development Plan (IDP)

The Draft 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation Hessequa Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is a strategic planning instrument which guides and informs all planning, budgeting, management and decision making in the Municipality. In order to serve as an effective guiding tool, a number of strategic objectives were included in the draft 3<sup>rd</sup> generation Hessequa IDP, 2012 – 2016. The following objectives have a direct bearing on the Hessequa HSP:

- development of socially and culturally prosperous and safe communities through strategic investment in integrated human settlement.
- ensuring a sustainable future through effective conservation and restoration of natural resources, limiting the impact of our presence in the ecology and returning to a heritage of preservation.
- an innovative approach to maintenance of all services and assets, as we develop infrastructure that secures growth in a sustainable manner.
- efficient and cost effective service delivery to all our residents, of the best quality.
- developmental interventions that would stimulate economic growth, to the benefit of all communities.

The intrinsic rationale that led to these objectives remains, as per the vision and mission of the Hessequa Municipality, the integrated and sustainable development focus of Hessequa. As discussed above, the key performance areas of the IDP include service delivery, good land use practice, sound financial management and enabling social environments. All of these goals can be addressed, to a large extent, through sound Human Settlement Planning. The current Housing Delivery Pipeline for Hessequa already adheres to most of the IDP goals and as the HSP needs to be aligned with the IDP, the following needs, objectives and targets should also be reflected in the draft IDP for 2012 - 2016:

IDP CATEGORY 2012/2013	NEED, OBJECTIVES, TARGETS: 2012/2014	IMPLICATIONS FOR THIS HSP	CORRESPONDING PROPOSAL IN PROJECT PIPELINE (REFER TO TABLE 6.5 AND 6.7)
Budget	R34 724 529	Implement according to existing pipeline.	Refer Table 6.7
Human Settlement	1282 units	Implement according to existing pipeline.	Refer Table 6.7
Total Housing Waiting List	3980	Prioritise	Refer Table 6.5

TABLE 5.1: IDP NEED, OBJECTIVES, TARGETS

The preceding table indicates only the immediate budget and projects up to 2014, but the entire 5 year (short term) Pipeline will have bearing on future IDP priorities. A detailed table of the pipeline projects is illustrated in Section C of this document (Table 3.5).

### 5.2 The Hessequa Spatial Development Framework (SDF)

The Hessequa SDF is currently under review, in order to establish a credible SDF that is approved in terms of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000) and recommended by the Council for approval as a Section 4(6) Structure Plan in terms of the Land Use Planning Ordinance, 1985 (Ordinance 15 of 1985).

Urban Development refers to issues mainly addressed in the SDF, such as urban growth and integration, human settlement, community facilities, business areas and industrial development. The human settlements within Hessequa, however, occur within both urban and rural environments and both should be taken into account when referring to 'Urban Development'.

The following goals and strategies for urban development in Hessequa as a whole are covered in the Hessequa SDF and have a direct bearing on the strategy for sustainable human settlement:

- Goal 1: To implement a pro-active holistic policy framework for future urban development.  
 Goal 2: To enhance equal access to services, facilities and opportunities.  
 Goal 3: To formulate guidelines for land use management and the development of urban areas.  
 Goal 4: To plan for an effective and integrated urban structure.

The SDF further identifies a number of challenges with regard to Human Settlements in Hessequa in general and continues to offer guidelines and suggestions to solve these challenges. The HSP then takes both the challenges and solutions into account and practically addresses the issues spatially through the various proposed Human Settlements. (Hessequa, 2012a)

Challenges identified by Hessequa SDF	Implications for the Hessequa HSP	Proposal in Hessequa HSP
Meeting the current backlog in providing subsidized housing.	Compiling a comprehensive housing plan that will address the housing backlog	Table 6.8
Balancing the shortage in public housing with the need to preserve the character of rural and urban areas, as well as promoting sustainable urban development.	Applying sound planning practice by developing infill sites and preventing urban sprawl.  Implementation of continuous monitoring of waiting lists and frequent upgrading of census data.	Development proposals contained in Section 9.2.4  Section 11.
Creating a balance between the planning of higher densities, the need for spatial integration of previously disadvantaged communities, the scarcity of land in close proximity to existing business areas / community facilities, and the need for an effective urban structure.	The majority of the housing backlog falls in the low income category, but middle and higher income housing areas should be made available as part of an integrated strategy in order to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Draw highly skilled individuals;</li> <li>- Enlarge the tax base;</li> <li>- Accommodate previously disadvantaged communities on land that will facilitate integration and is located close to existing business areas and public facilities;</li> <li>- Provide mixed-use areas;</li> <li>- Promote local economic development;</li> <li>- Provide for a variety of housing types, including group housing, row housing, flats and single residential housing.</li> </ul>	The provision of a greater variety of housing opportunities, such as GAP housing. See Plans c), f), g) and i) of Section 9.2.4.
Creating a balance between the housing need, the employment creation potential of nodes and	Subsidized housing projects in rural settlements should not be supported, due to the low development potential thereof. The planning of	Sustainability Criteria, as discussed in Section 9.2. should be taken



their existence as economically independent entities.	extensive residential erven and agricultural plots should rather be considered, based on the assumption that the average income of residents would be sufficient in affording the cost of services, transport, and the provision of basic services, and access to community facilities.	into account when evaluating proposed Human Settlement developments.
-------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

TABLE 5.3: HUMAN SETTLEMENT CHALLENGES AND SOLUTIONS ACCORDING TO THE HESSEQUA SDF

### 5.3 The Local Integrated Transport Plan (ITP)

Breaking New Ground clearly states that maximising both pedestrian movement and public transport are considered to form integral parts of well-planned land utilisation. The Hessequa Integrated Transport Plan (HITP) identifies non-motorised transport (pedestrian and bicycles) as being the major form of movement within towns due to the relative compact nature of the smaller towns.

Some of the findings in the HITP indicate that there is a need for improved public transport services in and between towns especially amongst the captive users of the system where no alternative mode exists. Since traffic is mostly pedestrianised within towns, there is a further need for improved non-motorised infrastructure.

One of the recommendations of the Eden ITP was the undertaking of an Eden Mobility Strategy and in February 2011 the Western Cape Department of Transport and Public Works commissioned the study to be undertaken. The objective of the study is to, amongst others; determine the feasibility of implementing an Eden wide public transport service which will connect all towns in Eden.

This HSP supports these suggestions, as upgrading public transport within Hessequa will improve connectivity between towns, which in turn may inter alia support employment opportunities and accessibility of community facilities. Integrating the ITP with the HSP can further assist in creating sustainable human settlements that would otherwise be isolated. Transport links with the broader Eden district and beyond may unlock further opportunities with regards to employment and education, especially for communities that comprise largely of residential land use and have little opportunity for development.

### 5.4 Local Economic Development

The LED strategy does not contain any town-based or other proposals with relation to Human Settlements. It is suggested that the economic viability of all Human Settlements be thoroughly investigated and included in the LED, as economic development plays an integral part in sustainability.

The Hessequa LED department does however have a strong focus on tourism promotion and various tourism projects, as this remains one of the municipality's main sources of income and employment.

Human settlements may be positively influenced by seasonal tourism and the increased employment opportunities associated therewith. The proximity of settlements and/or accessibility of opportunities should be taken into account when contemplating the position of a new development.

A disadvantage of seasonal tourism is that additional pressure is put on bulk services, especially in some of the coastal towns. Gouritsmond, Witsand and Jongensfontein are under

pressure where water and sewerage is concerned and upgrading the systems to accommodate seasonal tourism would imply that less of the infrastructure budget can be spent on upgrading or new infrastructure for Human Settlement.

#### **5.5 Rural Areas Act 1987 (Act 9 of 1987)**

The Hessequa legislative landscape would not be complete without mention of the Rural Areas Act 1987 (Act 9 of 1987).

Slangrivier is one of twelve Rural Areas, as defined by the Act, in the Western Cape. The town formed part of what was historically known as Crown Land and in 1987 was proclaimed as a Rural Area. Towns like Slangrivier basically comprised of commonages surrounded by ad hoc residential development.

Land could not be owned by the inhabitants and in an effort to facilitate land reform, the Transformation of Certain Rural Areas Act, 1999 (Act 94 of 1999) came into effect on 2 November 1999. The Act prescribes the processes to be followed for the creation of entities to hold the land in the commonages in trust for the inhabitants of the Rural Areas. This process is managed by the Department of Land Affairs and the Municipality responsible for the relevant Rural Area.

Slangrivier is currently in the process of land reform, but the process to date has been complicated and at times challenging. It should be noted that the development of Slangrivier should be approached with this history and the current circumstances in mind.

#### **5.6 Conclusion**

Part A of this document attempted firstly to orientate the reader with relation to the position of Hessequa and its towns inside the broader spatial context.

Part B set about expounding the legislative landscape that sets the theoretical and operational framework wherein this HSP needs to function, within the National, Provincial and Local context.

The following sections will aim at shedding light on the practical implications of parts A and B on the development of Integrated Human Settlements for Hessequa Municipality.

## PART C: ANALYSIS

The purpose of Part C is to identify the spatial and other implications of a range of human settlement informants. These include population growth projections, growth potential of towns, the size of the housing data base, the need for community facilities, local economic development imperatives, and finally bulk service capacity constraints. The list of spatial implications is then followed by goal statements as the basis for establishing strategies for human settlement planning.

### 6. THE HESSEQUA HOUSING CONTEXT

#### 6.1 POPULATION

##### 6.1.1 Population: 1996 – 2022

Population growth projection is an essential element of forward planning methodology. This methodology essentially consists of establishing past trends and projecting the future population increase. The approach followed in the Hessequa HSP was to establish demographic trends based on historic data and then to project future population increases and human settlement needs, based on a number of assumptions. Cognisance should be taken of the fact that the above-mentioned figures were based on Census data of 1996 and 2001 and growth rates have thus been projected according to these numbers. The same Census-data is applied in both the SDF and IDP to ensure consistency throughout the Hessequa Municipality's Sector Plans.

Calculating growth rates and projections are inherently flawed processes that can never be completely accurate. The fact that the historical growth patterns will not necessarily be perpetuated, the seasonal flux that occurs within coastal towns and the dated data set for population numbers that is unavoidably utilised by this document, necessitates an adapted approach towards the calculation of population growth and projections. In the instance of the Hessequa HSP, as with the SDF, the economic growth potential and vision of the Municipality were rather taken into account and reflected in the projected growth rates of Hessequa towns, in an attempt to calculate more accurate figures. When the population growth rate assumptions of the SDF are applied (refer to SDF: section 6.1), the total estimated population for 2012 is calculated as follows:

TOWN	1996	2001	Growth Rate (Historical)	Growth Rate (Adapted)	2012	2022
Albertinia	3468	4689	6.2%	4.5%	7610	11817
Gouritsmond	206	459	17.4%	7.0%	966	1901
Jongensfontein	175	284	10.2%	2.0%	353	430
Heidelberg	6423	7133	2.1%	2.5%	9339	11980
Rural	13096	12539	-0.9%	-0.7%	11607	10619
Riversdale	9757	12776	5.5%	4.5%	20734	32199
Slangrivier	1916	2347	4.1%	4.0%	3613	5348
Stilbaai/ Melkhoutfontein	3223	3689	8.0%	6.0%	7003	12541
Witsand	288	197	-7.3%	2.0%	245	299
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>38552</b>	<b>44113</b>			<b>61490</b>	<b>87334</b>

TABLE 6.1: HISTORIC POPULATION GROWTH RATE



### 6.1.2 Population and land requirement projections (2012 – 2022)

The population projections are determined for the following periods:

Period	Objective
2012 - 2017	This period of 5 years incorporates the current housing pipeline for the Municipality (2010 – 2015).
2017 - 2022	This period predicts the housing pipeline for the following 5 years horizon – the medium term scenario.

TABLE 6.2: OBJECTIVES OVER TIME

For planning purposes, it is essential to determine the land size requirements for the respective time horizons. A critical element of the land projections, is to incorporate the existing housing backlog of the Municipality, assuming that this backlog will be developed at a high density of 35u/ha (gross), the density standard as indicated in the PSDF (2009). The following table indicates the land (calculated in ha) and total number of estimated units required for the short, medium and long term.

	Albertinia	Gouritsmond	Jongensfontein	Heidelberg	Riversdale	Slangrivier	Stilbaal / Melkhoufontein	Witsand
<b>Population Growth</b>	4208	494	77	2621	6082	1735	5538	54
<b>Low Income</b>	2525	222	0	1573	3649	1735	2769	0
<b>Middle Income</b>	1052	148	66	655	1521	0	1938	32
<b>High Income</b>	631	123	12	393	912	0	831	21
<b>Units – Low Income (5 members per family)</b>	505	44	0	315	730	347	554	0
<b>Units – Middle Income (4 members per family)</b>	263	37	16	164	380	0	485	11
<b>Units – High Income (3 members per family)</b>	210	41	4	131	304	0	277	7
<b>Area- Low-Income (35 units/ha)</b>	14	1	0	9	21	10	16	0
<b>Area- Middle-Income (25 units/ha)</b>	13	2	1	8	19	0	24	1
<b>Area- High Income (10 units/ha)</b>	21	4	0	13	30	0	28	1
<b>Sub-Total</b>	49	17	1	30	70	10	68	1
<b>Waiting List Units</b>	1150	11	0	942	1638	577	746	30
<b>Waiting List Area (ha)</b>	32	0.3	0	26	47	16	21	1
<b>Total Area (ha)</b>	81	8	1	57	117	26	89	2

TABLE 6.3: PROJECTED NEED FOR LAND (Ha)



### Implications for this HSP

The implications of the demographic analysis for the Hessequa HSP are:

- i. The total housing backlog is  $\pm 5094$  units which require  $\pm 144$  Ha of land.
- ii. If the current demographic trends continue,  $\pm 90$  Ha of land would be required in the medium term (2022).
- iii. To address the backlog alone would require more than R 508 million, based on the current subsidy quantum of R100 000/unit.
- iv. Planning for the estimated population increase and reducing the current backlog, would require prioritization of towns and projects.

## 6.2 COMPOSITE DEVELOPMENT POTENTIAL

To provide guidance and support for allocating housing funding, capital investment in infrastructure and prioritisation of development for the towns in Hessequa, a thorough understanding is required of the growth potential of towns. The University of Stellenbosch and CSIR recently undertook a study, namely "A revision of the 2004 Growth Potential of Towns in the Western Cape Study" (Discussion document 6 September 2010); [Hereafter: GPTWCS]. The GPTWCS identifies the areas of growth in the province and the areas where in terms of the sustainable development paradigm, growth should be emphasised in the future.

The analysis and classification of urban nodes and settlements provides an understanding of their role and function. The functions that a town performs also reflect the hierarchy of the settlement. A higher order function is associated with a greater number of people utilising that node. Higher order nodes would represent more opportunities for economic development and job creation and should be the primary focus of future housing development. The proposed hierarchy of nodes in Hessequa is as follows:

Hierarchy	Order	Classification
Regional node	1st	Riversdale
Secondary Service Centres	2nd	Heidelberg, Albertinia
Residential and Tourism nodes	3rd	Stilbaai, Jongensfontein, Melkhoutfontein, Witsand, Gouritsmond, Slaggrivier
Rural settlements	4th	Vermaaklikheid, Garcia

TABLE 6.4: HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENTS

The PSDF also proposes, according to policy HR 14, that settlements that show high economic growth potential and have high population thresholds, should be prioritised as locations for fixed infrastructure investment, using a minimum of 5000 people as a benchmark and threshold to sustain tertiary community facilities (eg. primary school or clinic).

The priority fixed investment towns therefore are:

- Riversdale
- Heidelberg
- Albertinia
- Stilbaai / Melkhoutfontein

The priorities for investment proposed for each town according to 5 indexes are indicated in the following table:

Town	Social need	Development potential	Functional category	Place identity
Riversdale	High	Low	Agricultural Service Centre	Southern Cape rural town
Heidelberg	High	Low	Agricultural Service Centre	Southern Cape rural town
Albertinia	Medium	Medium	Agricultural Service Centre	Aloe and thatch products
Stilbaai	Low	Medium	Residential Tourism	River and sea holiday
Slangrivier	Very High	Very Low	Residential	Rural village
Gouritsmond	Low	Medium	Tourism	Sea holiday
Witsand	Low	Low	Tourism	Breede River estuary and recreation
Jongensfontein	Very Low	Medium	Tourism	Sea holiday
Melkhoutfontein*	-	-	Residential	Rural village
Vermaakdijkheid*	-	-	Residential	Rural village
Garcia*	-	-	Residential	Rural village

\*Not included in Growth Potential Study

TABLE 6.3: INTEGRATED TOWN PROFILES (CSIR AND THE UNIVERSITY OF STELLENBOSCH CENTRE FOR GEOGRAPHIC ANALYSIS: 2005)

Once potential population growth is established and coupled with the development potential – i.e. employment opportunities and economic development – of a town, the practical implications of developing a human settlement at a particular location, becomes clearer. The subsequent step would be to link the preceding figures with the current human settlement need in order to establish sustainable, integrated human settlements.

### 6.3 HESSEQUA HOUSING DATA BASE

Hessequa Municipality set about complying with housing delivery standards gradually post-1994. The previous generation IDP (2007 – 2011) saw the transfer of 884 houses, distributed as follows:

COMPLETED PROJECTS (2007 – 2011) :	
TOWN	NUMBER OF UNITS
Albertinia	749 units
Gouritsmond	60 units
Riversdale	615 units
Blikkiesdorp (Heidelberg)	32 units
<b>Total</b>	<b>1456 units</b>

TABLE 6.6: COMPLETED HUMAN SETTLEMENT PROJECTS

A number of units that form part of the Albertinia developments were initially unoccupied, as the Waiting List over-provided for the actual need at the time. The discrepancies with regard to determining the housing need has since been rectified and all the houses are currently occupied.

Land has also recently been made available for emergency housing in Melkhoutfontein, to the North of the town and in Heidelberg to the East. The locations of the land are illustrated in Section 9.3 of this document, annotated as M1 on the Melkhoutfontein- and as H3 on the Heidelberg plans respectively.

### 6.3.1 Status Quo

Despite the completion of the previously mentioned projects, the need for Human Settlements has not yet been met completely. This is due to a number of factors, including population growth, contrasted with unemployment and poverty, as well as the budgetary constraints associated with social and subsidised housing. The official number for the Hessequa Housing Waiting List of 2012 – as provided by the DHS – is **3980** units needed. This number only takes into account those that qualify for subsidised housing in accordance with the DHS criteria, (DHS, 2012).

The latest data from the Hessequa Department of Socio-economic Development and Housing, however, indicates a slightly inflated number, as it reflects all requests for housing assistance, prior to qualification standards. (Hessequa, 2012b)

The following table illustrates the existing housing need, according to the latest Hessequa Municipal Housing Waiting List of 2012. The list contains names of those both seeking housing within the towns, as well as in rural / farm worker communities. The current waiting list in the Hessequa area is **4 785**, dedicated as follows:

HOUSING WAITING LIST:	
TOWN	WAITING LIST
Albertinia	1054 units
Gouritsmond	11 units
Riversdale	1554 units
Heidelberg	1009 units
Slangrivier	598 units
Melkhoutfontein	498 units
Stilbaai	61 units
<b>Total</b>	<b>4785 units</b>

TABLE 6.7: HESSEQUA MUNICIPALITY HOUSING WAITING LIST

In addition to the housing need indicated in the foregoing Waiting List, the PSDF identifies the development need within each of the Hessequa towns and then suggests the priorities for economic spending (Plan 6.1). Human Settlements have been implemented in Albertinia, Gouritsmond, Riversdale and Blikkiesdorp during the previous IDP cycle. The focus for Integrated Human Settlement development is now directed towards Heidelberg, Slangrivier and Melkhoutfontein.



Slangrivier is the Hessequa town that has historically not been adequately developed, as there is little scope for growth and economic opportunities. A sizeable shortage in subsidised housing does however currently exist, resulting in a high need for Human Settlement development.

Heidelberg, situated directly adjacent to the N2 highway is spatially and socio-economically divided by the N2 and development has historically been imbalanced due to Apartheid planning. The PSDF identifies Heidelberg as a 'high need' node for Hessequa.

Melkhoutfontein is not indicated by the PSDF as an economic investment priority, but the growing housing need that exists has not been addressed recently. Taking into account that Melkhoutfontein is coupled with Stilbaai, which is classified as having the largest growth rate of all the Hessequa towns, the Hessequa Municipality, with the DHS, identified Melkhoutfontein as a 'high need' node for Integrated Human Settlement.



Economic Investment - Source: I J van der Merwe (U.S.)

Priority	Need	Development	Population	Priority	Need	Development	Population
★	High	High	> 5000	■	High	High	< 5000
☆	Low	High	> 5000	□	Low	High	< 5000
◆	High	Low	> 5000	●	High	Low	< 5000
◇	Low	Low	> 5000	○	Low	Low	< 5000

PLAN 6.1: ECONOMIC INVESTMENT PRIORITIES FOR HESSEQUA TOWNS (PSDF, 2009)

In order to adhere to the principles of PSO 6, of balanced urban settlement development, both within towns and in relation to each other, to address the need identified for Hessequa Municipality, as well as focus the spending priorities identified by the PDSF, a housing pipeline has been developed by the Hessequa Municipality and the DHS.

This housing pipeline is to be implemented within the Hessequa Municipality within its five year planning cycle. The pipeline projects are listed according to the priority, as informed by the aforementioned guidelines and are to be completed as follows:

Project Name	Priority	Housing Program	No. Stands/Units	Town/Suburb	Erf Number	Estimated cost	Proposed construction year
Heidelberg Phase 1 Services	1	IRDP	250	Heidelberg	Various	R7 million	2011/2012
Slangrivier Phase 1 Services	2	IRDP	250	Slangrivier	Various	R7 million	2011/2012
Heidelberg Phase 1 Tops	3	IRDP	250	Heidelberg	Various	R18 million	2012/13
Slangrivier Phase 1 Tops	4	IRDP	250	Slangrivier	Various	R18 million	2012/13
Melkhoutfontein Phase 1 Services	5	IRDP	250	Melkhoutfontein	Various	R7 million	2013/14
Melkhoutfontein Phase 1 Tops	6	IRDP	250	Melkhoutfontein	Various	R18 million	2014/15
Heidelberg Phase 2 Services	7	IRDP	250	Heidelberg	Various	R7 million	2015/16
Slangrivier Phase 2 Services	8	IRDP	250	Slangrivier	Various	R7 million	2015/16
Heidelberg Phase 2 Tops	9	IRDP	250	Heidelberg	Various	R18 million	2016/17
Slangrivier Phase 2 Tops	10	IRDP	250	Slangrivier	Various	R18 million	2016/17

TABLE 6.8: LIST OF HOUSING PROJECTS CONTAINED IN 2012 / 2017 PIPELINE

In summation, the highest priorities are:

- Priority 1: Heidelberg Phase 1 (services)
- Priority 2: Slangrivier Phase 1 (services)
- Priority 3: Heidelberg Phase 1 (top structures)

The preceding pipeline is envisioned for the present IDP cycle (2012 – 2017). However, the housing database is constantly updated and this implicates that the pipeline should evolve likewise. The intent of the pipeline is to function as a 'conveyor belt' system, where priorities continuously flow from the bottom up and are replaced by new envisioned projects. A priority may also move to lower position, in the event that a project, added to the list at a later stage, takes precedence or becomes more urgent. The efficiency of the pipeline will be determined by ensuring the following:

- i. Regular updates (1 per annum) in relation to the housing database;
- ii. Implementation of the policy and management system as proposed by this HSP; and
- iii. The compilation of a computerized data base that linked to the Municipality's current GIS.

### 6.3.2 Existing project status

The current status of housing projects, including those completed during 2011 and early 2012, is summarized as follows:

- i. Number of units completed: **± 1456**
- ii. Number of units currently under construction: **500**
- iii. Towns where current projects are fully completed:

COMPLETED PROJECTS	
TOWN	STATUS
Panorama (380)	Title Deed transfer in process
Kwanokuthula (160 units)	Houses repaired and hand over Feb 2012
Riversdale infill sites (75 units)	Title Deed transfer to commence shortly
Albertinia (749 units)	Title Deed transfer to be completed early 2012
Gouritsmond (60 units)	Title Deed transfer completed
Blikkiesdorp (32 units)	Beneficiaries approved and houses received. Title Deed transfer to commence shortly.

TABLE 6.9: LIST OF COMPLETED HOUSING PROJECTS (2011)

### 6.3.3 GAP Housing

The need for GAP housing has been established in Hessequa and the focus for GAP development will initially be directed towards Melkhoutfontein, Heidelberg, Riversdale, Stilbaai and Witsand. The first GAP development to be implemented is 50 units on Erf 1213, Heidelberg (H4), during 2014 and 2017/18. Other projects may be established throughout the current IDP cycle, as the readiness for development implementation improves during the current IDP cycle.

The following criteria will be applied in the Hessequa GAP policy:

- A beneficiary must qualify for bond and earn between R3501 and R15000 per month.
- The maximum erf/house price is R300000.
- The currently consideration is 45m<sup>2</sup> to 60m<sup>2</sup> houses, subject to affordability.
- The basic level of municipal services should be provided to improve affordability.
- Potential beneficiaries would be placed on a list by the Municipality, and screened, to determine demand.

The Hessequa HSP identifies a number of sites for possible GAP development (refer to Part D, Section 9.3 of this document):

GAP DEVELOPMENTS	
TOWN	SITE
Melkhoutfontein	M2, M3
Heidelberg	H4
Riversdale	R1, R3, R4
Witsand	W1
Stilbaai	S1

TABLE 6.10: LIST OF SITES FOR GAP DEVELOPMENT



The Municipality does however realise that the development of GAP projects would necessitate the composition of both an allocations- and a development policy to address and undertake GAP and other integrated housing projects in a sustainable manner.

**Implications for this HSP**

- i. *Prioritization of future projects is essential, in terms of implementing PSO 6 principles, meeting the Municipality's housing need, and aligning with the PSDF spending priorities.*
- ii. *The largest Human Settlement need, according to the backlog and Municipal Waiting List, is in Melkhoutfontein as the town is classified to form part of Stilbaai, which is the Hessequa town with the highest growth potential.*
- iii. *Policy structure to be developed in addendum to this HSP to support and manage detailed GAP and other integrated housing projects.*

## 6.4 COMMUNITY FACILITIES

### 6.4.1 Supply

Community facilities are an essential support system for urban and rural communities. The accessibility and availability of facilities are paramount to planning of sustainable communities. The objective of planning of new housing projects should therefore always ensure that facilities are within walking distance ( $\pm 1\text{km}$  or 10 – 12min walking time) from residents.

The location of community facilities included in the proposed human settlement developments in Section 9.2 of the Hessequa HSP is intended to:

- Allocate clusters of community facilities at points of maximum pedestrian accessibility; and
- Encourage multiple usages of facilities to promote convenience of use.

### 6.4.2 Standards

The standards for the provision of community facilities are applied to all new Human Settlement projects contained in the Hessequa HSP (refer to spatial analyses of towns, illustrated in Section 9.3 of this document). A variety of different standards currently exist and the standards used in the Hessequa SDF, are those contained in *Making Urban Places* by Behrens and Watson (1996). These, including the comparison with similar standards are illustrated in Annexure A.

Based on the existing backlog of housing, a mathematical analysis was made to determine what the community facility requirements would be. This is presented in Table 6.11.



	Albertinia	Riversdale	Heidelberg	Stilbaal/ Melkhourfontein	Slangrivier	STANDARDS
Housing backlog	1054	1554	1009	559	598	
Crèche	2	3	2	1	1	1/400units; 1.4ha
Primary school	0	0	0	0	0	1/2 500units; 2.6ha
Clinic	1	1	1	0	0	1/1000 – 1/1400units; 0.5ha
Day hospital	0	0	0	0	0	1/8000units; 0.2 – 1.0ha
Library	0	0	0	0	0	1/8000units; 0.1ha
Community Centre	0	0	0	0	0	1/6000units; 0.2 – 0.5ha
Sport field						-
Fire station	0	0	0	0	0	1/20000units; 0.3ha
Police station	0	0	0	0	0	1/12000units; 0.1 – 1.5ha
Worship	2	2	1	1	1	1/600 – 1/1000units; 0.15 – 1.0ha

TABLE 6.11: COMMUNITY FACILITY REQUIREMENTS (BEHRENS & WATSON, 1996)

The mathematical representation of the need for community facilities, according to Table 6.10, is however not a true reflection of the actual need. The actual need for community facilities can only be determined when the local provision and further spatial analysis is done when land is identified for housing.

#### Implications for this HSP

- Identification of land for future housing developments must consider the current provision of community facilities.
- Community facilities should be clustered to ensure optimal access and utilization.
- The greatest number of facilities will be required in the larger towns of Riversdale, Albertinia and Heidelberg.

## 6.5 ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

### 6.5.1 Household income distribution

According to data collected for the Hessequa Draft IDP of 2011/2012, a large number of employed residents within the Hessequa Municipal area fall within the R192 000 – 360 000 per annum salary bracket. This statistic implies that the Municipality presides over an above-average tax base and that the need for subsidised housing should be below average.

However, when the data from Chart 6.1 is taken into account, it transpires that the average income data may be misleading and that a large number of inhabitants still fall under the poverty line. This fact implies that subsidised housing remains a critical need for Hessequa and will in all likelihood continue into the future, as population numbers increase.

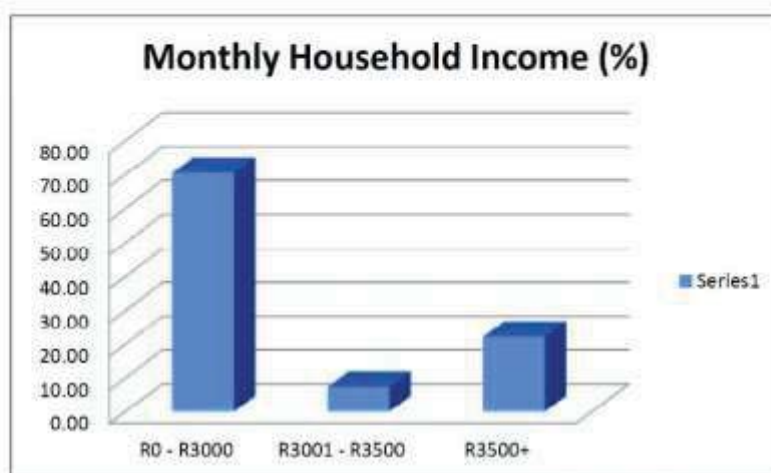


CHART 6.1: NUMBER OF INDIGENT HOUSEHOLDS IN HESSEQUA (HESSEQUA INDIGENT POLICY)

The chart indicating monthly household income has been structured according to the current indigent policy of Hessequa Municipality, which in turn corresponds with the DHS categories for qualifying beneficiaries of subsidized housing (i.e R0 – R3500 per month). It may be noted here that the qualifying income for GAP housing is R3501 – R15 000 per month.

### 6.5.2 Economic overview

The Draft Hessequa IDP of 2012/2016 does not draw a direct link between economic development and human settlement, but rather places emphasis on the development of tourism within the Municipality. Tourism development may have a positive effect in solving unemployment and raising the average income levels of residents, thus lowering the need for subsidised housing.

A number of Mainstream Initiatives have been identified in the Hessequa Municipality Local Economic Development Implementation Plan (Hessequa, 2008b), including an estimated investment amount that could be allocated towards each project, as well as the number of employment opportunities created:

PROJECT	TOWNS	CAPITAL INVESTMENT	JOBS
Venues along the N2 to accommodate Art, Craft and Fresh Produce Markets	Pre-processing	R 570 000	300
	Riversdale	R 1 050 000	
	Heidelberg	R 450 000	
	Albertinia	R 450 000	
Slangrivier Gateway	Filling Station, Shop and Arch	R 3 000 000	150
	Restaurant	R 1 000 000	
	Information Centre	R 300 000	
	Craft and Produce Stalls and Sheds	R 700 000	

TABLE 6.12: HESSEQUA LED IMPLEMENTATION PLAN: MAINSTREAM PROJECTS (2008)

The locations of the proposed human settlement developments of Riversdale, Heidelberg and Albertinia, in Section 9.2 of this HSP, are already motivated by the accessibility to business and employment opportunities, which include exposure to the above-mentioned tourism initiatives.

The Hessequa LED Implementation Plan also lists GAP housing as one of its Mainstream Projects and estimates R 30 000 000 needed for GAP development. The typology of subsidised housing is currently homogenous and a definite need exists within the Hessequa Housing market for a greater variety of opportunities. This HSP identifies a number of sites for GAP development, but Social Housing such as CRU and Institutional Housing need to be further investigated and applied.

#### Implications for this HSP

- The demand / supply analysis of residential units for high, middle and low income earners, indicate that the majority of residential demand is in the low income category.
- Greater provision of housing for the GAP market is required and opportunities for Social Housing (CRU; Institutional) and other housing instruments should be investigated.
- The GAP market should be included in the pipeline as the need becomes more pronounced.

## 7. ENGINEERING SERVICE

### 7.1 BACKGROUND

Development of future Human Settlement projects within the Hessequa Municipal area will require investment in the necessary bulk infrastructure and reticulation networks. The identified Human Settlement priorities will provide guidance with regard to future infrastructure upgrades. The following table briefly summarises the current state of bulk infrastructure for Hessequa Municipality:

	Water treatment / reticulation	Sewage treatment / reticulation	Electricity
<b>Albertinia</b>	Investigate sustainability of water sources (boreholes).	Additional capacity available for future development. Reticulation to be upgraded 2012 – 2016.	No problems are envisioned for bulk electricity provision. R1 150 000 is budgeted for upgrading the system over the 2012 – 2016 period.
<b>Riversdale</b>	Water source (Korentepoort river) adequate to meet current demands. New reservoir to be constructed 2013/2014.	Capacity is inadequate to meet current needs. Additional capacity needed to accommodate future development.	Upgrading of existing infrastructure essential for future developments. R1 100 000 to be spent over the 2012 – 2016 period towards upgrading.
<b>Heidelberg</b>	Water source adequate for current conditions (Overberg Water from the Duivenhoks Rural Water Provision Scheme).	Capacity is adequate for current conditions.	Capacity adequate to meet current demand. Maintenance is recommended to accommodate future development.
<b>Slangrivier</b>	Water source adequate	Additional capacity	Electricity provided by



	for current conditions (Overberg Water from the Duivenhoks Rural Water Provision Scheme).	available for future development.	Escom. No upgrading required.
<b>Stilbaai</b>	Water source adequate for current conditions, as well as peak season demands. R3 542 200 to be spent 2013/2014 towards water provision for housing.	Kwezi Sewage plant to be completed 2013. Capacity available for future development.	Electricity supply network requires upgrade for future development. Additional capacity is available from Escom.
<b>Melkhoutfontein</b>	Water source adequate for current conditions (Melkhoutfontein spring), but further studies are needed to determine accurate delivery capacity	Septic tank system. Sewage treatment facility adequate to meet current demands.	Work upgrading to take place 2013 – 2015, in accordance with sub economic housing projects.
<b>Gouritsmond</b>	Water source adequate for current conditions (Doordriftfontein spring), but system is strained during peak seasons.	Additional capacity needed during peak seasons. New reservoir envisaged for the 2012 – 2017 period.	Upgrading of network required to accommodate future development.
<b>Witsand</b>	Water provision is inadequate to meet the current need. Additional capacity will have to be created to accommodate future development.	The current sewage treatment works are inadequate to meet current demands. Additional capacity will have to be created to accommodate future development.	R1 000 000 to be spent over the 2012 – 2016 period towards upgrading and maintenance of the existing system.
<b>Jongensfontein</b>	Water source adequate for current conditions as well as during peak seasons (Jongensfontein spring).	Capacity is inadequate for current load. Additional capacity should be made available for future developments.	Capacity is adequate for current and future need. Upgrading will be done on an ad hoc basis.

TABLE 7.1: ENGINEERING SERVICES PROVISION

In addition to the above mentioned data, it should be noted that a capital amount of R34 895 000 from the Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant is to be spent towards water supply across the Hessequa Municipal area. Further to this grant, Mr. L. Eksteen (DPLG) confirmed the MIG Funding for Hessequa, 2012 – 2014, to be allocated as follows:

TOWN	2012/2013	2013/2014	PROJECT
Riversdale	± R5 000 000	± R3 000 000	Upgrading of sewage system
Garcia (Riversdale)	± R4 000 000	± R1 000 000	Upgrading of reticulation network
Stilbaai		± R3 500 000	Supply reticulation network for sub-economic housing
Albertinia	± R2 700 000		New reservoir
Riversdale		± R3 500 000	New reservoir
Hessequa Municipality	± R680 000	± R1 900 000	Provision of street lights for Human Settlements
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>± R12 380 000</b>	<b>± R12 900 000</b>	

TABLE 7.2: MIG FUND ALLOCATION 2012/2014

## 8. SPATIAL ANALYSIS AND SETTLEMENT PATTERNS

### 8.1 ALIGN RESIDENTIAL DEVELOPMENT WITH GROWTH POTENTIAL OF TOWNS

The approach followed in the SDF, was to establish demographic trends based on historic data and then to project population increases and housing needs based on a number of basic assumptions. Population projections were also considered against the town strategies. The role and function, growth potential and the location of towns relative to urban-rural development corridors also impact on the population growth projections. The impact of these strategies could be aligned with the development scenario for each town.

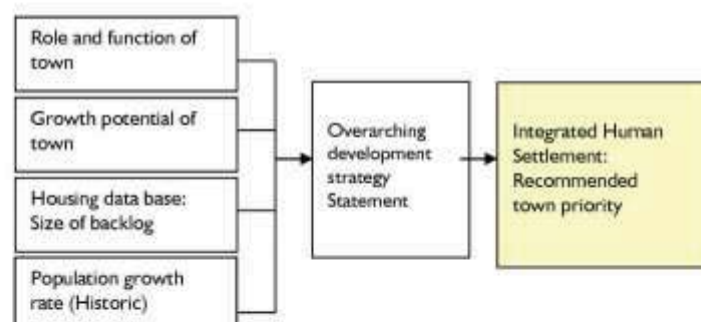


FIGURE 8.1: METHODOLOGY FOR DETERMINING POPULATION GROWTH ESTIMATES

All the above mentioned strategies were integrated into an overarching development strategy for each town. This formed the basis for: (i) population growth rate assumptions; (ii) land use requirements for each town and (iii) determining the priorities for Hessequa Municipality.

	Role and function	Growth potential	Located in Transport corridor	Overarching development strategy statement	Population growth assumptions	Human Settlements: Recommended town Priority
Riversdale	1st order node Administrative and agricultural service centre	Low development potential; High social need	Yes	Administrative node; Coping settlement; Fixed investment priority	Moderate growth	1
Heidelberg	2nd order local node agricultural service centre	Low development potential; High social need	Yes	Agriculture Service Centre; Coping settlement; Fixed investment priority	Moderate growth	2
Albertinia	2nd order local node agricultural service centre	Medium development potential; Medium social need	Yes	Agriculture Service Centre; Stable settlement; Fixed investment priority	Moderate growth	2
Stilbaai / Melkhoutfontein	3rd order local node Tourism / residential	Medium development potential; Low social need	No	Tourism / Residential node; Stable settlement; Fixed investment priority	Sustained growth	1
Slangrivier	3rd order local node / residential	Very Low development potential; Very High social need	No	Struggling settlement; Human resource development	Moderate growth	2

Gouritsmond	3rd order local node /tourism	Medium development potential; Low social need	No	Stable settlement; Human resource development	Moderate growth	3
Jongensfontein	3rd order local node /tourism	Medium development potential; Very Low social need	No	Stable settlement; Human resource development	Limited growth	5
Witsand	3rd order local node /tourism	Low development potential; Low social need	No	Coping settlement; Human resource development	Limited growth	5
Vermaakkkheid	4th order rural node	"	No	"	No growth	6
Garcia	4th order rural node	"	No	"	No growth	6

TABLE 8.1: POPULATION GROWTH RATE ASSUMPTIONS

The prioritisation of towns provides the basis for the prioritisation of housing projects. For example, a housing project in Gouritsmond will be allocated a lower priority than any of the housing projects in Heidelberg. Correspondingly, if a project in Gouritsmond is planned for the 2017 – 2022 (medium term) pipeline, then this project would get a lower priority than a project in Riversdal earmarked for the 2012 – 2017 (short term) project pipeline.

## 8.2 SUMMARY

The following Table (Table 8.2) presents a summary of all the implications for the Hessequa HSP identified in the preceding sections. For each section, a corresponding goal is provided.

SECTION NO.	SECTION NAME	LIST OF HSP IMPLICATION	GOALS
4.2	Strategic objective 6 (SO6): Developing Integrated and Sustainable Human Settlements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prioritise in situ upgrading through provision of services and security of tenure.</li> <li>Phase building of top structures over a longer period.</li> <li>Investigate assistance to back yard dwellers.</li> <li>Expenditure on bulk to be aligned with human settlement plans.</li> <li>Implement proper data base collection system for accurate and up-to-date information.</li> <li>Investigate the options for contractor assisted managed PHP.</li> <li>Explore alternative technologies, designs, layouts, etc. to achieve energy efficient, water-wise and cost-effective development.</li> <li>Infill land / erven already serviced by community facilities and close to transport corridors, should be developed at densities (&gt; 35u/ha) selected for each site.</li> <li>Seek state assistance for a finance scheme for people earning between R3500 and R15 000 p/month.</li> <li>Implement a new CRU process to improve property management and higher collection rates.</li> </ul>	Provide housing assistance to more beneficiaries (G1).

5.2	The Hessequa Spatial Development Framework	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compiling a comprehensive housing plan that will address the housing backlog.</li> <li>• Proactively identifying land by means of a land audit, linked to a land availability program.</li> <li>• Applying sound planning practice by developing infill sites and preventing urban sprawl.</li> <li>• Implementation of continuous monitoring of waiting lists and frequent upgrading of census data.</li> <li>• The majority of the housing backlog falls in the low income category, but middle and higher income housing areas should be made available as part of an integrated strategy in order to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Draw highly skilled individuals;</li> <li>- Enlarge the tax base;</li> <li>- Accommodate previously disadvantaged communities on land that will facilitate integration and is located close to existing business areas and public facilities;</li> <li>- Provide mixed-use areas;</li> <li>- Promote local economic development;</li> <li>- Provide for a variety of housing types, including group housing, row housing, flats and single residential housing.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Subsidized housing projects in rural settlements should not be supported, due to the low development potential thereof. The planning of extensive residential erven and agricultural plots should rather be considered, based on the assumption that the average income of residents would be sufficient in affording the cost of services, transport, and the provision of basic services, and access to community facilities.</li> </ul>	Identify strategic land portions and allocate appropriate housing instruments (G2).
6.1	Population	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The total housing backlog is <math>\pm 5083</math> units which require <math>\pm 145</math> Ha of land.</li> <li>• If the current demographic trends continue, <math>\pm 90</math> Ha of land would be required in the medium term (2022).</li> <li>• To address the backlog alone would require more than R 508 million, based on the current subsidy quantum of R100 000/unit.</li> <li>• Planning for the estimated population increase and reducing the current backlog, would require prioritization of towns and projects.</li> </ul>	Systematically address the housing backlog by giving priority to projects that meet sustainability criteria (C3).
6.3	Housing data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Prioritisation of future projects is essential.</li> <li>• The largest shortage of housing units to be constructed relative to the backlog is in Riversdale.</li> </ul>	See above
6.4	Community facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identification of land for future housing developments must consider the current provision of community facilities.</li> <li>• Community facilities should be clustered to ensure optimal utilization.</li> </ul> <p>The greatest number of facilities will be required in Albertinia and Riversdale.</p>	Apply community facility standards to improve sustainability (G4).
6.5	Economic		Plan for a greater



	development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The demand / supply analysis of residential units for high, middle and low income earners, indicate that the majority of residential demand is in the low income category.</li> <li>Greater provision of housing for the GAP market is required and opportunities for Social Housing (CRU; Institutional) and other housing instruments should be investigated.</li> <li>The GAP market should be included in the pipeline as the need becomes more pronounced.</li> </ul>	proportion projects (G5). GAP
7.	Engineering services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None of the towns have sufficient capacity of all bulk services.</li> <li>Water recourses need to be addressed in Albertinia, Gouritsmond and Witsand.</li> <li>Reticulation networks are to be upgraded in accordance with Human Settlement development in Albertinia, Gouritsmond, Witsand and Jorgensfontein.</li> <li>Electricity to be upgraded and/or maintained in Riversdale, Stilbaai/Melkhoutfontein, Gouritsmond and Witsand.</li> </ul>	Implement bulk services provision and upgrading for pipeline priorities 1 – 5 (G7).
8.	Spatial analyses and settlement patterns	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Housing development should be prioritized in settlements with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>medium to high growth potential</li> <li>medium to high growth potential and high social need</li> </ul> </li> <li>The recommended priorities for housing development according to growth potential of towns are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>priority 1: Heidelberg</li> <li>priority 2: Slangrivier</li> <li>priority 3: Melkhoutfontein</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Timeously allocate public land for housing (GL8).

Having taken into account the preceding information, summarising the data and ascertaining the measure of integration, the sustainability and the need for Human Settlement in each of the Hessequa towns, the ensuing part of this HSP will endeavour to translate the theory and illustrate its spatial bearing.

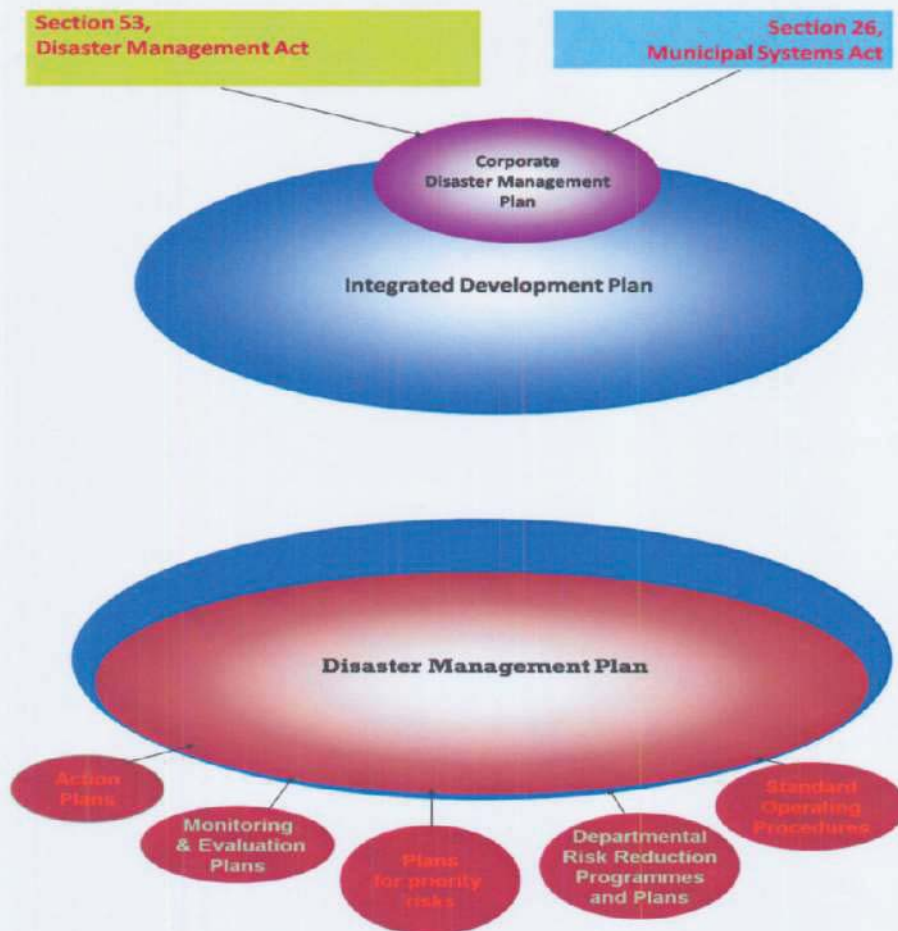
## Disaster Management

### ***Introduction***

In terms of Act 57 of 2000 stipulates that each Municipality must prepare a Disaster Management Plan/Framework for its area according to the circumstances prevailing in the area after consulting with District Municipality. The formulation and implementation of a Disaster Management plan/framework forms part of the IDP review process for the Hessequa Municipality.



The diagrams below briefly show how the Municipal Disaster Management Plan and the IDP interact:



Furthermore, it is also necessary to refer to terminology and concepts used in the document i.e. basic terminology used in the plan (glossary).

- Disaster
- Hazard
- Vulnerability
- Capacity
- Risk

### ***DISASTER MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENT STRATEGIES***

- 1) Initiate a process of Disaster mitigation within the Hessequa Municipal area. Suggested action and projects in this regard include the following:
  - Determine existing hazard risk and vulnerability
  - Promote awareness and the need to reduce and/or eliminate the identified risk and hazards

- Maintain a database on all identified risk and hazards to study trends and measure effectiveness of disaster management projects, programs and actions.
- 2) Undertake an audit of the preparedness of the Hessequa Municipality and other relevant role-players in dealing with disasters and potential disaster and devise mechanisms to deal with such disasters. Suggested actions and projects in this regard.
- Based in the identified risk and hazards, do a vulnerability assessment of all related risk and consequences
  - In response to identified disasters and potential disasters, develop contingency plans which will provide a comprehensive framework for disaster preparedness emergency operation and recovery activities.
  - Identify appropriate practical mechanisms and systems to be used to disseminate information warnings and operational guidelines.
- 3) Develop appropriate response mechanisms, procedures protocol and methodology to effectively deal with disasters suggested actions and projects in this regard include the following :
- Determine Agencies and role players to be involved
  - Determine the Resources that would be required
  - Determine the budgeting requirements and ensure that all participants in disaster management processes and procedures are adequately trained and equipped
- 4) Identify specific locations and/or communities at risk of disaster and put plans and procedures in place to ensure maximum readiness to deal with such disasters. Suggested actions and projects in this regard include the following.
- Avoid settlements in high risk areas, particularly in floodplains and geologically unstable areas
  - Ensure that geotechnical investigations are undertaken prior to development and that appropriate construction technologies are used.
  - Conduct public awareness and education programs, particularly emphasizing emergency contact numbers and emergency procedures.
  - Determine 1:50 and 1:100 year flood lines prior to development and prohibit development within these flood lines
  - Install new and additional fire hydrants throughout the Hessequa area
  - Establish a 24-hour control centre as contemplated in the Disaster Management Bill to serve the Hessequa Municipal area
  - Acquire equipment for this control centre
  - Establish linkages with districts, provincial disaster management bodies particularly in support of the development of the District Disaster Management Plan.
- 5) Enhance and expand fire stations in the Hessequa area. Suggested actions and projects in support of this strategy include the following :
- Establish satellite fire stations in areas e.g. Gouritsmond, Witsand, Slangrivier
  - Establish existing forums and their activities

- 6) Devise and implement appropriate recovery mechanisms as part of the integrated approach to disaster management in the Hessequa Municipality is an effort to minimize the future potential of hazards, risk and vulnerability suggested actions and projects in this regard include the following :
- Provide sustainable and cost effective development
  - Encourage community empowerment upliftment and self-development programs
  - Evaluate recovery actions to minimize future threats
  - Continually re-evaluate the policies on disaster management

### ***SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS***

The first element in the formulation of Disaster Management Plan is to gain an understanding of the territory, terrain and conditions of the area for which such Disaster Management is to be formulated. This will enable the formulation of response strategies based on the realities of the area and the potential disaster risk presented.

The following applies to the Hessequa municipal area and maps and charts should be prepared to represent information.

Element	Description	Implications for disaster management
Extent of the municipal area	The municipal area consist the formal TLC areas of Riversdale, Albertinia, Stilbaai, Heidelberg	N/a
Maximum distance between Riversdale and outer perimeter of area	Approximately 75 km	Impact on response time
Rivers	Breede River; Slangrivier; Goukourivier; Gouritsriver	Potential flooding during rainfall season
Typography	The typography of the areas and features such as mountains must be taken into account	Access may be problematic

Vegetation	Large areas of land are utilized for commercial farming, forestry and livestock	Fire hazards to be considered especially in terms of forestry
Rainfall season	Meteorological conditions  Winter rainfall are approximate annual rainfall 640 – 850 mm	Flooding in winter with the potential of fires during the summer
The N2 National Road	Infrastructure  Primary Transport corridor consisting of road and rail links runs from west (Cape Town) to the east (George) in a reasonable maintained condition. It is however under pressure because of an increasing number of trucks and busses using the roads.	Road access to the majority of the areas can relatively easily be obtained.
Internal roads	The Municipality has good linkages within and between the municipal areas due to the N2 National Road and numerous provincial roads.  Roads in the Municipality area are predominantly dirt roads. Dirt roads tend to be result in accessibility problems during heavy rains. Many of the internal roads are in a poor condition in need of maintenance or upgrading.	Hessequa towns can be fully serviced in times of disaster management but rural areas pose a serious problem due to access during the rainfall season and is problematic.
Railway lines	Only one railway line through Hessequa area.	Train accidents are possible and would need to be responded to.
Airports	There are and airstrip located in Riversdale and Stilbaai.	Airborne response can be utilized in disaster situations.
Bridge	On the border of the Hessequa and Mosselbay is the Gouritsriver bridge. In Riversdale the Soetmelksriver bridge and in Still Bay the Goukouriver bridge.	Provide access across rivers. If damaged accessibility problems need to be anticipated.
Electricity	The urban area of Hessequa towns and	Disaster may result from the

	immediate surroundings is largely provided with Eskom electricity.	misuse of alternative ways of energy/fuel including fires in informal settlements and veld fires.
Water	The population in town and some surrounding areas has access to tap water either on site, in the dwelling or at a public tap	Water quality consumed has impact on general health of the population and vulnerability to diseases.
Hospital	Social Infrastructure Riversdale provincial hospital serves the area to a limited capacity and referrals are made to other greater centre such as Mosselbay, George etc.	Services can be utilized in specific types of disaster management operations. Implications in terms of response times and appropriately reacting to situations.
Emergency services	*Police Stations (6) Stations located within Hessequa (Riversdale, Albertinia, Still Bay, Heidelberg, Slangrivier, Melkhoutfontein  *Fire Brigade Service (Eden District Municipality)	Implications in terms of response ability and response time
Community facilities and schools	Various facilities are provided throughout the area. These facilitations are however of a high standard or well maintained	A full audit of facilities to be undertaken to establish usability and potential in disaster situations
Urbanization	Population Population largely considered in rural areas	Emergency and disaster management services located in Riversdale and serve a dispersed community. This has implications for response time.

#### 4. POSSIBLE DISASTERS WITHIN THE HESSEQUA MUNICIPALITY

Various disasters could occur within an area some more likely or regular than others. Each disaster should be managed and planned for in an appropriate and effective way. The



following types of disaster could occur within the municipality of Hessequa and appropriate strategies and measures would be required to deal with these.

NATURAL DISASTERS		
Disaster	Repercussions	Coping mechanisms
Floods	Destruction of shelter	Emergency housing
Droughts	Destruction of food stocks	Transportation
Epidemics	Disruption to supply of electricity, water and sanitation services	Rescue of people
Fires		Taking care and feeding of victims
		Emergency medical care
		Dealing with death and burial arrangements
		Hospitalization and quarantine
		Emergency provision of water and Sanitation
		Fire fighting
		Documentation

#### ***HUMAN MADE DISASTERS***

Large scale traffic disasters	Destruction of shelter	Emergency housing
Gas explosion	Destruction of food stocks	Transportation
Toxic gasses/hazardous chemicals	Disruption to supply of electricity, water & sanitation services	Rescuing
Factory accidents		Taking care of and feeding of victims
Industrial and house fires	Traffic holdups	Emergency medical care
Train accidents		Dealing with deaths and burial arrangements
Air disasters		

Veld fires caused by humans  Influx		Hospitalization  Traffic control  Emergency provision of water  and sanitation  Fire fighting  Documentation
-------------------------------------------	--	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### ***PROJECTS***

The following project have been identified as critical for the successful implementation of as Disaster Management Plan for Hessequa Municipality.

#### **PROJECT 1 : STATUS QUO ANALYSIS**

Section 3 of this document outlined current circumstances prevalent in the Hessequa Municipality and implications thereof on disaster management. It is critical that this analysis be expanded to include all possible conditions and maps be drawn for these elements that need visual representation and understanding. Aerial photographs or detailed maps for mountain terrains for example could assist in determining appropriate responses to disasters in such areas and possible helicopter landing sites may be identified and predetermined in setting up procedural arrangements Possible sources of water could also be predetermined in dealing with bush fires or hazardous areas (floods, unstable soil, etc.) identified and responses planned according to specific conditions and circumstances

Action	Goals	Cost
Analysis	2011	R400,000

The entire Hessequa Municipal area needs to be analysed in detail with the aim of identifying all possible disasters, potential hazards and conditions that impact on how easy or difficult it would be in responding to such disasters and hazards.

#### **PROJECT 2**

##### **ANALYSIS OF POSSIBLE DISASTERS AND APPROPRIATE RESPONSE:**

Section 4 of this document outlined possible disasters and possible response implications. It is however essential that this be done in more detail, determining all possible disasters and potential hazards and the type of responses that would be required in dealing with disaster situations. This would be informed by the status quo analysis and in turn determine

equipment and personnel requirement, procedural response mechanisms financial resources etc.

Action	Goals	Cost
Early Warning System	2013	R700,000

### **PROJECT 3 :**

A control centre needs to be established in Riversdale serving the Hessequa Municipality in terms of its disaster management goals and objectives. This establishment of this control centre needs to take cognizance and addressing the following elements and requirements.

- Location together with structural and infrastructure requirements
- Equipment including vehicles
- Personnel : both permanent and voluntary
- Roles and responsibilities of the personnel
- Training of all personnel
- The needs and role of a disaster coordinating Committee
- Referrals to be utilized in dealing with disasters
- Procedures to be followed in dealing with disasters
- Linkages to District and Provincial disaster management networks and
- Financial resources and publications.

Action	Goals	Cost
Equipment	2012	R800,000



## HESSEQUA FIRE DEPARTMENT

The fire department has adopted a mission statement that reads:

*“The Hessequa fire department will strive to provide cost effective, high quality fire suppression and emergency services, public education and support service to the community”*

The fire department comprises of 30 full time equivalent employees. The principal function of the fire department is to provide to the community a service such as fire suppression and emergency services, fire prevention and public safety education mitigation of incident involving hazardous materials.

Fire Administration consist of

- 1 fire coordinator
- 1 fire chief
- 1 x senior fire officer
- 27 x fire fighters

These 27 fire officers work a twenty four hour on off schedule and are divided into 2 shifts – 14 personnel each. Each shift currently covers four fire stations with one fire engine, 3 Buffalo vehicles, 4 Bakkie Sakkies, 1 Rescue and fire fighting vehicle and on command

vehicle at all times. The coordinator is responsible for supervising all operations involving fire prevention inspections and public education.

### **COMMUNITY STRATEGIC PLAN :**

Indicators of growth include population

- Commercial, single family and multifamily residential construction continue to be strong
- Utility revenues continue to increase from year to year and are expected to maintain that pattern. Change in revenue has been affected by purchased power, cost rate changing, and weather conditions.
- Economic and fiscal indicators demonstrate that the local economy has shown moderate and sustained growth. The growth has tempered in the past two years directly impacting the Hessequa ability to provide services. Over the next five years the Fire Brigade will continue to strive towards implementation of the fire protection plan presented to Council.

### **SWOT ANALYSIS:**

The following is an analysis of strengths, weaknesses & opportunities apparent to the fire department.

Strengths :

- Public perception of and satisfaction with the fire department
- Quality personnel
- Community growth
- High quality equipment

Weaknesses:

- Number of personnel needed to meet the demands for inspections and public education service
- Number and location of facilities
- Lack of possible revenue

Opportunities:

- Community growth
- Citizen involvement through (volunteers)
- Emerging technology

Threats

- Community growth
- Increased demands for services
- Shifts in strategic priorities
- Citizen expectations

Strategies for addressing swot analysis:

The fire department master planning terms is committed to better planning in the determination of the central fire and EMS facilities consistent with the needs of an adequate public facility plan: e.g. achieve a 15 minute response time to 90% of the community in the Hessequa area.

We are not so ingenuous as to expect to be capable of delivering emergency services to all areas in our region within this timeframe. However we do aspire to. And are dedicated to, the delivery of emergency assistance to our taxpayers in a manner that will have positive results.

To properly plan for the funding of a fire station, information and cost for architectural and engineering design construction, equipment purchase and personnel selection and training is needed. The fire department re-affirm the following recommendations for a 5 year plan.

- 1) 3 additional stations to serve established areas that are outside acceptable response criteria (Gouritzmond, Witsand, Slangrivier)
- 2) Relocation of station for better service to projected growth areas

Budgetary Impact: Although the recommendation that have been made by the Fire Department and this proposal implementation schedule may seem to be very aggressive, the municipality have a responsibility to the taxpayers in the Municipal area.

## Firebreak Program 2012 - 2017

Proposed Schedule for Maintenance of Current Firebreaks							
Town	Ward	KM	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17
Albertinia	2	1.5	5000	5000	6000	7000	7900
Gouritsmond	1	9.1	20000	20000	22000	24000	28000
Stilbaai	3	17	45000	45000	47000	50000	55000
Stilbaai/Duine	1	3.8	9000	9000	10000	11000	13000
Preekstoel	1	1.7	8000	8000	10000	11000	12000
Monquini/Beach	1	2	7000	7000	7000	8000	9500
Jongensfontein	3	3.8	6000	6000	6000	7000	7800
Heidelberg	5	2	4000	4000	5000	6000	6000
Witsand	4	2	6000	6000	8000	9000	10000
Melkhoutfontein	1	8	30000	30000	35000	38000	42000
Pauline Bohnen	1	7	40000	45000	49000	55000	58000
<b>Total</b>			180000	185000	205000	226000	

Proposed Schedule for new Firebreaks							
Town	Ward	KM	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17
Albertinia	2	3				12500	
Gouritsmond	1	2.8			13000		
Stilbaai	3	1.5					14000
Melkhoutfontein	1	4		16000			
Preekstoel	1	3	16387				
Pauline Bohnen	1	7		30000			
<b>TOTAAL</b>			16387	46000	13000	12500	

Expansion of Maintenance Plan due to new Firebreaks			
Town	Year	KM	Ward
Albertinia	2015	3	2
Gouritsmond	2014	2.8	1
Stilbaai	2013	1.5	3
Melkhoutfontein	2016	6.8*	1
Preekstoel	2012	1.5*	1
Pauline Bohnen	2012	7*	1
*High Risk			



## **FOCUS AREA 5:**

### **HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INITIATIVES TO ENHANCE THE SOCIAL WELL-BEING OF ALL OUR PEOPLE**

#### **Introduction**

- ▣ The then Riversdale Multi-Purpose Centre was completed in 2004 and was officially opened on 23 October 2004 by the then minister of Social services and Poverty alleviation, Minister K.Mgulwana.
- ▣ The centre was registered as an NPO with the Department of Social Development and was managed by a Management Committee.
- ▣ The centre was funded by the Department Social Services and all Operational and Programme funding were administered by the Hessequa Municipality.
- ▣ The agreement was that this function would be handed over to the Hessequa Municipality after a period of three ( 3 ) years, but that the programme funding would still be covered by the Department of Social Development.

#### **1.1.1 Current Status**

- ▣ In 2007, the Centre was taken up within the Hessequa IDP, and accordingly budgeted for.
- ▣ The municipality has taken ownership of the Centre as from 1 July 2008.
- ▣ The Management Committee was then dissolved.
- ▣ The Centre staff has also been appointed on a permanent basis by the Municipality.
- ▣ The center was taken up within the Department Community services.
- ▣ A council decision was made to change the name of the center from the Riversdale Thusong Service Centre to Hessequa Thusong Service Centre in 2010.
- ▣ The Hessequa Thusong Service Centre is situated in Riversdale and serves as hub for the other service points in the greater Hessequa area.



#### **b. Capital Funding**

The capital funding, for the extension of the old church hall into a Multi-Purpose Centre, was funded by the Department of Social Services.

#### **c. Statistics of services rendered during 1 April 2011 to 30 March 2012**

Statistics includes the Hessequa Thusong Centre and Satellite service Points.

Service Provider	Public/ Private/Civil Society	Services Rendered	Frequency	Total Beneficiaries reached for annum
Dept. Home Affairs	Public	Registration of births, I.D. documents, passports, etc.	Twice per month	8760
Dept. of Labour	Public	Applications for UIF and Labour Issues	Twice per month	4077
ALL PAY	Public	Pay Outs	Three times per month	36770
SARS	Public	Tax clearances, registrations, education etc.	Twice per month	631
CCMA	Public	Hearings	Three/ Four times per month	165
Meetings/ Ngo's/ Political organisations/ Local Municipality/ Hall bookings ( weddings, birthdays etc. )	Civil Society	Conference and Hall facilities	Monthly/ Weekends	

**TOTAL BENEFICIARIES REACHED THIS ANNUM : 50403**

## Hessequa Thusong Service Centre Strategic Plan for 2012/13

### Introduction

- Social development is a fairly new notion within municipalities. The concept was introduced to municipalities in 2006, in line with the campaign of transforming municipalities as “developmental agencies” within the new dispensation.
- The White Paper on Local Government defines developmental local government as the level of government committed to working with citizens and groups within the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs and improve the quality of their lives.

- Within Hessequa Municipality, Social and Community development started in March 2007, as the Social and Community Unit in the office of the Deputy Municipal Manager. In 2007 the unit was moved to the Directorate Socio Economic Development and housing Services as the Department Social and Community Development. The department expanded to also include more people to assist with issues of vulnerable groups, namely children, elderly and people living on the street. All of these vulnerable groups are affected by the cross cutting issues of crime, poverty, substance abuse and HIV/AIDS.
- The function of Library Services is also moved to form part of this department.

### **Vision, Aim and Purpose**

- The vision of the department is the social and economic development, upliftment and empowerment of youth, women, the disabled, children, the elderly and people living on the street and people with HIV & AIDS within the boundaries of the Greater Hessequa.
- It plans to do so through a process of facilitation, co-ordination and networking with services rendered by role players (inter-governmental and NGO's) in the field. This does not mean that the department will not undertake programs of its own, but that it will be selective in deciding on programs of own initiative in order to prevent duplication of services.
- Our aim is to ensure that Hessequa Municipality delivers on its mandate as a developmental agent by mainstreaming the Rights Based Approach through all service delivery.
- The purpose of this is to ensure that the rights of the vulnerable people within our boundaries are protected and that cognisance of their needs is taken in service delivery by the Municipality thereby contributing towards poverty alleviation and development among these vulnerable **groups**.

**The related vision for social development can then be proposed as:**

***An integrated system of social development services that facilitates human development and improves the quality of life for all the people of Hessequa.***

### **2.2 Mission**

- Promote integrated Social development and Developmental Social Services that will be accessible, affordable and appropriate to disadvantaged communities.
- To promote Developmental Social Welfare aimed at the youth the aged, disabled persons, families, children and the empowerment of women.
- Promote comprehensive service delivery through a sustainable Multi-Purpose Centre.
- To improve the quality of life of the total community within the Hessequa Municipal area through the provision of appropriate and accessible Developmental Community Services in collaboration with the communities to be served as well as other partners in a suitable manner.

- Promote integrated arts, cultural, capacity building and sport programmes and services that are accessible and address the cultural and recreational needs of the community, with special emphasis on the youth.

**The Mission of the Department of Social Development can be proposed as:**

***To ensure the provision of comprehensive, integrated, sustainable and high quality social development services against vulnerability and poverty, and to create an enabling environment for sustainable development in partnership with those committed to building a caring society.***

### 2.3 Strategic Objectives

Programme	Action	Objectives	Time frames	Outcomes What impact
Sustainable Livelihoods	<p>Create and update database of unemployed people within Hessequa</p> <p>Encourage unemployed on database to participate in training and skills development programmes such as :</p> <p>ICT training ( information communication technology</p> <p>Entrepreneurial training (Tender procedures, financial management, legal aspects of business, placement, business plans, marketing, Tax, networking etc.)</p> <p>Arts and Crafts A</p>	<p>To help economically vulnerable people discover their strengths and potential</p> <p>To identify high risk individuals and offer opportunities to learn skills that are marketable</p> <p>To ensure the provision of a range of after – care services that facilitate economic self – reliance for individuals, families and communities</p> <p>A sustainable livelihood (asset based) approach is integrated into the planning processes of the Centre by 30 June 2010.</p> <p>Integrated poverty reduction programmes are implemented in compliance with the integrated poverty reduction strategy</p> <p>Establish a network of learning and support services that build on</p>	August 2012- June 2013	<p>Operational plans reflect sustainable livelihood ( asset based ) approach</p> <p>Number of integrated poverty reduction programmes</p> <p>Departments and other relevant stakeholders commit resources to integrated programmes</p> <p>Number of beneficiaries reached through the poverty programmes</p>

		strengths based principles and enhances sustainable community functioning by June 2010		
HIV / AIDS	<p>Education and awareness, treatment care and special events. These includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information sessions at taverns, businesses,</li> <li>• Distributions of condoms, School camps, training in food gardening, clothing banks and major awareness days on Youth, Women, World Aids day, Heritage day</li> <li>• Create one Youth friendly Health Facility</li> </ul>	<p>To increase the knowledge pertaining the HIV/ AIDS situation.</p> <p>Reducing the amount of new cases of HIV/ AIDS.</p> <p>To urge especially young people to make informed choices regarding their sexual life.</p>	ONGOING	<p>To reduce the number of HIV/ AIDS cases.</p> <p>To improve the circumstances of Aids orphans</p> <p>To support Aids victims</p> <p>Building of a Healthy community</p>
Substance Abuse	<p>Campaigns ( Alcohol and drug abuse and organise crime)</p> <p>Establish support groups</p> <p>Youth camps</p>	To increase the size and scope of Substance abuse programmes with the aim on early intervention programmes.	on-going	Sustainable programs to ensure that especially youth to take control of their own life's
Children and Families	<p>Draft policies for youth, gender, disability, children, elderly and people living on the street and HIV &amp; AIDS</p> <p>Family days</p> <p>Co –ordinate and facilitate services rendered by role players focusing on Families and children</p> <p>Link with relevant service providers providing safety nets and raise awareness</p>	Care , protect and develop vulnerable groups and people with special needs	June 2012 – July 2013	Establishment of structures for Children and Families in collaboration with role players in the community
Disability Services	<p>Protective workshops/ employment</p> <p>Awareness on the rights of people living with disability</p>	To ensure a more integrated collaborative approach to facilitate the	On-going	To have a disable policy in place to guide council in terms of issues facing people with disability

	Mainstreaming issues affecting people living with disabilities within service delivery of the centre	mainstreaming of issues of people with disabilities  The economic empowerment of people with disabilities		The establishment of policy for disable people to make use of facilities to gain access to information and buildings
Institutional Capacity	Do skills and needs assessment within the department  Capacity building programmes	To equip people with the necessary skills to better their working environment	June 2012 – July 2013	Number of trained people within the department
Youth Development	<p>Projects : Train the trainer workshops (HIV/AIDS, Mentoring and Home based Care volunteers.</p> <p>The establishment of a Hessequa youth council to monitor the needs of young people.</p> <p>HIV/AIDS, Drug&amp; Alcohol abuse, Environmental Management, Crime Prevention awareness programmes.</p> <p>Programmes on career choices, After care, Computer literacy, Drivers licence, Entrepreneurial training, Personal management training etc.</p> <p>To give bursaries to best students in their respective schools focussing on Maths &amp; Science.</p> <p>Promote sport amongst young people in line with government's vision.</p> <p>Giving life skills to the youth with the emphasis on Street Children</p>	<p>To implement different preventatory programmes</p> <p>Life skills development</p> <p>Develop intervention strategies</p> <p>Establishment of a Hessequa youth council</p> <p>Education and Training projects</p> <p>Sport development</p>	June 2012 – July 2013	<p>Decrease in youth delinquency</p> <p>Alleviation of poverty</p> <p>Decrease in tendency to do crime</p> <p>To Create a self-reliant community</p>
Older People	Awareness programs on the rights of older people	To co-ordinate and facilitate services rendered by role	June 2012 – July	Eradication of violence against older people in

	Service clubs  Sporting codes and support programmes for older people	players focusing on older people  To be aware of the needs relating to issues of older people and address it through mainstreaming within the IDP of the Municipality and linking them with budget resources and in other spheres of government	2013	communities  Increase independence
Sport & Culture	Establishment of Ward sport forums Sporting clinics Infrastructure development Sport Awards Celebrating Cultural days Culture Awareness programmes Library days Literacy days and activities	To promote sport and cultural development as a tool of crime prevention and healthy live stiles within the community	June 2012 – July 2013	The establishment of a Sport culture within the Hessequa  Awareness of our rich cultural heritage by developing a pride in history and culture of our nation, hence bringing together different cultures to celebrate our diversity and togetherness

## 2.4 Batho Pele principles

An analysis of the Public Participation process of Hessequa Municipality shows that the municipality is well placed in terms of best practices for public participation in terms of:

- Strategically engaging with communities
- Having appropriate structures and actions in place
- Providing resources and logistics for public dialogue
- Recording processes and disseminating the results
- Contemplating the details of public inputs and factoring these into planning
- Setting the wheels in motion to involve communities in the implementation

The process followed to date to promote on-going dialogue covered a number of initiatives, including:

- Conducting Imbizos
- Organising Summits
- Promoting the establishment of forums
- Weekly feedback on services via the local Radio station
- Capacity building and training initiatives

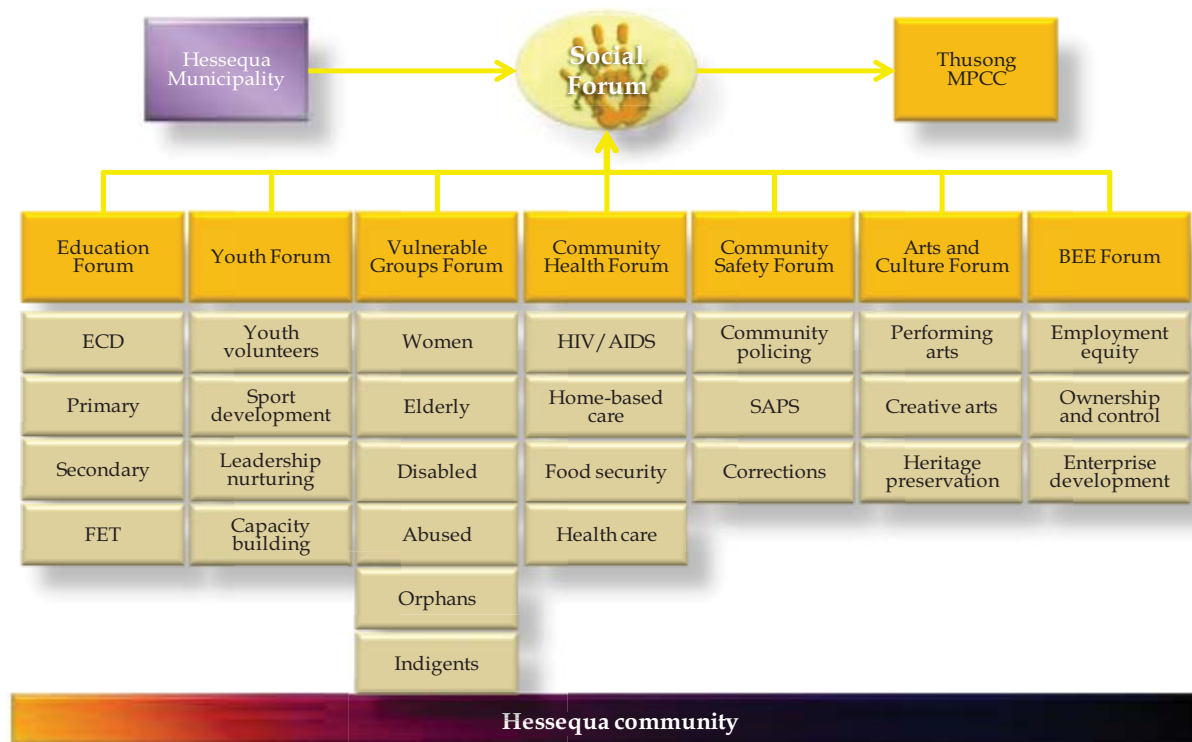
The details of the platforms for social dialogue in Hessequa are given below:

Sector	Nature of engagement	Structures for on-going dialogue
--------	----------------------	----------------------------------



Tourism	Workshops with community, tourism structures, product owners, district, province and national	Local Tourism Organisation Tourism Information Access points Community Tourism Forums Tourism Interns
Business	Workshops with local business chambers, advisory committees, business owners	Hessequa Business Chamber Local Chambers, including BEE Chamber and agricultural group
Education	Community, schools, teachers, learners	Education is a standing item for discussion in Ward Committee meetings On-going discussion at school level and ECD and FET structures
Youth	Initial summit for Local youth, CDW's, district, government agencies	Volunteers and CDW's Proposed Youth Forum
Arts / Culture /Sport	Organised meetings with representatives from the sector and provincial representatives	Proposed regional arts /culture and Sports body
Vulnerable Groups	Initial summit for communities, NGO's, district representatives and provincial government officials. Service providers consult with their constituencies to propose meaningful interventions	Proposed regional framework for vulnerable groups
Community Safety	Communities, community safety forums, local authorities, SAPS, the Department of Justice and NGO's	Hessequa Municipal Community Safety Plan implementation. Proposed Community Safety Forum
Environment	Representatives from each of the eight towns from any formal or informal groups or organisations and individuals with specialist knowledge and experience	Hessequa Environmental Advice Committee
BBBEE	Community, councillors, municipal officials and entrepreneurs	BEE Forum Hessequa BEE Business Chamber

### Hessequa Social Forum



The sectoral focus areas and their subdivisions relating to specific activities are shown according to the current situation in Hessequa. Strategically Hessequa Municipality needs to coordinate these activities through a Social Forum and provide a central contact point at the Thusong Centre in Riversdale. The composition of the Social Forum can be structured to include the following representatives:

- Municipal representatives
  - Executive, Management, Department
- Sectoral representation
  - Forum heads
- Service organisation representatives
  - Organisation heads
- Centralise actions in Thusong Centre
  - One contact point for social actions

In addition the Municipality can facilitate the dialogue and action by:

- Providing a secretariat
- Mobilising CDW's for specific social actions

### 3 Six Block Model



#### 3.1 The Current Hessequa Thusong Service Centre Basket of Services

District Municipality	Local Municipality	Office Space allocation	Service Providers
		Permanent	

EDEN	HESSEQUA		Cape Access
		Temporary office space	South African Revenue Services (SARS)
			Dept. of Home Affairs
			Dept. of Labour
			CCMA
			ALL PAY

### 3.1.1 List of Outstanding Departments according to the Six Block Model

#### Public Services

Office space Allocation	Service Provider
Permanent	Dept. Home Affairs / Access to official personal documents Dept. Labour / Unemployment Insurance fund, Unemployment Data Base.
Temporary	Dept. Health- Education, awareness, Health services

#### Education and Skills Development Services

Office Space Allocation	Service Provider
Permanent	Dept. Education/ Bursaries information on registration to colleges

#### Local Economic Development

Office space Allocation	Service Provider
Temporary	SEDA/ Small business advice, support and development

#### Information and Communication Activities

Office space Allocation	Service Provider
Temporary	GCIS / Communication of government information and on-site guidance regarding services

### Plan of Action to address community needs

Hessequa Thusong Service Centre Action Plan				
#	Action	Responsible official	Stakeholders involved	Timelines

Establish a permanent Home Affairs office at the Thusong Service Centre				
1	Arrange a meeting with the Department of Home Affairs	Thusong Service Centre Manager and Manager Social Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Social Development and Regional Home affairs office	August 2012
2	Write an item to Council on the Establishment of a Home Affairs Stakeholder Forum within Hessequa	Thusong Service Centre Manager/ Manager Socio Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Social Development and Local Council	August 2012
3	Arrange a meeting with Home Affairs Provincial Office	Thusong Service Centre Manager/ Manager Socio Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Socio development and Home Affairs Provincial Office	Sept. 2012
#	Action	Responsible official	Stakeholders involved	Timelines
Establish a permanent Labour office at the Thusong Service Centre				
1	Arrange a meeting with the Department of Labour	Thusong Service Centre Manager and Manager Social Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Social Development and Regional Department of Labour office	August 2012
2	Arrange a meeting with Department of Labour Provincial Office	Thusong Service Centre Manager/ Manager Socio Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Socio development and Department of Labour Provincial Office	Sept. 2012
#	Action	Responsible official	Stakeholders involved	Timelines
Establish a Temporary Health Service at the Thusong Service Centre				
1	Arrange a meeting with the Department of Health Locally	Thusong Service Centre Manager and Manager Social Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Social Development the local Health department	Sept 2012
Action		Responsible official	Stakeholders involved	Timelines
Expanding the education services offered at the Thusong Service Centre				

Arrange a meeting with the Department of Education	Thusong Service Centre Manager and Manager Social Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Social Development and Regional Department of Education	Sept. 2012
Arrange a meeting with Colleges and Universities in the area	Thusong Service Centre Manager/ Manager Socio Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Socio Development and communication offices at colleges	Oct. 2012
Action	Responsible official	Stakeholders involved	Timelines
Establishing a Temporary SEDA office at the Thusong Service Centre			
Arrange a meeting with the SEDA Regional office	Thusong Service Centre Manager and Manager Social Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Social Development and Regional SEDA office	Sept. 2012
Action	Responsible official	Stakeholders involved	Timelines
Establishing a Temporary GCIS office at the Thusong Service Centre			
Arrange a meeting with the GCIS Regional and Provincial office	Thusong Service Centre Manager and Manager Social Development	Thusong Service Centre Manager, Manager Social Development and Regional and Provincial GCIS office's	Sept. 2012

## **FOCUS AREA 6: LIMITING THE IMPACT OF OUR PRESENCE IN THE NATURAL ENVIRONMENT AND RE-ESTABLISHING A HERITAGE OF PRESERVATION**

### **Environmental Management – Way Forward**

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism defines integrated environmental management (IEM) as a comprehensive philosophical framework for assessing and managing each phase of any action at any level (i.e. plan, policy, programme or project) that affects or interacts (based on the ISO 140001 specifications) with the environment (defined as the human context of existence explicitly considering the biophysical, institutional and socioeconomic parts) which is universally applicable in society (DEAT 2004a).

A need for an Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP) for Hessequa Municipality was identified by Council as they recognized the importance of managing our natural resources in a sustainable fashion. They realized that the equilibrium needs to be defined between preservation and utilization of these resources and therefore came up with a strategy and a means. Strategy and means takes on the form of an Integrated Environmental Management Plan which will help to govern and direct the environmental thinking and decision making processes in the local government ambit. It is essential that all Departments of Hessequa Municipality have access to current, efficient and relevant environmental information which can assist in strategic and project level development planning.

An IEMP will form part of the Hessequa Municipal Integrated Development Plan (IDP) by means of a sector plan which is legally required in terms of the IDP Process Guidepacks. Incorporation of the IEMP with the IDP will essentially guarantee that environmental best practices are integrated with the outcomes of the IDP process.

#### ***BASIC PRICIPLES OF INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT***

The basic principles underpinning IEM are that there be:

1. informed decision-making;
2. accountability for information on which decisions are taken;
3. accountability for decisions taken;

4. a broad meaning given to the term *environment* (i.e. one that includes physical, biological, social, economic, cultural, historical and political components);
5. an open, participatory approach in the planning of proposals;
6. consultation with interested and affected parties;
7. due consideration of alternative options;
8. an attempt to mitigate negative impacts and enhance positive aspects of proposals;
9. an attempt to ensure that the 'social costs' of development proposals (those borne by society, rather than the developers) be outweighed by the 'social benefits' (benefits to society as a result of the actions of the developers);
10. democratic regard for individual rights and obligations;
11. compliance with these principles during all stages of the planning, implementation and decommissioning of proposals (i.e. from "cradle to grave"), and the opportunity for public and specialist input in decision-making processes.

#### **UNDERLYING PHILOSOPHY OF THE PROPOSED IEMP**

- Pollution clean-up → *pollution prevention*
- Waste disposal → *waste prevention and reduction*
- Protecting the species → *protecting the habitat where they live*
- Environmental degradation → *environmental restoration*
- Increased resource use → *more efficient resource use*

#### **BROAD THEMES UNDERLYING A HESSEQUA MUNICIPAL IEMP.:**

THEME	TOOL - Mandated	STATUS QUO
1. State of the Environment	State of the Environment Report	Done - 2007
2. Coastal Management	Coastal Management Program – Integrated Coastal Management Act	Process – Complete in 2013
3. Air Quality Management	Air Quality Management Plan – Air Quality Management Act	Process– Complete in 2014
4. Biodiversity	Biodiversity Sector Plans	Done - 2010



5. Solid Waste Management	Waste Management Plan - ?	?
6. River Health	River Management Plan	?
7. Estuary Management	Estuary Management Plan – Integrated Coastal Management Act	1. Gourits Estuary – Done 2. Goukou Estuary – Draft 3. Duiwenhoks – 2013/14 4. Breede Estuary - Done
8. Land Use	Spatial Development Framework – LUPO/Municipal Systems Act	Done - 2012
9. Water Management a. Drinkable Water b. Waste Water	Water Management Plan - ?	?
10. Green Energy	Green Energy Program/ Policy	?
11. Climate Change	Climate Change Policy - ?	?
12. Tourism		
13. Community Health and Safety	a. Training and Awareness Programme. b. Community Based Management and Training	?
14. Integration of Municipal Departments	Municipal Integration Policy	?

#### ***STEPS IN COMPILING AN IEMP.***

For Hessequa Municipality the next step in the IEMP process will be updating the existing State of the Environment Report, this will present us with the status quo of our municipal resources and those we are responsible for. It will provide a baseline assessment of environmental conditions and pressures within the municipality and municipal area, therefore assisting in prioritizing the important issues and mobilizing our resources accordingly.

## **FOCUS AREA 7: TO STIMULATE ECONOMIC GROWTH FOR THE BENEFIT OF ALL LOCAL COMMUNITIES**

### **Economic Development Planning**

The need for growth and transformation in the Hessequa economy as a precondition for sustainability is made at the beginning of the LED Strategy document. This is linked to addressing inequality to eradicate poverty. A coordinated approach is advocated in which:

*“LED strategies can help achieve more coordinated and efficient economic growth, while working to promote and protect environmental resources and social and cultural values”.*

The LED Strategy document states that local economic development:

- Must contribute towards the eradication of poverty, and that:
- Jobs must be created for local people,
- Access to opportunities must be facilitated in order for previously disadvantaged communities to make use of them,
- The inequalities of the past need pro-active attention,
- Vulnerable groups (e.g. Youth, women and elderly) need special attention and
- The resources and initiatives of the private and public sectors, including resources of civil society must be mobilised.

The LED Strategy goes on to identify the core competencies for which the Hessequa Municipality should assume responsibility. These include:

- Marketing for investment promotion
- Support services for small business including access to finance
- Assistance to targeted growth sectors
- Tailoring of training and labour placement to local labour market conditions
- Capacitating and transformation
- Integrating and coordinating

The generic objectives set in the LED Strategy are:

- Poverty eradication
- Protect natural capital
- Reduce income disparity
- Increase business/investment and job-creation
- Expand existing local businesses and retain local jobs
- Retain wealth within the local area
- Increase economic stability
- Increase economic self-reliance
- Promote economic diversity and resilience

The specific strategic objectives proposed for Hessequa LED are:

- i. Grow and transform the 1st economy – more than the 6% national target by 2014; 4.5% till then.

- ii. Graduation people / entrepreneurs from the 2nd economy – need to begin to set Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant and Time bound objectives. One would (at least) strive that in further 5-years, the presence of black businesses in the first economy will be noticeable.
- iii. Creating sustainable job opportunities – reduce unemployment rates by 50% by 2014, thus a specific number of jobs need to be created.
- iv. Eradication of poverty – in terms of the Millennium Development goals – halve by 2014. Use qualified recipients (households) for indigent support proxy.

The action plan to achieve the future vision for Hessequa proposed in the LED Strategy involves:

- Developing the Human Resources of Hessequa
- Providing a system of business support
- Introducing poverty eradication strategies
- Streamline the regulatory environment and service delivery – reduce the cost of doing business

### Framework for Economic Development 2013 – 2014

The Constitution (Act No. 108 of 1996) places great responsibility on municipalities to facilitate local economic development. However the schedule in the Constitution (Act No. 108 of 1996) that lists the functions of municipalities excludes LED as a function. This in the past has led to believe that LED is an unfunded mandate. The White Paper on Local Government (1998) introduces the concept of “developmental local government” which is defined as “Local Government committed to working with citizens and groups within the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs and to improve the quality of lives”. However the same document makes it clear that local government is not directly responsible for creating jobs. Rather it is responsible for the taking of active steps to ensure that the overall economic and social conditions of the locality are conducive to the creation of employment opportunities. Thus local economic development is about creating a platform and environment to engage stakeholders in implementing strategies and programmes. The five year implementation plan (2006-2011) of the local government includes LED as one of the five key performance areas for local government. This implementation plan places the onus on local authorities to develop and implement realistic credible LED plans.

## **2.2. TOURISM**

*The White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism* is the overarching policy framework and guideline for tourism development in South Africa. A range of constraints to the development of tourism, ranging from inadequate funding and resources, limited integration of local communities and previously neglected groups

into tourism, inadequate protection of the environment to lack of infrastructure and growing levels of crime and violence on visitors are identified.

The White Paper identifies tourism as a sector which could provide the nation with an, ‘*engine of growth, capable of dynamising and rejuvenating other sectors of the economy.*’ This was due in part to tourism’s capacity to generate significant employment while creating considerable entrepreneurial opportunities and potential for linkages. Two elements of the White Paper are of particular relevance.

The first aspect is the way in which the White Paper describes local government’s tourism roles and responsibilities.

#### 2.2.1. **Tourism roles and functions of local government**

The *White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism* sets out a range of roles and responsibilities of local government in fulfilling the function of “local tourism”. Institutional guidelines provided by DEAT in 1999 elaborate on the division of role and responsibilities between the spheres of government. The White Paper and DEAT guidelines identify the following categories of functions to be delivered at a local level by local government:

- Destination planning and policymaking
- Destination development and management
- Tourism product development
- Tourism training and capacity-building
- Coordination in respect of tourism matters
- Tourism research
- Provision of tourist infrastructure and services
- Tourism marketing strategy, planning, facilitation and implementation
- Tourism information provision
- Regulation and monitoring

Secondly, the White Paper sets a particular vision for tourism development in South Africa.

#### 2.2.2. **Responsible Tourism**

The White Paper foresightedly proposed to develop and manage the tourism industry in a *responsible and sustainable manner in order that the South African tourism industry would become a leader in responsible environmental practices*. Responsible Tourism is about providing better holiday experiences for guests while creating and sustaining good business opportunities for tourism enterprises. It is also about enabling local communities to enjoy a better quality of life through increased socio-economic benefits and an improved environment. In the spirit of equitable and

sustainable tourism development, the DEAT developed the South African National Responsible Tourism Guidelines over the course of 2013. The Guidelines were developed to provide national indicators to enable industry to demonstrate progress towards the principles of Responsible Tourism embodied in the 1996 White Paper.

### **2.2.3. *Provincial tourism policy and strategy***

The key messages of White Paper on Sustainable Tourism Development and Promotion in the Western Cape, 2001, centre around the recognition of the economic significance of tourism to the provincial economy, the importance of promoting sustainable tourism activities and attractions, and the promotion of co-ordinated tourism development. The tourism policy is based on the fundamental principles of social equity, environmental integrity, economic empowerment, co-operation and partnership and sustainability. The challenges of transforming the society and economy of the Western Cape are the key driving forces directing the policy.

## **3.1. STATUS QUO OF HESSEQUA LED STRATEGY**

Hessequa Municipality compiled a LED Strategy in 2005, which captures the main principles of all the relevant policy and legislative framework. The strategy compiled can be seen as comprehensive and can be used as a reference document. Some key actions identified during 2005, would still be relevant to pursue. The strategy document provides a synopsis of the local economy then and as mentioned can be used as a reference document in the review and amendment of the LED Strategy.

## **3.2. STATUS QUO OF TOURISM IN THE HESSEQUA MUNICIPAL AREA**

The Hessequa Tourism Strategy 2008 shows a systematic approach to identifying the key issues in the growth of Hessequa Tourism. The main considerations are that:

- Hessequa will be a brand-recognised tourism destination,
- that the development of more effective institutional frameworks is needed,
- that there is a need for jointly planning and implementing sustainable projects and programmes.
- The need to streamline and operationally formalise Hessequa's tourism information and marketing body and its co-operation with all other relevant public support agencies.
- It is important to address the skewed participation in Hessequa tourism through BEE-related initiatives.

The document goes on to set strategies for addressing critical challenges as well as dealing with financing the promotion and initiation of Hessequa's tourism. It lists potential funding sources for tourism-related support. Some insights into possible stakeholder interaction, progress monitoring and priority action are given and the document ends with a section on priority action.

The key elements of the implementation plan documents the process and outcomes of the stakeholder engagement in the tourism sector and provides details of the LTO establishment process. The constructive dialogue with a wide range of stakeholders forms the basis for the implementation plan.

Tourism in the Hessequa Municipal Area and its related components and activities have not been managed and developed in accordance with a clear, collective policy and strategy. As a result, the various components of the industry are largely uncoordinated and inwardly focused. This has resulted in *ad hoc* and fragmented strategies / interventions which failed to capitalise on our diverse tourism resources, thereby limiting the ability of the tourism sector to effectively provide much-needed entrepreneurship, employment and skills development opportunities.

## **PROPOSED PROCESS PLAN FOR REVIEWING OF THE LED & TOURISM STRATEGIES**

In order to derive at a credible LED Strategy and Tourism Plan, it is proposed to conduct a PACA Process, whereby all stakeholders would jointly participate in providing strategic decision making. The objectives of the PACA Process would be as follow:

The objectives of the workshop were as follows:

- To move towards a common understanding, cooperation and good governance in Local Economic Development.
- To assess where we are with Local Economic Development (Benchmarking)
- To position the Hessequa Area for a new Economic Development Growth Path by identifying the critical success factors and drivers .i.e. tourism.
- To chart the way forward – next steps towards a shared strategic vision and practical priorities

The Department of Economic Development and Tourism (Western Cape) in principle indicated that Hessequa Municipality has been identified for a

capacity building process. Attached Appendix I – Letter of Intent received from the Department

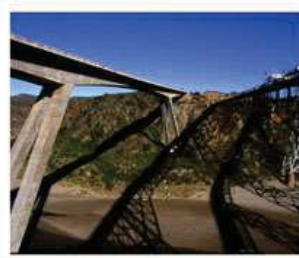
NR	ACTION	COMPLETION
1.	Summarise the key findings of the 2005 LED Strategy and Hessequa Implementation Plan (2008)	<b>30 MAY 2013</b>
2.	Establish a broad database of all relevant stakeholders within Hessequa Municipal Area in preparatory for various consultations / workshops. – Placement of local advert to register on municipal database. (Placed advertisements – closing date 24 May 2013)	<b>30 MAY 2013</b>
3.	Conduct PACA Process (Dept indicated Hessequa has been identified, will know by 15 April 2013 about final approval and proposed dates).	<b>August 2013</b>
4.	PACA Process to identify relevant programmes and actions. Update of LED Strategy and implementation Plan.	<b>September 2013</b>





Integrated

Area Plans



## INTEGRATED AREA PLANS

### Albertinia

#### Introduction

Albertinia is one of the smaller inland towns of the Hessequa Municipality. It is located on the N2 and about 40km's east of Riversdale and 40km's west of Mosselbay. Albertinia have struggled to develop ways to tap into the economic resource of the N2 and is characterised by the two aloe product factories and two fuel stations next to the N2.

Before 2000 Albertinia was a municipality on its own and became part of the Hessequa region as it forms part of the amalgamation process of municipalities in 2000. The following tables attempts to create a profile of the people living in Albertinia. The StatsSA datasets that were used, allows for the town to be analysed in two neighbourhoods, but jointly, still forms the twon Albertinia.

Population Group & Gender Totals								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	51	66	67	276	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	433	42	1122	2076	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	0	2	3	10	9	31	30	100
White	265	543	288	52	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	10	0	14	0	38	0	158
Total	749	663	1480	2428	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	41	66	42	270	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	455	40	1280	2208	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	0	1	0	6	6	36	15	99
White	284	631	362	53	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	5	0	3	0	20	0	76
Total	779	743	1684	2538	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	92	132	109	545	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	888	82	2402	4284	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	0	3	3	16	15	67	45	199
White	549	1174	650	105	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	15	0	17	0	59	0	235
Total	1529	1406	3163	4966	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	1454	1132	3040	4750	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	66	111	42	66	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	3	2	79	56	206	177	742	1066
Other	6	160	3	94	75	314	186	2177
Total	1529	1406	3163	4966	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	446	161	891	1403	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	470	276	1001	1619	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	473	575	1029	1716	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	138	393	242	229	592	741	3571	5381
Total	1529	1406	3163	4966	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	113	28	261	255	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	47	11	129	161	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	56	6	95	192	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	69	8	131	202	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	77	20	159	205	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	100	17	239	279	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	143	25	238	393	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	97	31	272	404	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	132	87	307	564	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	69	51	158	409	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	190	289	282	360	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	33	48	102	195	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	228	455	396	556	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	42	149	142	69	608	843	2967	3829
Other	133	180	255	721	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	1529	1406	3163	4966	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	465	353	981	1545	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	84	57	141	582	258	225	2304	2803
Other	370	411	904	1180	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	919	821	2025	3307	8655	8376	28277	33987

Dwelling Type								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	466	591	883	1539	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	12	7	0	8	102	74	529	772
Other	6	2	8	3	25	32	119	91
Total	484	601	891	1550	3519	3646	12630	15873

Annual Household Income								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	13	93	48	109	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	27	1	28	42	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	65	2	118	97	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	141	96	205	303	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	113	93	268	467	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	61	141	157	340	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	44	102	42	135	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	15	53	18	45	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	3	13	0	9	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	0	4	6	1	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	0	2	0	1	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	3	0	0	0	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	484	601	891	1550	3519	3646	12630	15873

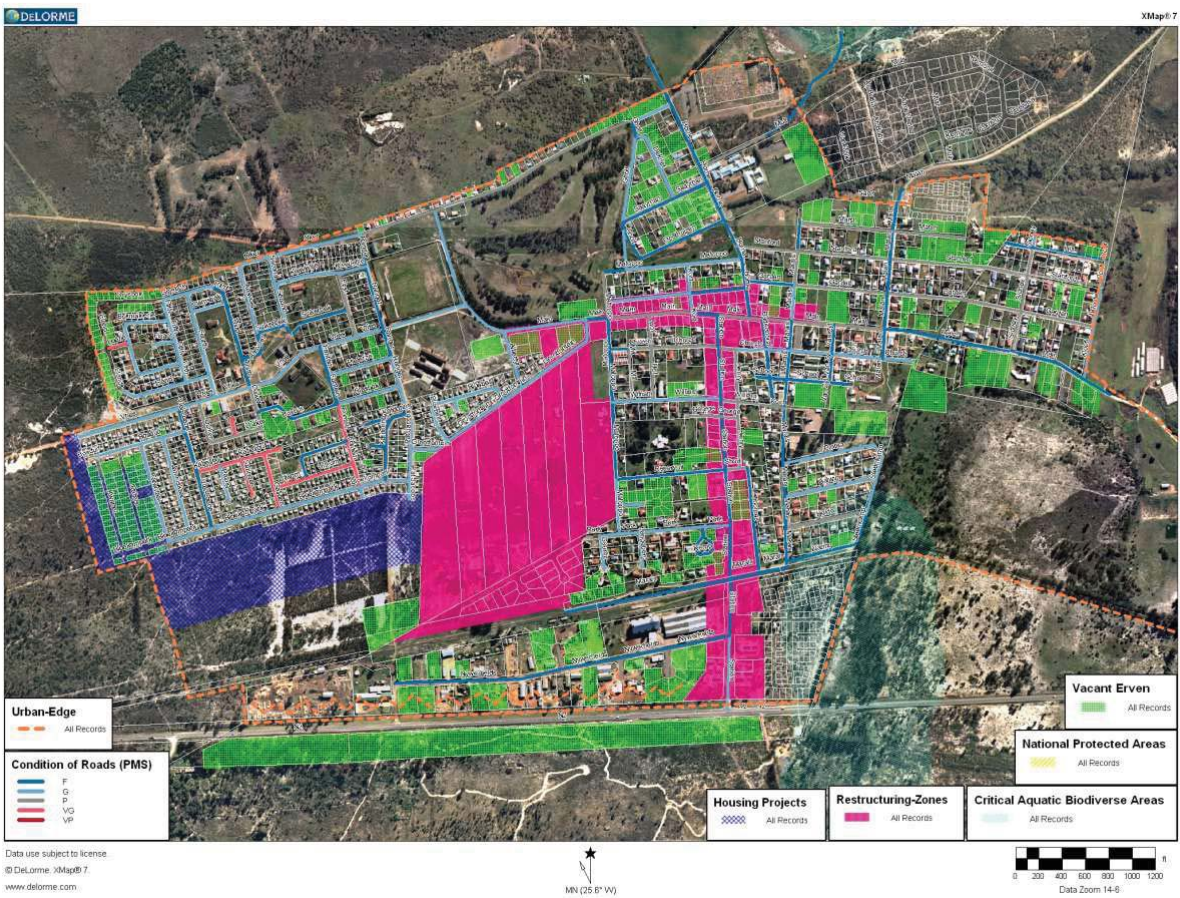
Access to Water Services								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	482	593	871	1547	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	6	0	9	1	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	0	8	0	2	279	249	306	319
Other	0	0	15	0	52	0	76	0
Total	488	601	895	1550	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	473	519	740	1535	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	9	76	149	4	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	0	0	3	1	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	0	0	0	2	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	0	1	0	0	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	0	1	0	0	173	38	317	151
None	6	3	3	9	490	133	788	299
Other	0	0	0	0	0	63	0	173
Total	488	601	895	1550	3543	3646	12631	15873

Energy Source for Lighting								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	473	597	877	1516	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	0	0	0	7	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	6	0	3	0	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	9	1	15	19	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	0	1	0	3	12	52	18	87
Other	0	2	0	6	55	9	64	36
Total	488	601	895	1550	3543	3646	12631	15873

Refuse Removal								
	Albertinia SP		Theronville		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	488	589	880	1547	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	0	0	0	1	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	0	0	0	0	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	0	11	15	1	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	0	1	0	1	36	228	48	252
Other	0	0	0	0	0	289	0	320
Total	488	601	895	1550	3543	3646	12631	15873







### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

**Capital Budget Programme for Albertinia**

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.1.1	- Albertinia (24 786m)	2	A/B		850 000	900 000	1 000 000	1 000 000	2
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.2.1	- Albertinia (24 786m)	2	A/B						1
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.1	- Albertinia (4 300m)	2	A/B		1 000 000				2
1.1.1.5	Gruispad by Mossagasgebou	2	A/B				40 000		1
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.2.1	- Albertinia	2	A/B		350 000		200 000		1
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.3.1	- Albertinia	2	A/B			150 000	160 000	180 000	1
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.4.1.1	- Albertinia	2	A/B					1 000 000	MIG
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjes met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPWP
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.2.1	Telemetriestelsel	2	A/B		150 000		150 000		2
1.2.2.2	Besproeiingslyn - Dorpsingang	2	A/B	0			50 000		2
1.2.2.3	Lugkleppe	2	A/B	50 000	50 000	50 000	50 000	50 000	1
1.2.2.4	Opgradering van Netwerk	2	A/B	400 000	200 000		200 000		2
1.2.2.5	Vervanging van Waterleiding	2	A/B	400 000	400 000		500 000		2
1.2.3.1	Kleurverwyderingsaanleg	2	A/B		400 000	400 000	420 000		2
1.2.3.2	Spaarboorgatpompe	2	A/B	50 000		50 000		70 000	1
1.2.3.3	Teel van vloere watersuiweringswerke	2	A/B	30 000	20 000				1
1.2.3.4	Rehabilitasie van Fonteine	2	A/B	0		80 000		100 000	1
1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.2.5.1	Watertoevoer na Kleinboere	2	A/B				1 000 000		MIG
1.3.1	PT shelter	2	A/B				400 000		EPWP

1.4.2.1	Opgradeer Substasies - Stasiestr/Theronsville	2	A/B	300 000	300 000	300 000	330 000	350 000	2
1.4.4.1	Hoogspanning & Distribusie Netwerk opgradering	2	A/B	350 000					2
1.4.4.2	Laagspanningsgeleiers	2	A/B	160 000	200 000	300 000	300 000	350 000	2
1.5.1.1	Vloeimeter vir riool	2	A/B	100 000					2
1.5.1.2	Vergroting van Chloorkamer by rioolwerke	2	A/B	20 000					1
1.5.1.3	Opgradering van Sludge Drying Beds	2	A/B		35 000	35 000	35 000	35 000	1
1.5.1.4	Meganiese Sif - Riool	2	A/B	300 000					2
1.5.2.1	Opgradering van Pompstasie - Green Drop	2	A/B	300 000		35 000			2
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.5.4.1	Opgradering van Rioolwerke	2	A/B				1 000 000	1 000 000	MIG
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H/Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG
2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2
2.3.1	Opgradering van Sportfasiliteite in Theronsville	2	A/B	1 959 875	112 575				MIG
2.6.1	Uitbreiding van begraafplaas	2	A/B	200 000	200 000	200 000			2
3.1.3.1	LAW - Openbare Werke	2	A/B					250 000	1
3.1.3.2	LAW - Elektries / Parke / Openbare Werke	2	A/B			240 000	245 000	250 000	2
3.1.3.3	1 X 5m3 Tipper - Openbare Werke	2	A/B				750 000		2
3.1.3.4	Cherry Picker - Elektries	2	A/B					1 200 000	2
3.1.3.5	Dubbelkajuit Vragmotor - Openbare Werke	2	A/B			450 000			2
3.1.3.6	1 X 2ton Platbak Trok & Hidroliese Lift - O/W	2	A/B				500 000		2
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.1.1	Multi-purpuse Loader	2	A/B					900 000	2
3.2.2.1	Fiat Trekker 780 - Openbare Werke	2	A/B			475 000			2
3.2.4.1	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke	2	A/B		55 000				1
3.2.6.1.1	Rioolrods	2	A/B	3 000	3 000	3 000	3 200	3 300	1
3.2.6.4.1	1 X Stoof - Albertinia S/saal	2	A/B		3 200				1
3.2.6.4.2	1 X Stoof - Theronsvillesaal	2	A/B					6 000	1
3.2.6.4.3	10 X Staaltafels - Theronsvillesaal	2	A/B					10 000	1
3.2.6.4.4	Wireless Handheld System - Theronsvillesaal	2	A/B					3 800	1
3.2.6.4.5	Mikrofoon	2	A/B					800	1

3.2.6.6.1	1 X Stofsuier - Albertinia	2	A\B	9 500					<b>BIB</b>
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					<b>BIB</b>
3.2.6.7.9	Spoedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			<b>1</b>
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.1	Kettingsaag - Parke	2	A/B		6 500				<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.2	Randsnyers - Water / Parke / Parke	2	A/B	6 800	6 800	7 000	7 000	7 200	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.3	1 X Blower BBG66D - Openbare Werke	2	A/B		6 000				<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.4	1 X Pole pruner - Openbare Werke	2	A/B		9 000				<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.5	1 X Boor 1050w - Openbare Werke	2	A/B	4 800					<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.6	1 X Groot Grinder - Openbare Werke	2	A/B	1 700					<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.7	1 X Staanboor 850w - Openbare Werke	2	A/B			3 800			<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.8	1 X Stofsuier - Kantore	2	A/B		1 500				<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.9	Hoëdrukspuit - Riool	2	A/B					140 000	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.10	1 ton Sleepwa - Parke	2	A/B			65 000			<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.11	Elektriese Jackhammer - Openbare Werke	2	A/B				25 000		<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.12	Teerspuit (200L)-self verhitting-Openbare Werke	2	A/B				300 000		<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			<b>2</b>
3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					<b>2</b>
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoorder - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				<b>1</b>
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			<b>1</b>
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			<b>1</b>
3.3.1.21	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		<b>1</b>

3.3.1.22	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		1
3.3.1.38	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					1
3.3.1.39	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			1
3.5.2.1	Bou van Voorraad Stoor	2	A/B				250 000		2
3.5.4.1	Omheining (lemmetjies) - Moss gasgebou	2	A/B				40 000		1
3.5.5.2	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					2
4.5	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	2

## Gouritsmond

### Introduction

Gouritsmond is located next to the river mouth of the Gourits River. It is one of the smaller coastal towns in the Hessequa region, but still is very popular holiday destination. The local fishing industry continues to support the economy of the town out of the holiday seasons. Gouritsmond is almost completely surrounded by conservation areas and future expansion of the town is very limited. This contributes to the desirability as a holiday destination and senior citizens looking for a quiet place for spending their days of retirement

Population Group & Gender Totals						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	3	15	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	87	139	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	0	1	9	31	30	100
White	150	94	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	2	0	38	0	158
Total	240	249	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	0	13	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	58	142	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	0	1	6	36	15	99
White	161	110	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	0	0	20	0	76
Total	219	265	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	3	27	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	145	280	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	0	2	15	67	45	199
White	311	203	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	2	0	59	0	235
Total	459	515	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	426	476	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	30	17	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	0	1	206	177	742	1066
Other	3	21	75	314	186	2177
Total	459	515	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	48	101	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	132	137	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	182	180	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	96	97	592	741	3571	5381
Total	459	515	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	24	32	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	12	8	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	3	15	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	12	23	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	15	20	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	6	12	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	18	32	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	24	33	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	30	29	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	15	23	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	63	45	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	12	20	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	92	85	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	111	91	608	843	2967	3829
Other	21	46	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	459	515	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	160	183	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	27	21	258	225	2304	2803
Other	122	102	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	308	305	8655	8376	28277	33987



Dwelling Type						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	225	205	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	3	1	102	74	529	772
Other	0	0	25	32	119	91
Total	228	206	3519	3646	12630	15873

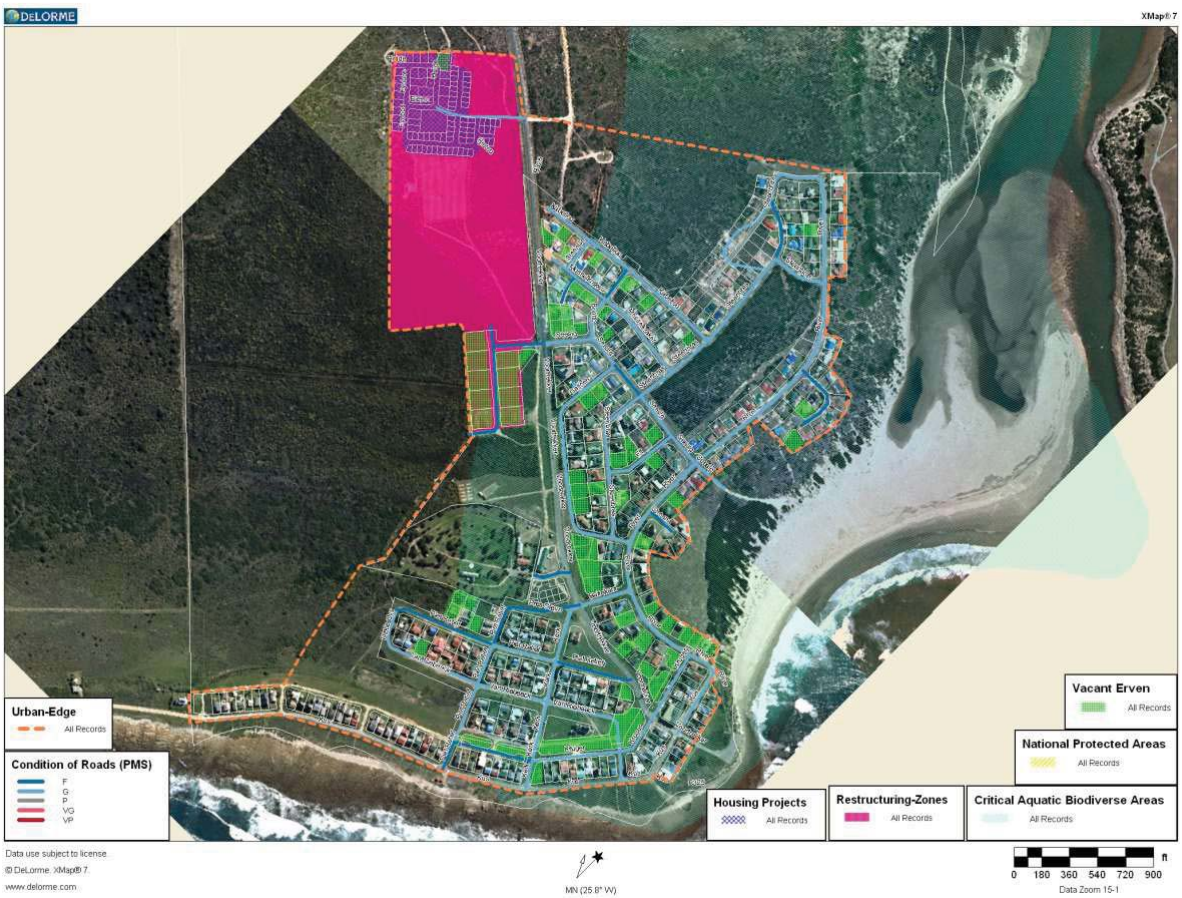
Annual Household Income						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	9	16	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	24	3	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	27	6	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	33	27	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	37	39	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	44	52	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	35	36	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	9	16	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	3	9	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	0	1	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	3	1	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	3	0	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	228	206	3519	3646	12630	15873

Access to Water Services						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	222	204	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	0	1	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	3	1	279	249	306	319
Other	0	0	52	0	76	0
Total	225	206	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	0	102	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	213	100	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	0	0	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	3	0	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	9	1	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	0	1	173	38	317	151
None	0	0	490	133	788	299
Other	0	1	0	63	0	173
<b>Total</b>	<b>225</b>	<b>206</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Energy Source for Lighting						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	213	202	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	0	1	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	0	0	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	9	0	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	0	0	12	52	18	87
Other	3	2	55	9	64	36
<b>Total</b>	<b>225</b>	<b>206</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Refuse Removal						
	Gouritsmond SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	225	203	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	0	0	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	0	0	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	0	2	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	0	0	36	228	48	252
Other	0	1	0	289	0	320
<b>Total</b>	<b>225</b>	<b>206</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>



### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

Planned Capital Budget Programme for Gouritzmond

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.1.4	- Gouritsmond (11 517m)	1	G/M			500 000	540 000	550 000	2
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.5	- Gouritsmond (400m)	1	G/M						1
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.2.8	- Gouritsmond	1	G/M	300 000		220 000		370 000	1
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.3.6	- Gouritsmond	1	G/M			100 000	100 000	150 000	1
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjes met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPWP
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.3.11	Ontkalking van huishoudelike water	1	G/M		250 000				2
1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.2.4.4	Opgradeer/rehabilitering van Gansfontein	1	G/M	0	250 000		50 000		2
1.2.7.4	Nuwe Reservoir	1	G/M				2 000 000		MIG
1.4.2.7	Opgradeer Substasie	1	G/M	0		250 000	300 000	300 000	1
1.4.4.7	Opgradering van netwerk	1	G/M	100 000	150 000	150 000	175 000	200 000	2
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.5.4.6	Opgradering van Rioolwerke	1	G/M				1 700 000		DWA
1.5.4.8	Uitbreiding van oksidasie damme	1	G/M				1 200 000		DWA
1.7.1.2	Opgradeer en omheing van stortingsterrein	1	G/M			100 000	200 000		2
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H/Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG
2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2

2.7.5	Opgradering van Getypoel	1	G/M	50 000				15 000	1
2.8.7.1	Vervang binne tenks van boilers	1	G/M	120 000	40 000	30 000			2
2.8.7.2	Opgradering van Kamp	1	G/M			50 000	50 000	50 000	1
2.8.7.3	Vervanging van heining	1	G/M			100 000	100 000	100 000	1
2.8.7.4	Opgradering van Kantoor	1	G/M			20 000	30 000	20 000	1
2.8.7.5	Speelpark	1	G/M				8 000		1
2.8.7.6	Rolstoel vriendelike toiletfasiliteite	1	G/M			25 000	25 000	25 000	1
2.8.7.7	2 X 5kl Watertenke	1	G/M	12 000			12 000		1
2.8.7.8	5 X 200 L Geyers	1	G/M	10 000	10 000	10 000			1
3.1.3.22	LAW - Openbare Werke	1	G/M			0	240 000		2
3.1.3.23	1 X 3m3 Tipper - Openbare Werke	1	G/M					400 000	2
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.1.6	Backactor - Openbare Werke	1	G/M	600 000					2
3.2.2.5	Fiat Trekker 780 - Openbare Werke	1	G/M				500 000		2
3.2.4.10	Kudu Grassnyer - Openbare Werke	1	G/M			57 000			1
3.2.6.4.52	30 X Plastiekstoele - Gemeenskap saal	1	G/M					3 000	1
3.2.6.4.53	Blinders - Gemeenskap saal	1	G/M					6 000	1
3.2.6.5.27	Kantoorstoel	1	G/M			1 500			1
3.2.6.5.28	Lugversorger	1	G/M			8 000			1
3.2.6.6.7	4 X Rekenaarlessenaars	1	G/M	14 000					BIB
3.2.6.6.8	4 X Diefwering venster	1	G/M	12 000					BIB
3.2.6.6.9	1 X Heining en hek om gebou	1	G/M	9 000					BIB
3.2.6.6.10	4 X Dakwaaiers - Bitouville	1	G/M	3 200					BIB
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					BIB
3.2.6.7.9	Spoedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			1
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	1
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	1
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	1
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	1
3.2.6.10.49	Bomag Roller - Openbare Werke	1	G/M	80 000					1

3.2.6.10.50	Sement Menger - Openbare Werke	1	G/M			35 000			1
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	1
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				1
3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	1
3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		1
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			2
3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				1
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					2
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoorder - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				1
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			1
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			1
3.3.1.21	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		1
3.3.1.22	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		1
3.3.1.38	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					1
3.3.1.39	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			1
3.3.2.43	Rakke - HFD	1	G/M	3 000					1
3.3.2.44	1 X Optelmasjiene - HFD	1	G/M	1 500					1
3.5.2.3	Voertuigstoor	1	G/M	0			200 000		1
3.5.5.2	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					2
4.5	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	2



## Heidelberg

### Introduction

Heidelberg is the second biggest inland town in the Hessequa region and its economy has been heavily dependent on commercial agriculture. Heidelberg has enjoyed a rich cultural heritage in the performing arts and continues to deliver to national audiences. Heidelberg is currently challenged with a large backlog in housing.

Population Group & Gender Totals						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	135	387	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	2565	2970	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	6	19	9	31	30	100
White	638	539	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	31	0	38	0	158
Total	3344	3946	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	157	378	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	2872	3252	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	0	17	6	36	15	99
White	753	650	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	17	0	20	0	76
Total	3782	4313	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	292	765	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	5436	6222	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	6	36	15	67	45	199
White	1391	1189	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	48	0	59	0	235
Total	7125	8259	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	6807	7400	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	138	275	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	156	230	206	177	742	1066
Other	24	354	75	314	186	2177
Total	7125	8259	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	2058	2083	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	2305	2538	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	2244	2908	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	519	729	592	741	3571	5381
Total	7125	8259	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	544	278	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	302	271	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	178	216	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	261	263	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	361	338	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	430	328	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	531	488	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	714	648	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	735	868	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	433	632	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	549	680	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	245	377	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	812	1367	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	394	357	608	843	2967	3829
Other	638	1150	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	7125	8259	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	1689	2214	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	501	374	258	225	2304	2803
Other	2305	2795	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	4495	5383	8655	8376	28277	33987

Dwelling Type						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	1697	1954	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	119	223	102	74	529	772
Other	20	20	25	32	119	91
Total	1836	2198	3519	3646	12630	15873

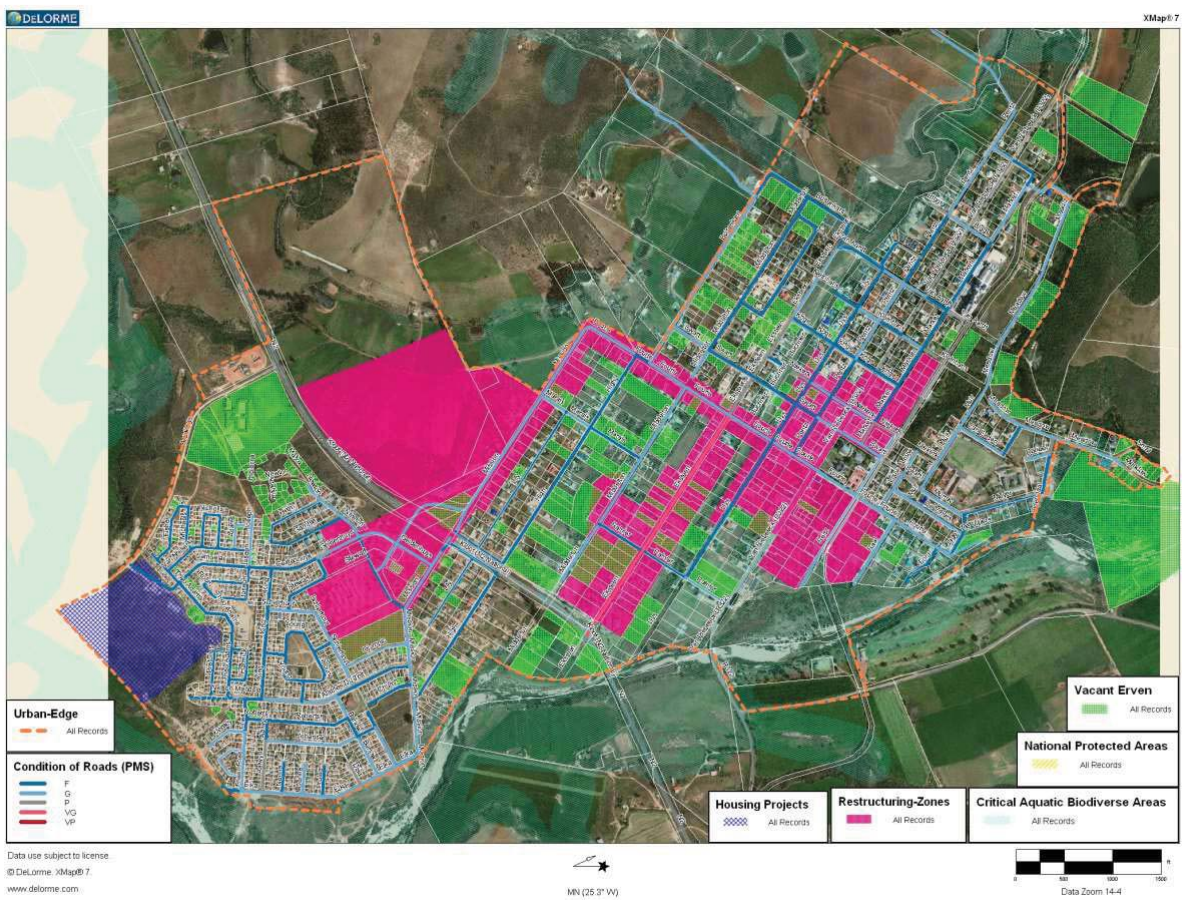
Annual Household Income						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	171	205	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	61	59	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	339	100	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	397	338	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	433	501	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	237	461	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	144	276	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	41	176	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	3	63	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	3	11	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	6	7	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	0	0	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	1836	2198	3519	3646	12630	15873

Access to Water Services						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	1802	2177	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	12	6	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	12	14	279	249	306	319
Other	3	0	52	0	76	0
Total	1829	2198	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	1242	1988	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	368	112	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	0	1	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	24	19	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	6	7	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	121	32	173	38	317	151
None	69	19	490	133	788	299
Other	0	19	0	63	0	173
<b>Total</b>	<b>1829</b>	<b>2198</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Energy Source for Lighting						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	1606	2137	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	6	3	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	18	0	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	190	53	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	3	3	12	52	18	87
Other	6	2	55	9	64	36
<b>Total</b>	<b>1829</b>	<b>2198</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Refuse Removal						
	Heidelberg SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	1727	2065	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	3	6	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	0	63	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	99	45	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	0	2	36	228	48	252
Other	0	16	0	289	0	320
<b>Total</b>	<b>1829</b>	<b>2198</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>



### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

**Planned Capital Budget Programme for Heidelberg**

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.1.2	- Heidelberg (31 679m)	4,5	H/B		850 000	1 000 000	1 000 000	1 000 000	2
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.2.2	- Heidelberg (31 679m)	4,5	H/B						1
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.2	- Heidelberg (5 100m)	4,5	H/B						1
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.2.2	- Heidelberg	4	H/B			200 000		300 000	2
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.3.2	- Heidelberg	5	H/B			110 000	120 000	150 000	1
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.4.1.2	- Heidelberg - Helmstr. Sigwater	4	H/B				500 000		MIG
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjes met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPW P
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.2.6	Leiwaterpompinstallasie	5	H/B	120 000					2
1.2.2.7	Vervanging van Waterleiding	4,5	H/B	400 000	400 000				2
1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.2.7.1	New 1 Mil Reservoir	4,5	H/B	1 528 043					MIG
1.4.1.1	Opgradeer 11KV Hoofsubstasie	5	H/B	500 000	500 000	500 000	550 000	600 000	2
1.4.2.2	Opgradeer Substasies	5	H/B	300 000	300 000	300 000	330 000	350 000	2
1.4.3.1	Vervang Meters - Heidelberg	4	H/B	0		50 000			1
1.4.4.3	Opgradering van Netwerk	5	H/B	400 000	500 000	500 000	500 000	550 000	2
1.5.3.1	Bystand rioolpomp	5	H/B	80 000		85 000			1
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H/Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG



2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2
2.3.2	Vervang Vibracrete muur - Sportgronde	5	H/B			35 000			MIG
2.3.3	Ablusiegeriewe - Sportgronde	5	H/B			140 000			MIG
2.5.1	Aanbou van Gallery - Duivenhokssaal	5	H/B				200 000		2
2.5.2	Diefwering - Duivenhokssaal	4,5	H/B					30 000	1
2.5.3	Thusongsentrum - langs Duivenhokssaal	4,5	H/B					500 000	2
2.6.2	Uitbreiding van begraaftlaas	4,5	H/B		200 000	200 000	200 000	200 000	2
3.1.3.7	LAW's - Openbare Werke / Riool / Elek / Water	5	H/B	0	220 000	240 000	245 000	250 000	2
3.1.3.8	1 X 5m3 Tipper - Openbare Werke / Parke	4,5	H/B				750 000		2
3.1.3.9	Dubbelkajuit Vragmotor - Openbare Werke	4,5	H/B	400 000					2
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.1.2	Multi-purpuse Loader	4,5	H/B			0	850 000		2
3.2.2.2	Fiat Trekker 780 - Openbare Werke	4,5	H/B					450 000	2
3.2.4.2	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke	4,5	H/B				57 000		1
3.2.6.3.1	22 L Mikrogolfoond - Sportgronde	5	H/B	700					1
3.2.6.3.2	1 X Urn - Sportgronde	5	H/B	700					1
3.2.6.3.3	10 X Staaltafels - Sportgronde	5	H/B	4 000	4 500				1
3.2.6.3.4	100 X Plastiekstoele - Sportgronde	5	H/B	5 000	5 000				1
3.2.6.3.5	Grenstou - Sportgronde	5	H/B			10 000			1
3.2.6.3.6	Vervanging van Krieket mat - Sportgronde	5	H/B			16 000			1
3.2.6.4.6	100 X Plastiekstoele - Stadsaal	5	H/B		6 000				1
3.2.6.4.7	10 X Staaltafels - Stadsaal	5	H/B		8 500				1
3.2.6.4.8	4 Plaatstoof - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	6 000					1
3.2.6.4.9	10 X Staaltafels - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	3 500					1
3.2.6.4.10	100 X Plastiekstoele - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	5 000					1
3.2.6.4.11	Wireless Handheld System - Duivenhoks	4	H/B				3 800		1
3.2.6.4.12	Behringer Pmp 980 - Duivenhoks	4	H/B				5 200		1
3.2.6.4.13	Kas vir Klanktoerusting - Duivenhoks	4	H/B				1 700		1
3.2.6.4.14	3 Tier tea trollie - Duivenhoks	4	H/B					1 450	1
3.2.6.4.15	210 Chest freezer - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	2 300					1

3.2.6.4.16	1 X Stoof - Stadsaal	5	H/B					7 000	1
3.2.6.6.2	6 X Leunstoele vir leesarea - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	10 000					BIB
3.2.6.6.3	4 X Potte vir plante - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	1 500					BIB
3.2.6.6.4	8 X Boekrakke - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	16 000					BIB
3.2.6.6.5	1 X Naambord - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	3 500					BIB
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					BIB
3.2.6.7.9	Spoedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			1
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	1
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	1
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	1
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	1
3.2.6.10.13	Randsnyers - Parke	4,5	H/B	6 800	6 800	7 000	7 000	7 200	1
3.2.6.10.14	Yskas - Openbare Werke	4,5	H/B	2 000					1
3.2.6.10.15	Mikrogolf oond - Openbare Werke	4,5	H/B		1 200				1
3.2.6.10.16	1 X Gantry (Try pot) - Openbare Werke	4,5	H/B	8 000					1
3.2.6.10.17	1 X Trap Grease Gun - Openbare Werke	4,5	H/B	1 800					1
3.2.6.10.18	Hoëdrukspuit - Riool	4,5	H/B				140 000		1
3.2.6.10.19	1 X Plate Compactor - Openbare Werke	4,5	H/B			30 000			1
3.2.6.10.20	Chipper vir Tuinvullis - Stortingsterrein	4,5	H/B			20 000			1
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	1
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				1
3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	1
3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		1
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			2
3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				1
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					2
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoordeur - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				1
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			1
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			1
3.3.1.21	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		1

3.3.1.22	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		1
3.3.1.38	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					1
3.3.1.39	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			1
3.5.4.2	Palisade omheiding - Diepkloofgebou	4,5	H/B					40 000	1
3.5.4.3	Teel van Vloer - Diepkloofgebou	4,5	H/B				5 000	5 000	1
3.5.4.4	Aanbou van addisionele klaskamer - Kindersorg	4,5	H/B				200 000		2
3.5.5.1	Ontwikkeling en diens van ekonomiese erwe	5	H/B				500 000		2
3.5.5.2	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					2
4.3	Suigtenk - Riool	4,5	H/B	750 000					2
4.5	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	2

## Jongensfontein

### Introduction

Jongensfontein is a very popular holiday destination along the coast of Hessequa. The municipal resort is highly in demand during holiday seasons and receives continuous utilisation throughout the year. There are some infrastructure challenges residents experience with the topographical layout of the town and ageing sewer systems. Other issues also include water pressure drops and erosion along the beach front.

Population Group & Gender Totals						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	3	5	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	12	5	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	0	0	9	31	30	100
White	135	151	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	0	0	38	0	158
Total	150	162	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	3	6	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	0	4	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	0	0	6	36	15	99
White	131	182	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	0	0	20	0	76
Total	134	193	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	6	12	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	12	10	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	0	0	15	67	45	199
White	267	333	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	0	0	59	0	235
Total	285	355	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	258	312	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	21	17	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	3	0	206	177	742	1066
Other	3	26	75	314	186	2177
Total	285	355	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups						
	Groot-Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	21	17	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	51	21	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	158	147	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	54	169	592	741	3571	5381
Total	285	355	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	3	0	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	3	0	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	0	1	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	3	2	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	0	2	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	3	2	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	0	1	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	3	2	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	12	11	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	3	8	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	45	20	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	9	6	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	73	147	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	119	120	608	843	2967	3829
Other	9	32	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	285	355	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	77	51	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	12	1	258	225	2304	2803
Other	105	104	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	194	157	8655	8376	28277	33987

Dwelling Type						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	138	186	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	3	0	102	74	529	772
Other	0	1	25	32	119	91
Total	141	187	3519	3646	12630	15873

Annual Household Income						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	6	8	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	3	0	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	12	0	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	9	6	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	27	15	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	28	27	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	35	57	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	18	53	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	3	12	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	0	4	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	0	1	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	0	4	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	141	187	3519	3646	12630	15873

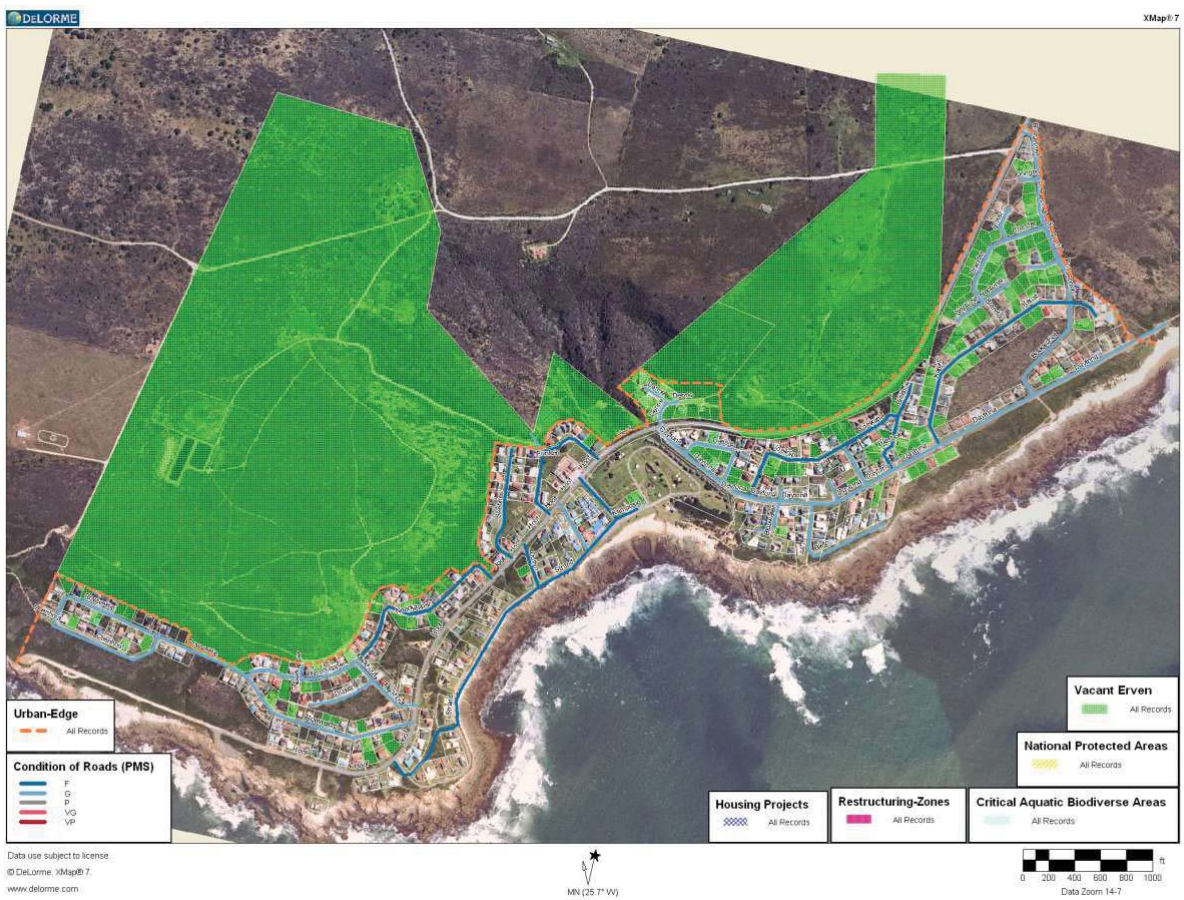
Access to Water Services						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	124	185	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	3	1	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	0	0	279	249	306	319
Other	0	0	52	0	76	0
Total	127	187	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	127	114	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	0	71	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	0	0	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	0	2	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	0	0	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	0	0	173	38	317	151
None	0	0	490	133	788	299
Other	0	0	0	63	0	173
<b>Total</b>	<b>127</b>	<b>187</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Energy Source for Lighting						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	127	187	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	0	0	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	0	0	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	0	0	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	0	0	12	52	18	87
Other	0	0	55	9	64	36
<b>Total</b>	<b>127</b>	<b>187</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Refuse Removal						
	Groot Jongensfontein		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	127	184	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	0	0	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	0	0	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	0	0	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	0	2	36	228	48	252
Other	0	0	0	289	0	320
<b>Total</b>	<b>127</b>	<b>187</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>





### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

Planned Capital Budget Programme for Jongensfontein

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.1.5	- Jongensfontein (10 704m)	3	J/F			530 000	500 000	550 000	2
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.6	- Jongensfontein (300m)	3	J/F	600 000					1
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.2.6	- Jongensfontein	3	J/F		300 000		250 000		1
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjies met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPWP
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.2.16	Opgradering van waterdruk en werke	3	J/F	0	150 000		150 000		2
1.2.2.17	Lugkleppe	3	J/F		30 000			60 000	1
1.2.3.10	Opgradering van Waterwerke	3	J/F				500 000	1 125 000	2
1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.5.4.5	Opgradering van Rioolwerke	3	J/F				4 000 000		DWA
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H/Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG
2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2
2.7.3	Opgradering van Getypoel	3	J/F				20 000		1
2.7.4	Beskerming van Kusgebied	3	J/F				500 000	500 000	2
2.8.4.1	Trappe & Grondwerke - plote	3	J/F				20 000	20 000	1
2.8.4.2	Opgradering van Kamp	3	J/F				280 000	140 000	2
2.8.4.3	Teel van oorblywende Hutte/stoepe (10)	3	J/F	50 000	30 000				1
2.8.4.4	Vervang Kas teen opwasbakke - Charlets	3	J/F			100 000	80 000		1

2.8.4.5	Vervang van Rietdakke	3	J/F				650 000	650 000	2
2.8.4.6	Rolstoel vriendelike fasiliteite (2 hutte)	3	J/F				80 000	50 000	1
2.8.4.7	Opgradering van Kantoor	3	J/F			30 000	20 000		1
3.1.3.21	LAW - Kamp	3	J/F					250 000	1
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.2.4	Fiat Trekker 780 - Parke	3	J/F					500 000	2
3.2.4.9	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke	3	J/F		55 000				1
3.2.6.5.8	2 X Kantoorstoele	3	J/F				3 000		1
3.2.6.5.9	Lugversorger	3	J/F				8 000		1
3.2.6.5.10	8 X Yskaste	3	J/F				14 000	15 000	1
3.2.6.5.11	Nuwe Eetgerei	3	J/F				15 000	18 000	1
3.2.6.5.12	Gereedskap vir kamp	3	J/F				10 000	10 000	1
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					BIB
3.2.6.7.9	Spoedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			1
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	1
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	1
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	1
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	1
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	1
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				1
3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	1
3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		1
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			2
3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				1
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					2
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoorder - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				1
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			1
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			1

<b>3.3.1.21</b>	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		<b>1</b>
<b>3.3.1.22</b>	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		<b>1</b>
<b>3.3.1.38</b>	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					<b>1</b>
<b>3.3.1.39</b>	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			<b>1</b>
<b>3.5.5.2</b>	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					<b>2</b>
<b>4.5</b>	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	<b>2</b>

## Melkhoutfontein

### Introduction

Melkhoutfontein celebrates a rich historical heritage as people who have been previously disadvantaged, but also managed to take responsibility for their own development. Currently the community faces challenges of economic decline and permanent job opportunities are growing more and thinner. The fishing industry is also experiencing pressure as households continue to live in difficult circumstances and struggle to make ends meet.

Population Group & Gender Totals						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	39	43	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	694	1183	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	0	4	9	31	30	100
White	0	9	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	3	0	38	0	158
Total	733	1242	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	12	25	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	731	1251	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	0	4	6	36	15	99
White	3	11	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	0	0	20	0	76
Total	746	1291	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	51	68	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	1425	2434	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	0	7	15	67	45	199
White	3	20	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	3	0	59	0	235
Total	1479	2533	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	1458	2377	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	6	38	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	9	16	206	177	742	1066
Other	6	102	75	314	186	2177
Total	1479	2533	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	486	719	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	566	924	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	391	797	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	36	93	592	741	3571	5381
Total	1479	2533	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	87	86	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	59	71	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	63	79	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	51	85	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	91	103	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	117	118	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	157	177	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	236	280	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	118	283	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	122	241	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	76	278	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	44	98	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	83	269	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	0	11	608	843	2967	3829
Other	175	356	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	1479	2533	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	603	978	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	53	35	258	225	2304	2803
Other	291	697	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	947	1711	8655	8376	28277	33987



Dwelling Type						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	320	500	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	3	110	102	74	529	772
Other	0	5	25	32	119	91
Total	323	614	3519	3646	12630	15873

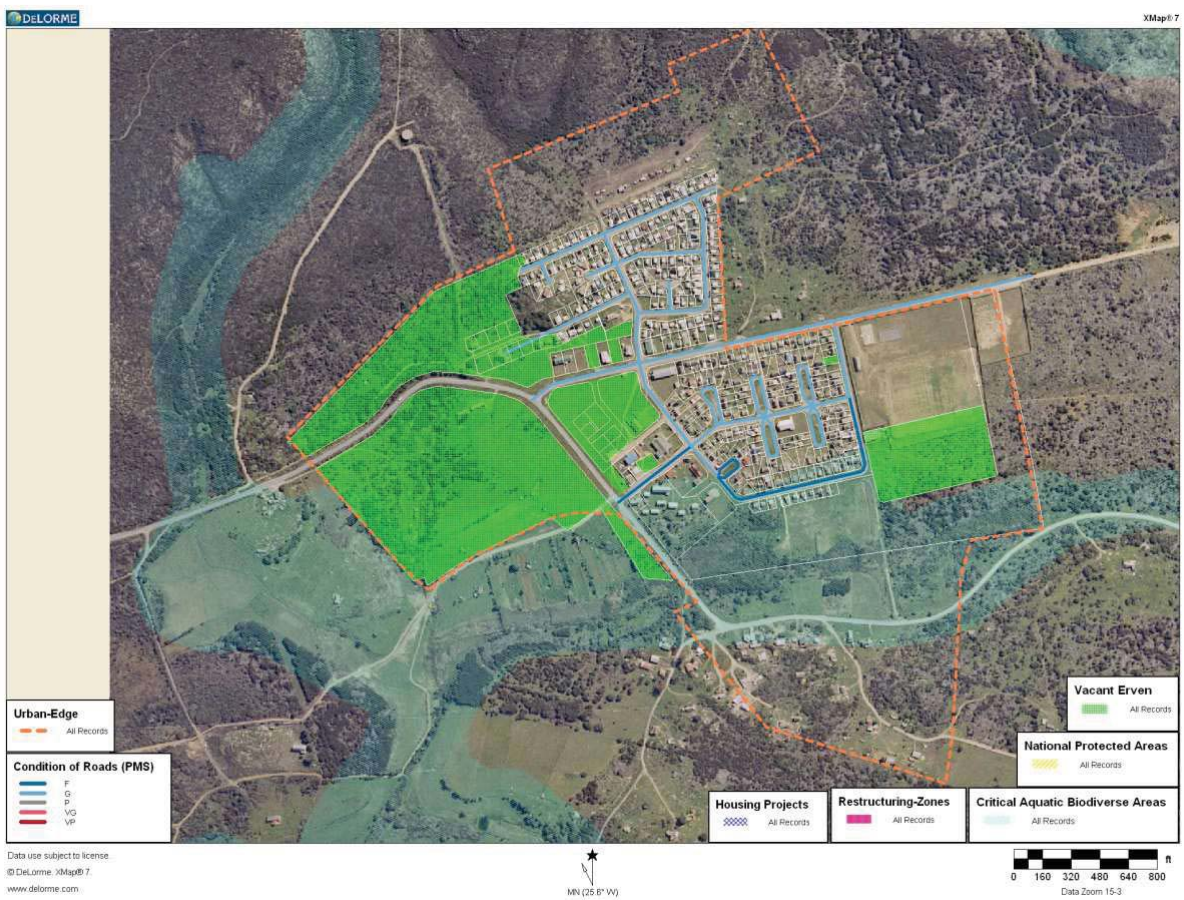
Annual Household Income						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	6	21	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	18	9	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	38	18	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	71	84	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	126	162	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	52	206	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	9	83	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	3	21	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	0	9	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	0	0	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	0	0	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	0	1	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	323	614	3519	3646	12630	15873

Access to Water Services						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	317	610	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	3	1	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	0	3	279	249	306	319
Other	0	0	52	0	76	0
Total	320	614	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	311	526	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	0	21	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	0	0	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	0	1	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	0	1	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	0	13	173	38	317	151
None	9	26	490	133	788	299
Other	0	26	0	63	0	173
<b>Total</b>	<b>320</b>	<b>614</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Energy Source for Lighting						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	305	563	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	0	1	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	0	4	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	15	33	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	0	8	12	52	18	87
Other	0	5	55	9	64	36
<b>Total</b>	<b>320</b>	<b>614</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Refuse Removal						
	Melkhoutfontein SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	320	608	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	0	1	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	0	0	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	0	4	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	0	1	36	228	48	252
Other	0	0	0	289	0	320
<b>Total</b>	<b>320</b>	<b>614</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>



### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

**Planned Capital Budget Programme for Melkhoutfontein**

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.1.7	- Stilbaai (66 007m)	1,3	S/B		850 000	800 000	1 100 000	1 180 000	2
1.1.1.1.8	- Melkhoutfontein	1	S/B				200 000	200 000	2
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.2.4	- Stilbaai (66 007m)	1,3	S/B						1
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.8	- Melkhoutfontein (200m)	1	S/B						1
1.1.1.4	Herseel Geproklameerde Hoofpaaie (20%)	1,3	S/B	456 200					2
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.2.1	Herseel Geproklameerde Hoofpaaie (80%) (**)	1,3	S/B	1 824 800					VERV
1.1.3.1	Voorsiening van Stormwater - Hoofweg Oos	1	S/B						1
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.2.5	- Stilbaai	1,3	S/B		300 000		320 000		1
1.1.3.2.7	- Melkhoutfontein	1	S/B			200 000		300 000	2
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.3.5	- Stilbaai/MHF/JFT	1,3	S/B			300 000	300 000	350 000	2
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.4.1.7	- Melkhoutfontein	1	S/B				1 000 000	500 000	MIG
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjies met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPW P
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.2.10	Sludge pomp	1,3	S/B		20 000		25 000		1
1.2.2.11	Spaar Waterpompe - MHFT	1	S/B		40 000		25 000		1
1.2.2.12	Pypwerk & Pompe - Olienhoutfontein	1	S/B	50 000					1
1.2.2.13	Vervanging van ou Waternetwerk	1	S/B	400 000	250 000	250 000	250 000	250 000	2
1.2.2.14	Opgradering van Watertoevoer	1,3	S/B		1 450 000	2 000 000	1 200 000		2
1.2.3.9	Opgradering van Olive Grove watersuiwering	1	S/B			500 000	500 000		2

1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.2.4.1	Omheining van Reservoirs- oosdam/Ollenhoutfontein	1	S/B	0		100 000		100 000	1
1.2.5.2	Watertoever na Kleinboere	1	S/B					1 000 000	MIG
1.2.5.3	Behuising - Watervoorsiening	1	S/B				2 167 900	2 464 100	MIG
1.2.7.3	New Bulk Water supply - S/B & MHFT	1,3	S/B		4 081 742				MIG
1.4.1.4	Installeer 66/11KV - Hoofstasie	1	S/B	9 000 000	13 000 000	7 400 000			3
1.4.2.6	Opgradeer Substasie - Oos	1	S/B	300 000					2
1.4.4.6	Opgradering van Netwerk - Stilbaai-Wes/Oos	1,3	S/B	700 000	700 000	750 000	750 000	800 000	2
1.4.6.2	280 Sub Ekonomiese Huise - MHFT	1	S/B	2 000 000	1 000 000				DME
1.4.6.3	200 Sub Ekonomiese Huise - MHFT	1	S/B	1 000 000	1 000 000				DME
1.4.6.4	300 Sub Ekonomiese Huise - MHFT	1	S/B		3 300 000	5 000 000			DME
1.5.2.6	Opgradering van pompstasie - Bosbokkloof	1	S/B		50 000	40 000	40 000		2
1.5.2.10	Opgradering van pompstasie - MHFT	1	S/B		120 000	120 000			2
1.5.2.15	Vervanging van Rioolyn	1,3	S/B	500 000					2
1.5.3.4	Bystand rioolpomp - MHFT	1	S/B	70 000					1
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.5.4.4	New Bulk Sewer Supply - S/B & MHFT	1,3	S/B		3 151 787				MIG
1.5.5.2	Rioolnetwerk - Behuising	1	S/B				3 200 000		MIG
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H/Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG
2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2
2.8.5.1	Opgradering van Kamp-Vervang van Dakke	1	S/B	0	120 000	130 000			2
2.8.5.2	Randstene om staanplekke af te baken	1	S/B			200 000	200 000	200 000	2
2.8.5.3	Herstel & Seel van paaie	1	S/B			100 000	150 000	150 000	1
2.8.5.4	Vervanging van heining	1	S/B				122 000		1
2.8.5.5	Teel van Charlets se vloere	1	S/B			60 000	35 000	40 000	1
2.8.5.6	Opgradering van Kantoer	1	S/B			2 000	30 000	30 000	1
2.8.5.7	Speelpark	1	S/B				8 000		1
2.8.5.8	Paving rondom Charlets en ablusieblokke	1	S/B			80 000	70 000	60 000	1
2.8.6.1	Herbou van Strate & Voorsien Stormwater	1	S/B	0	120 000	140 000	150 000		2
2.8.6.2	Toiletfasiliteite in B tipe Charlets	1	S/B			300 000	500 000	400 000	2
2.8.6.3	Nuwe Boiler - Jeugsentrum	1	S/B	90 000					1

2.8.6.4	Teel van B blok	1	S/B					42 000	1
2.8.6.5	Opgradering van Kantoor	1	S/B			20 000	30 000	30 000	1
2.8.6.6	Speelpark	1	S/B				8 000	8 000	1
2.8.6.7	Rolstoel vriendelike toiletfasiliteite	1	S/B				50 000	50 000	1
2.8.6.8	Opgradering van Kamp	1	S/B			80 000	80 000	80 000	1
3.1.2.2	Vuka motorfiets - Water	1,3	S/B				12 000		1
3.1.3.15	1 X 5m3 Tipper - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B		700 000		750 000		2
3.1.3.16	1 X 3ton Vragmotor - Parke	1,3	S/B			350 000			2
3.1.3.17	LAW - Parke / Water	1,3	S/B	220 000				250 000	2
3.1.3.18	LAW - Reinig / OW / Elektries	1,3	S/B	220 000		240 000		250 000	2
3.1.3.19	Cherry Picker - Elektries	1,3	S/B		0	900 000			2
3.1.3.20	Dubbelkajuit Vragmotor - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B					450 000	2
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.1.5	Roller 2.7 ton - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B		350 000				2
3.2.4.7	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke - Preekstoel	1	S/B				57 000		1
3.2.4.8	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke - Ellensrust	1	S/B			57 000			1
3.2.6.1.3	Rioolrods	1,3	S/B	5 000	5 500	5 500	5 700	5 800	1
3.2.6.3.9	Vervanging van mat by Krieketklub - MHFT	1	S/B				16 000		1
3.2.6.3.10	Grenstou - MHFT	1	S/B				10 000		1
3.2.6.3.11	10 X tafels - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				10 000		1
3.2.6.3.12	60 X Stoele - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				12 000		1
3.2.6.3.13	1 X Yskas - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				5 000		1
3.2.6.3.14	1 X Stoof - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				6 000		1
3.2.6.3.15	1 X Urn - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				800		1
3.2.6.4.23	1 X Stoof - MHFT	1	S/B					6 000	1
3.2.6.4.24	50 X Plastiekstoele - MHFT	1	S/B					5 500	1
3.2.6.4.25	5 X Staaltafels - MHFT	1	S/B					4 000	1
3.2.6.4.26	1 X Yskas - MHFT	1	S/B					5 000	1
3.2.6.4.27	Wireless Handheld System - MHFT	1	S/B					3 200	1
3.2.6.4.28	Behringer Pmp 980 - MHFT	1	S/B					5 200	1



3.2.6.4.29	Kas vir Klanktoerusting - MHFT	1	S/B					1 700	1
3.2.6.4.30	Speakers - MHFT	1	S/B					2 800	1
3.2.6.5.13	2 X Kantoorstoele	1	S/B				3 000		1
3.2.6.5.14	Lugversorger	1	S/B				8 000		1
3.2.6.5.15	Gereedskap vir kamp	1	S/B				7 000	10 000	1
3.2.6.5.16	Yskaste	1	S/B				8 000	13 000	1
3.2.6.5.17	Stowe	1	S/B				15 000		1
3.2.6.5.18	Matrasse	1	S/B				15 000		1
3.2.6.5.19	Breekgoed & Eetgerei	1	S/B				8 000		1
3.2.6.5.20	Kantoorstoel	1	S/B				1 500		1
3.2.6.5.21	Lugversorger	1	S/B				8 000		1
3.2.6.5.22	Gereedskap vir kamp	1	S/B				10 000	6 000	1
3.2.6.5.23	Yskaste	1	S/B				18 000	10 000	1
3.2.6.5.24	Tafels & Stoele	1	S/B				10 000	6 000	1
3.2.6.5.25	Matrasse	1	S/B				32 000	35 000	1
3.2.6.5.26	Wasmasjien	1	S/B				5 000		1
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingsstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					<b>BIB</b>
3.2.6.7.9	Spoedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			1
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	1
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	1
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	1
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	1
3.2.6.10.40	Randsnyers - Parke	1,3	S/B	13 600	13 600	14 000	14 000	14 400	1
3.2.6.10.41	1 X Hedge Trimmer - Parke	1,3	S/B	7 000					1
3.2.6.10.42	1 X BG66D Blower - Parke	1,3	S/B		6 000				1
3.2.6.10.43	Randsnyers - Preekstoel / MHFT	1	S/B	6 800		7 000			1
3.2.6.10.44	Randsnyer - Ellensrust	1	S/B		6 800			7 200	1
3.2.6.10.46	Betonmenger - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B			50 000			1
3.2.6.10.47	Teermasjien - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B				30 000		1
3.2.6.10.48	Kanonspuit - Sport - MHFT	1	S/B				25 000		1
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	1
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				1

3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	1
3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		1
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			2
3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				1
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					2
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoorder - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				1
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			1
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			1
3.3.1.21	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		1
3.3.1.22	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		1
3.3.1.38	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					1
3.3.1.39	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			1
3.5.4.7	Veiligheidsheining Skietbaan - Stilbaai	1,3	S/B				15 000		1
3.5.5.2	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					2
4.5	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	2
5.1.1	Lae Koste Behuising Beplanning - MHFT	1	S/B	220 000					BEH
5.1.3	Lae Koste Behuising - Dienste - MHFT	1	S/B						BEH
5.1.4	Lae Koste Behuising - Tops - MHFT	1	S/B						BEH

## Riversdale

### Introduction

Riversdale serves as the administrative capitol for the Hessequa region after the amalgamation of the different smaller municipalities in the year 2000. It is also the largest populated town in Hessequa and is located on the N2. The economy of Riversdale was developed through the support of commercial agriculture, but have experienced changes in the economic structure with trade and construction having played large rolls in the development of Riversdale in the last few years. This have already changed again as the construction sector is struggling to retain jobs and major losses in job opportunities have been experienced.

Population Group & Gender Totals						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	326	784	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	4058	5366	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	12	20	9	31	30	100
White	986	987	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	31	0	38	0	158
Total	5382	7188	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	215	602	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	4784	6253	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	6	22	6	36	15	99
White	1273	1210	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	17	0	20	0	76
Total	6278	8104	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	541	1386	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	8842	11619	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	18	42	15	67	45	199
White	2259	2197	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	48	0	59	0	235
Total	11660	15292	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	11101	13647	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	255	316	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	265	572	206	177	742	1066
Other	39	756	75	314	186	2177
Total	11660	15292	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	3268	3931	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	3813	4719	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	3660	5441	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	919	1200	592	741	3571	5381
Total	11660	15292	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	834	587	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	499	369	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	299	412	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	463	472	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	525	626	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	589	567	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	734	709	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	1115	1093	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	1164	1515	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	917	1246	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	925	1484	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	396	664	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	1405	2325	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	776	918	608	843	2967	3829
Other	1018	2304	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	11660	15292	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	3484	4925	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	955	1316	258	225	2304	2803
Other	2969	3833	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	7408	10074	8655	8376	28277	33987

Dwelling Type						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	2899	3983	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	260	279	102	74	529	772
Other	28	11	25	32	119	91
Total	3187	4272	3519	3646	12630	15873

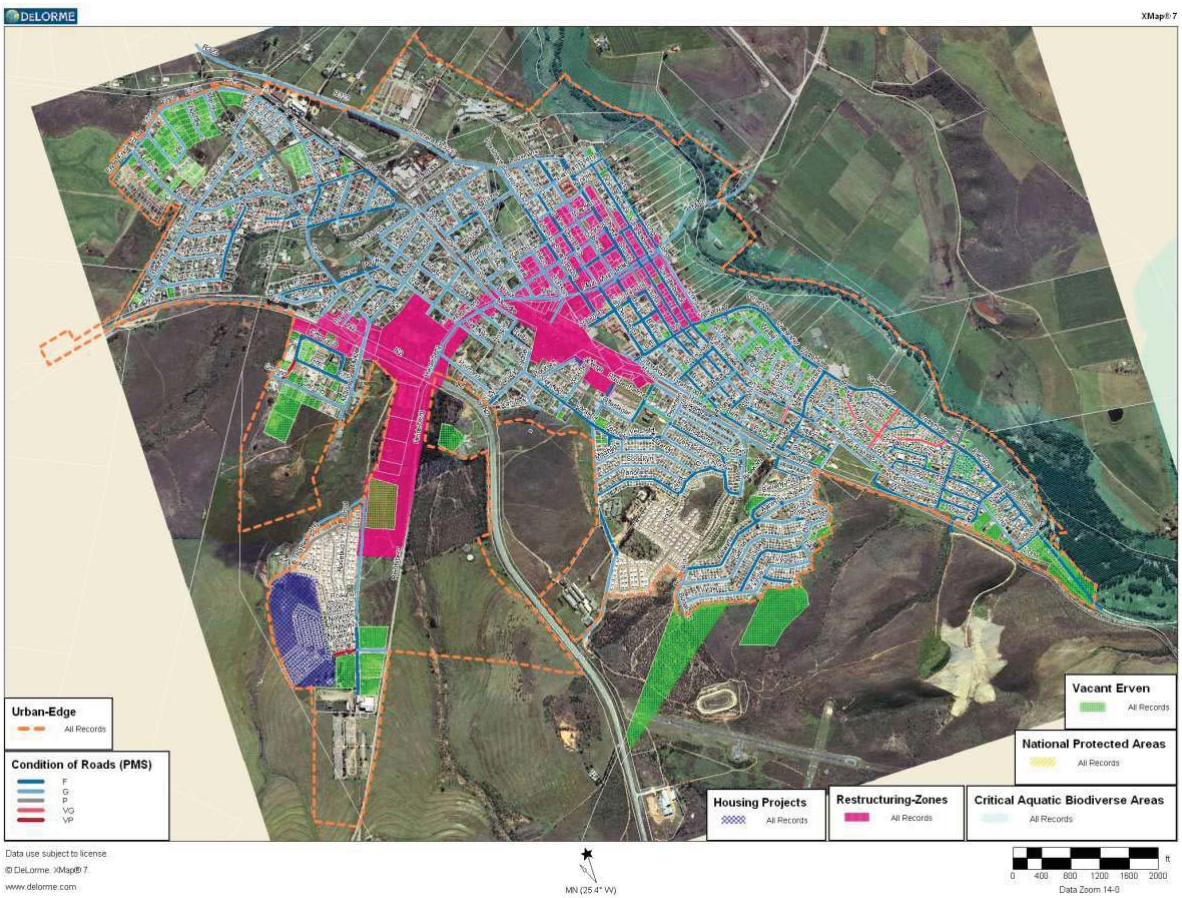
Annual Household Income						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	209	302	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	99	85	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	488	109	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	663	587	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	823	962	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	510	1053	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	270	623	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	102	365	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	9	146	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	9	22	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	6	7	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	0	10	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	3187	4272	3519	3646	12630	15873

Access to Water Services						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	3121	4249	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	51	5	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	3	18	279	249	306	319
Other	6	0	52	0	76	0
Total	3181	4272	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	2982	3988	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	15	90	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	3	1	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	9	6	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	9	19	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	9	61	173	38	317	151
None	154	71	490	133	788	299
Other	0	35	0	63	0	173
<b>Total</b>	<b>3181</b>	<b>4272</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Energy Source for Lighting						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	3042	4196	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	3	2	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	3	12	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	130	48	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	3	9	12	52	18	87
Other	0	5	55	9	64	36
<b>Total</b>	<b>3181</b>	<b>4272</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Refuse Removal						
	Riversdale SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	3157	4223	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	0	4	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	3	0	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	15	34	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	6	6	36	228	48	252
Other	0	7	0	289	0	320
<b>Total</b>	<b>3181</b>	<b>4272</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>





### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

**Planned Capital Budget Programme for Riversdale**

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.1.3	- Riversdal (55 904m)	6,7,8	R/D		850 000	1 000 000	1 000 000	1 200 000	2
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.2.3	- Riversdal (55 904m)	6,7,8	R/D						1
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.3	- Riversdal (3 700m)	6,7,8	R/D						1
1.1.1.3.7	- Kwanokhuthula (3 600m)	7	R/D						1
1.1.1.6	Herguis van Strate in Garcia	7	R/D	150 000		150 000		150 000	2
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.2.4	- Riversdal	6,7,8	R/D		550 000		200 000		1
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.3.4	- Riversdal	6,7,8	R/D			200 000	200 000	220 000	1
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.4.1.3	- Riversdal - Stormwater in Aloeridge	8	R/D	2 000 000					MIG
1.1.4.1.4	- Riversdal - Rehabilitasie van Pype	6,7,8	R/D		500 000				MIG
1.1.4.1.5	- Riversdal - Heesestr stormwater kanaal	8	R/D				1 000 000		MIG
1.1.4.1.6	- Riversdal - Kloof stormwater kanaal	8	R/D					1 500 000	MIG
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjes met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPWP
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.2.18	Telemetriestelsel	6,7,8	R/D	500 000					2
1.2.2.19	Vervang laedruk waterleiding	6,7,8	R/D	400 000	400 000	450 000	485 000	500 000	2
1.2.2.20	Spaar Waterpompe	6,7,8	R/D	60 000		60 000		65 000	1
1.2.2.21	Waterkleppe vir Berglyn	6	R/D	15 000	15 000	50 000	50 000	50 000	1
1.2.2.22	Vervanging van Leiwatersloot - Langstraat	7	R/D	0		20 000	50 000		1
1.2.3.7	Vervanging van houtbrug - Novo	7	R/D	20 000					1
1.2.3.8	Vervanging van Waterkleppe - Morestond	8	R/D	20 000		20 000			1

1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.2.4.2	Opgradering van sandfilter - Waterwerke	6,7,8	R/D	0	100 000		100 000		2
1.2.4.3	wwtw Sekuriteit	6,7,8	R/D	0		120 000			1
1.2.5.4	Watertoevoer en Beheer	6,7,8	R\D				8 000 000	2 000 000	DWA
1.2.7.2	Nuwe Reservoir	6,7,8	R\D				3 000 000	3 500 000	MIG
1.4.1.3	Opgradeer 11KV Hoofsubstasie	6,7,8	R/D	500 000	500 000	500 000	550 000	600 000	2
1.4.2.4	Opgradeer Substasie	6,7,8	R/D	200 000	220 000	250 000	280 000	300 000	2
1.4.4.5	Opgradering van Netwerk	6,7,8	R/D	600 000	600 000	600 000	600 000	650 000	2
1.5.1.5	Opgradering van Digester	6,7,8	R/D	0	100 000				2
1.5.1.6	Opgradering van Clarifier	6,7,8	R/D		50 000		25 000		1
1.5.1.7	Opgradering van handreelings	6,7,8	R/D			15 000			1
1.5.1.8	Ruskamer vir personeel - Green Drop	6,7,8	R/D	30 000					1
1.5.1.9	Aankoop van Rioolpompe	6,7,8	R/D		50 000		50 000	50 000	1
1.5.1.10	Noodkragopwekker 50 KVA	6,7,8	R/D			250 000	200 000		2
1.5.1.11	wwtw Sekuriteit	6,7,8	R/D				500 000	500 000	2
1.5.2.2	Opgradering van Pompstasie no 2	6	R/D	25 000					1
1.5.2.3	Vervanging van rioollyn - Joubertstraat	7	R/D	350 000					2
1.5.2.4	Opgradering van Rioollyn - Barakudastr.	7	R/D	80 000					2
1.5.2.5	Re Alignment sewerage main - Douglas Josephs	8	R/D	40 000					2
1.5.3.2	Bystand rioolpomp	6,7,8	R/D	80 000		85 000			1
1.5.3.3	Dompelpomp	6,7,8	R/D	45 000	40 000	40 000			1
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.5.4.3	Opgradering van Rioolwerke	6,7,8	R\D	3 770 618	561 382				MIG
1.5.5.1	Opgradering rioollyn - Rouxstr.	7	R\D					4 000 000	MIG
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H\Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG
2.1.1	Ontwikkeling van Uitwijdarm	7	R/D	150 000					1
2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2
2.5.4	Omheining van Thusong Sentrum	6,7,8	R/D	30 000					1
2.5.5	Plavei Thusong Sentrum	6,7,8	R/D	30 000					1
2.5.6	Afdak Thusong Sentrum	6,7,8	R/D				60 000		1
2.5.7	Toeboou van Vullishok - Burgesentrum	6,7,8	R/D	15 000					1

2.5.8	Aanbou van Toilet by Burgesentrum	6,7,8	R/D				60 000		1
2.5.9	Opgradering voorportaal Burgesentrum	6,7,8	R/D	15 000					1
2.5.10	Glaspaneel ontvangslokaal by Burgemeester	6,7,8	R/D	20 000					1
2.5.11	Diefwering - Burgesentrum Grondvloer	6,7,8	R/D				38 000		1
2.5.12	Stoorkamer - Burgesentrum	6,7,8	R/D				6 500		1
2.6.3	Uitbreiding van begraaftlaas	6,7,8	R/D	200 000	200 000	200 000			2
2.6.4	Aanbring van Gedenkmuur - Meurantpark	6,7,8	R/D		50 000				1
2.7.1	Trappe - Aloeridge, Morestond	7,8	R/D	400 000	200 000	200 000	200 000	200 000	1
2.8.1.1	Opgradering van kamp	7	R/D			50 000	50 000	50 000	1
2.8.1.2	Opgradering van kantoor	7	R/D			20 000	30 000		1
2.8.1.3	Skuifdeur vervangings - Charlets	7	R/D			30 000	30 000		1
2.8.1.4	Plavei voor Charlets	7	R/D			20 000	20 000		1
2.8.1.6	Put-Put Baan	7	R/D				200 000	100 000	2
3.1.1.1	Sedan motor - Gemeenskapsdienste	H/Q	R/D				280 000		1
3.1.1.2	Sedan motor - Gemeenskapveiligheid	H/Q	R/D	220 000				235 000	2
3.1.1.3	Sedan motor - Boubeheer	H/Q	R/D				220 000		1
3.1.1.4	Sedan motor - Burgesentrum	H/Q	R/D					240 000	1
3.1.2.1	Vuka motorfiets - Burgesentrum	6,7,8	R/D					12 000	1
3.1.3.11	1 X 5m3 Tipper - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D				700 000		2
3.1.3.12	LAW - Riool / Water	6,7,8	R/D	0	220 000	0	240 000		2
3.1.3.13	LAW - Openbare Werke / Parke / Elek	6,7,8	R/D		0	240 000	240 000	300 000	2
3.1.3.14	Dubbelkajuit Vragmotor - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D		0	400 000		450 000	2
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.1.3	Multi-purpuse Loader	6,7,8	R/D				800 000		2
3.2.1.4	Roller 2.7 ton - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D			350 000			2
3.2.4.4	Grassnyers - Garcia	6	R/D		6 000				1
3.2.4.5	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke	6,7,8	R/D				57 000		1
3.2.5.1	Mobile Kompressor - Elek	6,7,8	R/D					600 000	2
3.2.6.1.2	Rioolrods	6,7,8	R/D	5 000	5 500	5 500	5 700	5 800	1
3.2.6.1.5	Noodkragopwekker 200 KVA - Riool	6,7,8	R/D			450 000			2

3.2.6.2.1	2 X Ractchet lever hoist	6,7,8	R/D	8 400					1
3.2.6.2.2	1 X Clamp on Earth Tester	6,7,8	R/D		19 500				1
3.2.6.2.3	Meet Toerusting	6,7,8	R/D			6 500			1
3.2.6.2.4	Noodkragopwekker 50 KVA - Elektrisiteit	6,7,8	R/D				250 000		1
3.2.6.3.7	60 X Plastiekstoele - Sportgronde	6	R/D				12 000		1
3.2.6.3.8	5 X Staaltafels - Sportgronde	6	R/D					5 000	1
3.2.6.4.38	1 X Stofsuiers - Multipurpose Centre	6	R/D	2 000					1
3.2.6.4.39	20 liter Urn - Kwanokuthula saal	7	R/D					2 000	1
3.2.6.4.40	Mikrogolfoond - Kwanokuthula saal	7	R/D				700		1
3.2.6.4.41	Gordyne - Kwanokuthula saal	7	R/D				5 000		1
3.2.6.4.42	100 X Plastiekstoele - Burgesentrum	6,7,8	R/D					11 500	1
3.2.6.4.43	10 X Staaltafels - Burgesentrum	6,7,8	R/D					8 800	1
3.2.6.4.44	Wireless Handheld System - Thusong Sentrum	6,7,8	R/D					3 800	1
3.2.6.4.45	Blindings - Thusong Sentrum	6,7,8	R/D				20 000		1
3.2.6.4.46	Lugreëlaars - Thusong Sentrum	6,7,8	R/D					30 000	1
3.2.6.4.47	Kombuiskaste - Thusong Sentrum	6,7,8	R/D					20 000	1
3.2.6.5.1	Eetgery	7	R/D	2 000	3 000				1
3.2.6.5.2	Stowe	7	R/D	0	8 000				1
3.2.6.5.3	Yskaste	7	R/D	0	8 000				1
3.2.6.5.4	Breekgoed	7	R/D				7 000		1
3.2.6.5.5	2 X Kantoorstoele	7	R/D				3 000		1
3.2.6.6.6	2 X Liaseerkabinette	6,7,8	R/D	4 000					BIB
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingsstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					BIB
3.2.6.7.1	4 X Besoekerstoele - Toetsstasie	H/Q	R/D	2 500					1
3.2.6.7.2	1 X Tafel - Toetsstasie	H/Q	R/D	1 500					1
3.2.6.7.3	1 X Kassierestoel - Verkeer	H/Q	R/D	1 600					1
3.2.6.7.4	2 X Kantoorstoele - Verkeer	H/Q	R/D	2 500					1
3.2.6.7.5	1 X Vloerpoelerder - Verkeer	H/Q	R/D		10 000				1
3.2.6.7.6	1 X Urn - Verkeer	H/Q	R/D			1 500			1
3.2.6.7.7	Breekgoed & Eetgerei - Verkeer	H/Q	R/D	2 000					1
3.2.6.7.8	Digitale Kameras - Verkeer	H/Q	R/D	5 000		5 000		5 500	1
3.2.6.7.9	Spiedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			1

3.2.6.7.10	1 X Yskas - Wetstoepassing	H/Q	R/D		2 500				1
3.2.6.7.11	1 X Klankmeettoerusting - Wetstoepassing	H/Q	R/D	15 500					1
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	1
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	1
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	1
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	1
3.2.6.10.21	Randsnyers - Parke	6,7,8	R/D	6 800	6 800	7 000	7 000	7 200	1
3.2.6.10.22	1 X Compressor 200l - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D	8 500					1
3.2.6.10.23	1 X Tilt Bar & Wintch - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D		15 000	15 000			1
3.2.6.10.24	2 X Pole pruner - Openbare Werke / Elektries	6,7,8	R/D	9 000		9 000			1
3.2.6.10.25	1 X Stofsuier substasies - Elektries	6,7,8	R/D	6 000					1
3.2.6.10.26	1 X Elektriese Jackhammer - Water	6,7,8	R/D		16 000				1
3.2.6.10.27	1 X Waaier - Sekuriteit	H/Q	R/D	500					1
3.2.6.10.28	Hoëdrukspuit - Skut	H/Q	R/D		8 000				1
3.2.6.10.29	Ryobi Blower - Burgesentrum	6,7,8	R/D	6 000					1
3.2.6.10.30	Randsnyers - Beplanning / Riool	6,7,8	R/D		6 800	7 000			1
3.2.6.10.31	Kanonspreier Sportsveld Riverville	6,8	R/D					22 000	1
3.2.6.10.32	Rollertipe Veebesem - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D				140 000		1
3.2.6.10.33	Wacker - Elektries	6,7,8	R/D					25 000	1
3.2.6.10.34	Jackhammer - Elektries	6,7,8	R/D		23 000		50 000		1
3.2.6.10.35	Jackhammers - Openbare Werke / Elektries	6,7,8	R/D	40 000				25 000	1
3.2.6.10.36	Dubbelas Trailer met reelings - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D				250 000		1
3.2.6.10.37	1 X Plate Compactor - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D			30 000			1
3.2.6.10.38	Toestsapparaat - Green Drop - Riool	6,7,8	R/D	45 000					1
3.2.6.10.39	Gereedskap & -kas - Openbare Werke	6,7,8	R/D		6 000				1
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	1
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				1
3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	1
3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		1
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			2

3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				1
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					2
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoorder - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				1
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			1
3.3.1.1	1 X Projektor & Screen - Raadsaal	H/Q	R/D	8 000					1
3.3.1.2	1 X Laptop - Regsdienste	H/Q	R/D				8 000		1
3.3.1.3	1 X Desktops & Drukker - Salarisse - HFD	H/Q	R/D	8 000					1
3.3.1.4	1 X 4 in one Scan/print/copier/fax - Sek - HFD	H/Q	R/D	2 200					1
3.3.1.5	2 X Rekenaarskerm 23" - Bates/Begr - HFD	H/Q	R/D			2 400			1
3.3.1.6	1 X Scanner - Bates - HFD	H/Q	R/D			1 700			1
3.3.1.7	1 X Laptop - SCM	H/Q	R/D	8 000					1
3.3.1.8	1 X Projektor & Screen - SCM	H/Q	R/D		10 000				1
3.3.1.9	1 X Laptop - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D				8 500		1
3.3.1.10	5 X Kragverkoperekenaars & Druk - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D	35 000					1
3.3.1.11	6 X Hand Held terminals chargers - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D	25 200					1
3.3.1.12	1 X Rekenaar - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D			7 200			1
3.3.1.13	2 X Token Readers - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D	2 000					1
3.3.1.14	1 X Scanner - Uitg - HFD	H/Q	R/D				1 700		1
3.3.1.15	3 X Laptops - MHB	H/Q	R/D	8 200	16 800				1
3.3.1.16	2 X Multi funksie drukkers - MHB	H/Q	R/D	5 000	5 000				1
3.3.1.17	2 X Drukkers - MHB	H/Q	R/D	3 000			3 000		1
3.3.1.18	1 X Projektor & Skerm - MHB	H/Q	R/D				8 000		1
3.3.1.19	1 X Kleurprinter - Elek	H/Q	R/D		3 000				1
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			1
3.3.1.21	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		1
3.3.1.22	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		1
3.3.1.23	4 X Laptops - MPCC	H/Q	R/D				16 000	16 000	1
3.3.1.24	1 X Colour Laser Printer - MPCC	H/Q	R/D					6 000	1
3.3.1.25	2 X Rekenaars - ICT	H/Q	R/D		16 000		16 000		1
3.3.1.26	Expansion of Wireless Network - ICT	H/Q	R/D					50 000	1
3.3.1.27	Upgrading Zimbra Mailserver (Commercial) - ICT	H/Q	R/D		0	140 000	20 000		1



3.3.1.28	Online vending Solution - ICT	H/Q	R/D	80 000					1
3.3.1.29	Storage Area Network - ICT	H/Q	R/D	60 000	60 000				1
3.3.1.30	Disaster Recovery Server - ICT	H/Q	R/D	80 000					1
3.3.1.31	Fibre to DR site - ICT	H/Q	R/D	30 000					1
3.3.1.32	Citrix software license - ICT	H/Q	R/D	30 000					1
3.3.1.33	Fibre recabbling Hessequa Main - ICT	H/Q	R/D		60 000	20 000			1
3.3.1.34	1 X Desktop & Drukker - Museum	H/Q	R/D				14 000		1
3.3.1.35	2 X Laser printer - Admin	H/Q	R/D	6 000					1
3.3.1.36	1 X Scanner met feeder - Admin	H/Q	R/D				2 500		1
3.3.1.37	4 X Laptops - Admin (Manager/Sec/PMS/Media)	H/Q	R/D				55 000		1
3.3.1.38	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					1
3.3.1.39	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			1
3.3.1.40	Rekening Drukkers (Groot) - ICT	H/Q	R/D			30 000		35 000	1
3.3.2.3	1 X Lamineerder - MM	H/Q	R/D	3 000					1
3.3.2.4	1 X Kantoorstool - MM	H/Q	R/D	1 200					1
3.3.2.5	1 X Kas met Rakke - MM	H/Q	R/D			2 500			1
3.3.2.6	1 X Kantoorstoele - Klientediens - Admin	H/Q	R/D	1 100					1
3.3.2.7	1 X Blindings - Admin kombuis	H/Q	R/D			2 200			1
3.3.2.8	Side Extension for desk - Admin (Media)	H/Q	R/D				5 000		1
3.3.2.9	1 X Tipist Chair - Admin (Sek)	H/Q	R/D				2 000		1
3.3.2.10	1 X Desk with side extention - Admin (Sek)	H/Q	R/D				5 700		1
3.3.2.11	1 X Desk - Admin	H/Q	R/D				1 500		1
3.3.2.12	1 X Chair - Admin	H/Q	R/D					1 000	1
3.3.2.13	3 X Staalkabinette - MHB	H/Q	R/D			4 500			1
3.3.2.14	4 X Kennisgewingborde - MHB	H/Q	R/D		2 800				1
3.3.2.15	2 X Ingeboude Kaste - MHB	H/Q	R/D				3 300		1
3.3.2.16	2 X Lessenaars - MHB	H/Q	R/D				3 650		1
3.3.2.17	3 X Cupboard glass doors - MHB	H/Q	R/D				7 500		1
3.3.2.18	3 X Office Chairs - MHB	H/Q	R/D			2 400	3 000		1
3.3.2.19	1 X Typist Chair - MHB	H/Q	R/D				1 500		1
3.3.2.20	3 X Heaters - MHB	H/Q	R/D				1 800		1

3.3.2.21	3 X Electric Fans - MHB	H/Q	R/D				1 200		1
3.3.2.22	1 X Lessenaar - ICT	H/Q	R/D			4 000			1
3.3.2.23	1 X Houtkas - Regsdienste	H/Q	R/D		2 500				1
3.3.2.24	1 X Boekrak - Regsdienste	H/Q	R/D	2 500					1
3.3.2.25	4 X Kantoorstoele - Beplanning	H/Q	R/D			2 500			1
3.3.2.26	1 X Lessenaar - Beplanning	H/Q	R/D		3 500				1
3.3.2.27	2 X Director's Chairs - Beplanning	H/Q	R/D			3 000			1
3.3.2.28	1 X Tiksterstoel - Sekr - HFD	H/Q	R/D	1 600					1
3.3.2.29	1 X Optelmasjiene - Beg - HFD	H/Q	R/D	1 600	1 600				1
3.3.2.30	2 X Conference Armchair - Sal - HFD	H/Q	R/D	3 000					1
3.3.2.31	1 X Rak vir printer & faks - Sal - HFD	H/Q	R/D	2 000					1
3.3.2.32	1 X Optelmasjiene - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D	1 600	1 600				1
3.3.2.33	2 X Besoekerstoele - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D		5 000				1
3.3.2.34	1 X Rekenaarwerkstasies - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D	1 600					1
3.3.2.35	1 X Stoel - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D	1 600					1
3.3.2.36	1 X Mobile Pedestal - Ink - HFD	H/Q	R/D		1 500				1
3.3.2.37	1 X Lessenaar - Riool	6	R/D		3 500				1
3.3.2.38	2 X Kantoorstoele - Riool	6	R/D			3 000			1
3.3.2.39	1 X Liaseerkabinet - Riool	6	R/D		1 700				1
3.3.2.40	1 x Lessenaar - Water	8	R/D			3 500			1
3.3.2.41	2 X Kantoorstoele - Water	8	R/D		3 000				1
3.5.1.1	2 X Lugversorgers - ICT	H/Q	R/D			20 000			1
3.5.1.2	Burglar Bars & Smoke Detectors - Server R-ICT	H/Q	R/D					25 000	1
3.5.1.3	Upgrade Server Room & UPS - ICT	H/Q	R/D				70 000	30 000	1
3.5.1.4	Raised Floors in Server Room - ICT	H/Q	R/D				15 000		1
3.5.1.5	1 X Lugversorger - Toetsstasie	H/Q	R/D	8 000					1
3.5.1.6	1 X Lugversorger - Oogtoets	H/Q	R/D			8 000			1
3.5.1.7	2 X Lugversorgers - MHB	H/Q	R/D		20 000				1
3.5.1.8	2 X Lugversorgers - Gemeen - Dist.	H/Q	R/D				20 000		1
3.5.1.9	1 X Lugreëlaar - Regsdienste	H/Q	R/D		8 000				1
3.5.3.1	Plavei van toetsbaan	H/Q	R/D	120 000					2
3.5.4.5	Diefwering van tennisklubhuis -Riversdal	7	R/D	5 000					1

<b>3.5.4.6</b>	Omhein van Jukskeibane -Riversdal	7	R/D				25 000		<b>1</b>
<b>3.5.5.2</b>	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					<b>2</b>
<b>4.1</b>	Stootskrapeer - Sanitasie	6,7,8	R/D			1 000 000		1 200 000	<b>2</b>
<b>4.2</b>	Skidster - Riool	6,7,8	R/D	450 000					<b>2</b>
<b>4.5</b>	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	<b>2</b>
<b>5.1.2</b>	Gap Behuising - Dienste - R/D	6,7,8	R/D	1 800 000					<b>BEH</b>

## Slangrivier

### Introduction

Slangrivier is a rural community that developed as an Act 9 land transfer. It is located close to the N2 about 11km west of Heidelberg. The economic activity in Slangrivier differs from a few small convenience stores to subsistence farming by the upcoming farmers. Slangrivier also experiences a large need for housing.

Population Group & Gender Totals						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	6	28	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	1134	1443	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	0	11	9	31	30	100
White	3	14	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	11	0	38	0	158
Total	1143	1507	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	9	36	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	1200	1448	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	0	11	6	36	15	99
White	0	6	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	3	0	20	0	76
Total	1209	1504	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	15	64	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	2334	2891	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	0	22	15	67	45	199
White	3	20	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	14	0	59	0	235
Total	2352	3011	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	2325	2874	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	21	62	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	3	7	206	177	742	1066
Other	3	68	75	314	186	2177
Total	2352	3011	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	807	858	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	763	943	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	656	1056	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	125	154	592	741	3571	5381
Total	2352	3011	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	189	131	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	127	101	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	92	129	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	160	169	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	171	176	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	248	213	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	252	241	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	291	289	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	200	408	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	123	221	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	72	203	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	33	96	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	105	244	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	15	12	608	843	2967	3829
Other	275	379	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	2352	3011	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	367	679	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	238	149	258	225	2304	2803
Other	804	1143	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	1408	1971	8655	8376	28277	33987

Dwelling Type						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	531	619	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	18	62	102	74	529	772
Other	0	6	25	32	119	91
Total	549	688	3519	3646	12630	15873

Annual Household Income						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	67	56	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	68	36	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	153	47	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	149	151	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	93	188	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	10	157	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	9	37	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	0	9	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	0	3	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	0	1	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	0	2	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	0	0	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	549	688	3519	3646	12630	15873

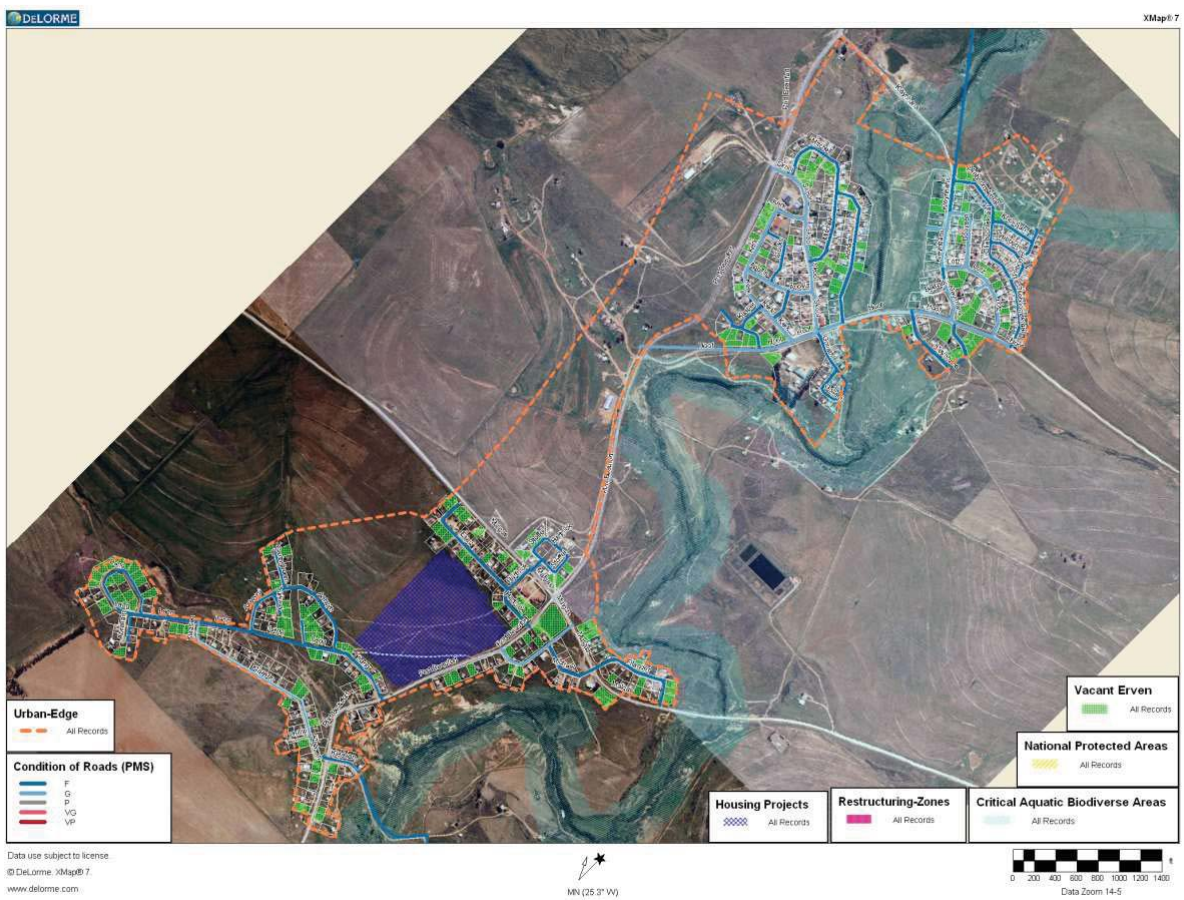
Access to Water Services						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	536	671	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	0	2	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	0	15	279	249	306	319
Other	0	0	52	0	76	0
Total	536	688	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	374	522	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	3	17	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	32	0	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	55	62	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	45	29	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	0	3	173	38	317	151
None	27	33	490	133	788	299
Other	0	22	0	63	0	173
Total	536	688	3543	3646	12631	15873

Energy Source for Lighting						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	444	670	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	0	1	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	0	0	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	92	10	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	0	2	12	52	18	87
Other	0	5	55	9	64	36
Total	536	688	3543	3646	12631	15873

Refuse Removal						
	Slangrivier SP		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	490	666	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	0	2	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	44	1	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	3	5	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	0	11	36	228	48	252
Other	0	3	0	289	0	320
Total	536	688	3543	3646	12631	15873





### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

**Planned Capital Budget Programme for Slangrivier**

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.4	- Slangrivier (9 800m)	4	S/R						1
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.2.2	Opgradering van Strate	4	S/R	2 732 364	1 627 831	11 559 400			MIG
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.4.1.2	- Heidelberg - Helmstr. Sigwater	4	H/B				500 000		MIG
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjes met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPWP
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.2.23	Lugkleppe - Uitbreiding 2	4	S/R	15 000	15 000	15 000	15 000	20 000	1
1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.2.7.1	New 1 Mil Reservoir	4,5	H/B	1 528 043					MIG
1.4.6.1	250 Sub Ekonomiese Huise - S/R	4	S/R	2 000 000					DME
1.5.1.12	Omheining Rioolwerke	4	S/R	75 000					2
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.5.4.7	Nuwe Oksidasiedamme - Fase 2	4	S/R		715 468			2 400 000	MIG
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H/Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG
2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2
3.1.3.24	LAW - Openbare Werke	4	S/R			0	240 000		2
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.2.6	Fiat Trekker 780 - Openbare Werke	4	S/R				450 000		2

3.2.4.11	Kudu Grassnyer - Openbare Werke	4	S/R		55 000				1
3.2.6.1.4	Rioolrods	4	S/R	3 500	3 800		4 000		1
3.2.6.4.48	20 liter Urn - Gemeenskap saal	4	S/R					2 000	1
3.2.6.4.49	3 Tier tea trolle - Gemeenskap saal	4	S/R					1 450	1
3.2.6.4.50	1 X Stoof - Gemeenskap saal	4	S/R					5 500	1
3.2.6.4.51	10 X Staaltafels - Gemeenskap saal	4	S/R				8 000		1
3.2.6.6.2	6 X Leunstoele vir leesarea - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	10 000					BIB
3.2.6.6.3	4 X Potte vir plante - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	1 500					BIB
3.2.6.6.4	8 X Boekrakke - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	16 000					BIB
3.2.6.6.5	1 X Naambord - Duivenhoks	4	H/B	3 500					BIB
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					BIB
3.2.6.7.9	Spoedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			1
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000		25 000	25 000	1
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	1
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	1
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	1
3.2.6.10.51	Hoëdrukspuit - Riool	4	S/R	10 000					1
3.2.6.10.52	Randsnyers - Openbare Werke	4	S/R		6 800			7 200	1
3.2.6.10.53	Kettingsaag - Openbare Werke	4	S/R	6 200					1
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	1
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				1
3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	1
3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		1
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			2
3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				1
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					2
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoordeur - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				1
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			1
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			1
3.3.1.21	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		1

3.3.1.22	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		1
3.3.1.38	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					1
3.3.1.39	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			1
3.3.2.42	2 X 4 Drawer filing cabinet - HFD	4	S/R	1 700	1 700				1
3.5.4.8	Teel van Vloer - Groenie die Drake	4	S/R				8 000		1
3.5.5.2	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					2
4.5	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	2

## Stilbaai

### Introduction

Stilbaai is located on the river mouth of the Goukou River. It is also the largest coastal town in Hessequa. Even though it is a holiday retreat for a large amount of people, economic activity continues during the year due to the large amount of permanent residents in Stillbay. Stilbaai also serves as primary job creating economy for the community of Melkhoutfontein. StilBaai is characterised by the river running through the town and dividing it in two areas known as Stilbaai East and Stilbaai West.

Population Group & Gender Totals						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	51	53	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	138	54	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	0	2	9	31	30	100
White	1215	1424	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	15	0	38	0	158
Total	1404	1549	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	12	70	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	173	60	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	3	2	6	36	15	99
White	1420	1821	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	12	0	20	0	76
Total	1607	1965	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	63	123	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	311	114	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	3	5	15	67	45	199
White	2634	3245	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	28	0	59	0	235
Total	3012	3514	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	2702	2792	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	271	451	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	15	5	206	177	742	1066
Other	24	267	75	314	186	2177
Total	3012	3514	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	349	262	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	518	420	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	1358	1360	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	786	1471	592	741	3571	5381
Total	3012	3514	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	95	10	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	48	20	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	35	29	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	49	19	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	42	22	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	53	23	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	72	43	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	62	28	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	152	146	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	74	61	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	404	268	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	94	82	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	1036	1267	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	696	1131	608	843	2967	3829
Other	100	364	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	3012	3514	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	818	729	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	36	33	258	225	2304	2803
Other	939	927	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	1793	1689	8655	8376	28277	33987



Dwelling Type						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	1309	1720	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	9	8	102	74	529	772
Other	33	7	25	32	119	91
Total	1351	1735	3519	3646	12630	15873

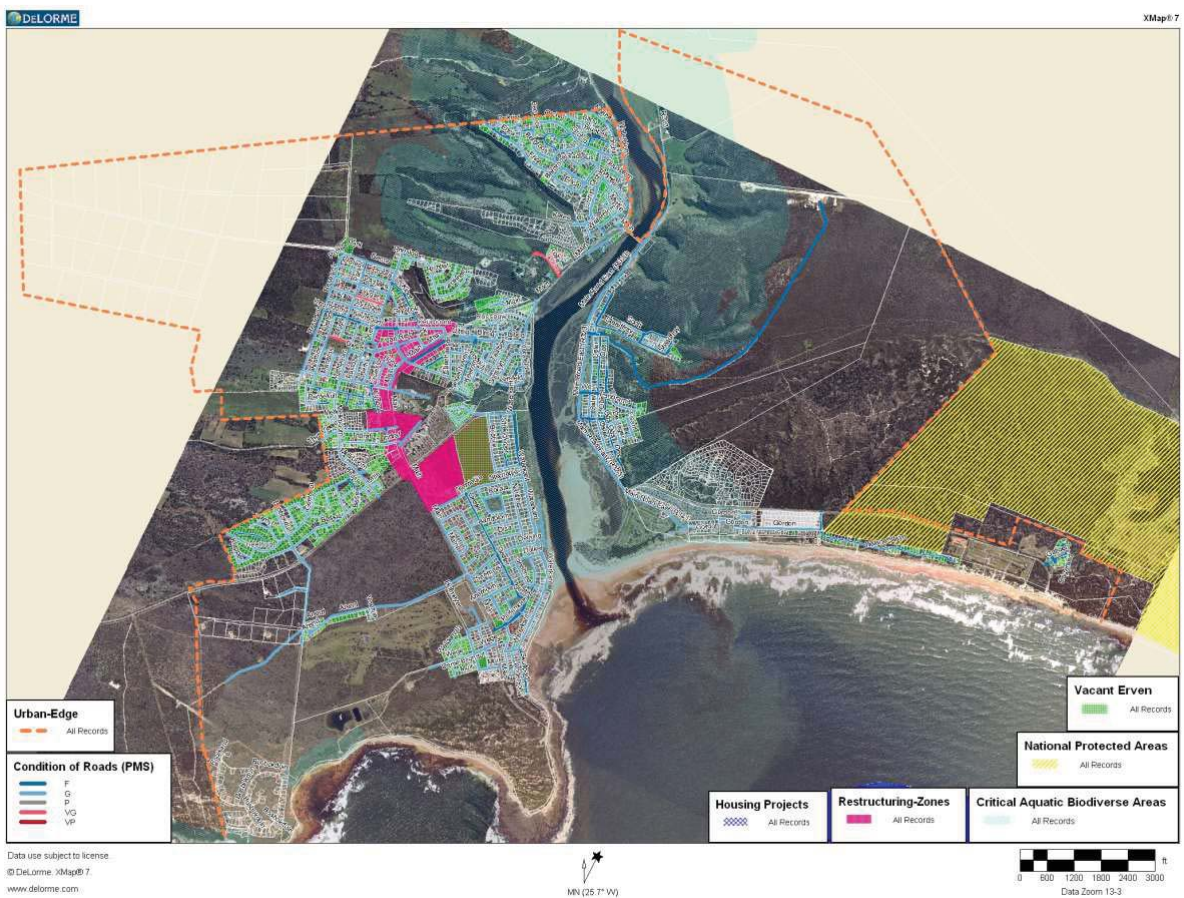
Annual Household Income						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	138	177	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	15	11	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	73	11	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	126	85	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	247	130	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	362	356	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	253	415	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	95	366	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	12	126	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	13	31	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	7	13	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	9	12	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	1	0	0	0	1
Total	1351	1735	3519	3646	12630	15873

Access to Water Services						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	1327	1726	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	24	0	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	9	9	279	249	306	319
Other	0	0	52	0	76	0
Total	1360	1735	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	1306	1719	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	6	6	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	0	0	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	0	0	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	3	0	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	15	0	173	38	317	151
None	30	5	490	133	788	299
Other	0	5	0	63	0	173
<b>Total</b>	<b>1360</b>	<b>1735</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Energy Source for Lighting						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	1309	1721	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	0	2	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	0	0	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	51	4	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	0	9	12	52	18	87
Other	0	0	55	9	64	36
<b>Total</b>	<b>1360</b>	<b>1735</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>

Refuse Removal						
	Stilbaai		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	1258	1702	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	0	1	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	3	4	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	93	24	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	6	0	36	228	48	252
Other	0	4	0	289	0	320
<b>Total</b>	<b>1360</b>	<b>1735</b>	<b>3543</b>	<b>3646</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>15873</b>



### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

**Planned Capital Budget Programme for Stilbaai**

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.1.7	- Stilbaai (66 007m)	1,3	S/B		850 000	800 000	1 100 000	1 180 000	2
1.1.1.1.8	- Melkhoutfontein	1	S/B				200 000	200 000	2
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.2.4	- Stilbaai (66 007m)	1,3	S/B						1
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.8	- Melkhoutfontein (200m)	1	S/B						1
1.1.1.4	Herseel Geproklameerde Hoofpaaie (20%)	1,3	S/B	456 200					2
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.2.1	Herseel Geproklameerde Hoofpaaie (80%) (**)	1,3	S/B	1 824 800					VERV
1.1.3.1	Voorsiening van Stormwater - Hoofweg Oos	1	S/B						1
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.2.5	- Stilbaai	1,3	S/B		300 000		320 000		1
1.1.3.2.7	- Melkhoutfontein	1	S/B			200 000		300 000	2
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.3.5	- Stilbaai/MHF/JFT	1,3	S/B			300 000	300 000	350 000	2
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.4.1.7	- Melkhoutfontein	1	S/B				1 000 000	500 000	MIG
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjies met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPW P
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.2.9	Opgradering van Netwerk te Palinggat	3	S/B	250 000			100 000		2
1.2.2.10	Sludge pomp	1,3	S/B		20 000		25 000		1
1.2.2.11	Spaar Waterpompe - MHFT	1	S/B		40 000		25 000		1
1.2.2.12	Pypwerk & Pompe - Olienhoutfontein	1	S/B	50 000					1
1.2.2.13	Vervanging van ou Waternetwerk	1	S/B	400 000	250 000	250 000	250 000	250 000	2
1.2.2.14	Opgradering van Watertoevoer	1,3	S/B		1 450 000	2 000 000	1 200 000		2

1.2.2.15	Vervanging van ou Klugkleppe	3	S/B	50 000	50 000	50 000	50 000	50 000	1
1.2.3.9	Opgradering van Olive Grove watersuiwering	1	S/B			500 000	500 000		2
1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.2.4.1	Omheining van Reservoirs-oosdam/Olienhoutfontein	1	S/B	0		100 000		100 000	1
1.2.5.2	Watertoevoer na Kleinboere	1	S/B					1 000 000	MIG
1.2.5.3	Behuising - Watervoorsiening	1	S/B				2 167 900	2 464 100	MIG
1.2.7.3	New Bulk Water supply - S/B & MHFT	1,3	S/B		4 081 742				MIG
1.3.3	PT shelter	3	S/B					400 000	EPW P
1.4.1.4	Installeer 66/11KV - Hoofstasie	1	S/B	9 000 000	13 000 000	7 400 000			3
1.4.2.5	Opgradeer Substasies - Wes / Jongensfontein	3	S/B			300 000			2
1.4.2.6	Opgradeer Substasie - Oos	1	S/B	300 000					2
1.4.4.6	Opgradering van Netwerk - Stilbaai-Wes/Oos	1,3	S/B	700 000	700 000	750 000	750 000	800 000	2
1.4.6.2	280 Sub Ekonomiese Huise - MHFT	1	S/B	2 000 000	1 000 000				DME
1.4.6.3	200 Sub Ekonomiese Huise - MHFT	1	S/B	1 000 000	1 000 000				DME
1.4.6.4	300 Sub Ekonomiese Huise - MHFT	1	S/B		3 300 000	5 000 000			DME
1.5.2.6	Opgradering van pompstasie - Bosbokkloof	1	S/B		50 000	40 000	40 000		2
1.5.2.7	Opgradering van pompstasie - Bosbokduin	3	S/B		50 000	40 000	40 000		2
1.5.2.8	Opgradering van pompstasie no. 6	3	S/B		200 000		100 000		2
1.5.2.9	Stainless steel ketting vir pompstasie	3	S/B		30 000		30 000		1
1.5.2.10	Opgradering van pompstasie - MHFT	1	S/B		120 000	120 000			2
1.5.2.11	Opgradering van pompstasie no. 4 - Green Drop	3	S/B	400 000		100 000			2
1.5.2.12	Opgradering van pompstasie no. 7 - Green Drop	3	S/B			50 000			1
1.5.2.13	Opgradering van pompstasie no. 8 - Green Drop	3	S/B		50 000				1
1.5.2.14	Noodkragopwekker vir Pompstasie no 3 - Green Drop	3	S/B	350 000					2
1.5.2.15	Vervanging van Rioollyn	1,3	S/B	500 000					2
1.5.3.4	Bystand rioolpomp - MHFT	1	S/B	70 000					1
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.5.4.4	New Bulk Sewer Supply - S/B & MHFT	1,3	S/B		3 151 787				MIG
1.5.5.2	Rioolnetwerk - Behuising	1	S/B				3 200 000		MIG
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H/Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG

2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2
2.8.5.1	Opgradering van Kamp-Vervang van Dakke	1	S/B	0	120 000	130 000			2
2.8.5.2	Randstene om staanplekke af te baken	1	S/B			200 000	200 000	200 000	2
2.8.5.3	Herstel & Seel van paaie	1	S/B			100 000	150 000	150 000	1
2.8.5.4	Vervanging van heining	1	S/B				122 000		1
2.8.5.5	Teel van Charlets se vloere	1	S/B			60 000	35 000	40 000	1
2.8.5.6	Opgradering van Kantoer	1	S/B			2 000	30 000	30 000	1
2.8.5.7	Speelpark	1	S/B				8 000		1
2.8.5.8	Paving rondom Charlets en ablusieblokke	1	S/B			80 000	70 000	60 000	1
2.8.6.1	Herbou van Strate & Voorsien Stormwater	1	S/B	0	120 000	140 000	150 000		2
2.8.6.2	Toiletfasiliteite in B tipe Charlets	1	S/B			300 000	500 000	400 000	2
2.8.6.3	Nuwe Boiler - Jeugsentrum	1	S/B	90 000					1
2.8.6.4	Teel van B blok	1	S/B					42 000	1
2.8.6.5	Opgradering van Kantoer	1	S/B			20 000	30 000	30 000	1
2.8.6.6	Speelpark	1	S/B				8 000	8 000	1
2.8.6.7	Rolstoel vriendelike toiletfasiliteite	1	S/B				50 000	50 000	1
2.8.6.8	Opgradering van Kamp	1	S/B			80 000	80 000	80 000	1
3.1.2.2	Vuka motorfiets - Water	1,3	S/B				12 000		1
3.1.3.15	1 X 5m3 Tipper - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B		700 000		750 000		2
3.1.3.16	1 X 3ton Vragmotor - Parke	1,3	S/B			350 000			2
3.1.3.17	LAW - Parke / Water	1,3	S/B	220 000				250 000	2
3.1.3.18	LAW - Reinig / OW / Elektries	1,3	S/B	220 000		240 000		250 000	2
3.1.3.19	Cherry Picker - Elektries	1,3	S/B		0	900 000			2
3.1.3.20	Dubbelkajuit Vragmotor - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B					450 000	2
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.1.5	Roller 2.7 ton - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B		350 000				2
3.2.4.6	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke	3	S/B	55 000				57 000	1
3.2.4.7	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke - Preekstoel	1	S/B				57 000		1
3.2.4.8	Kudu Grassnyer - Parke - Ellensrust	1	S/B			57 000			1
3.2.6.1.3	Rioolrods	1,3	S/B	5 000	5 500	5 500	5 700	5 800	1



3.2.6.3.9	Vervanging van mat by Krieketklub - MHFT	1	S/B				16 000		1
3.2.6.3.10	Grenstou - MHFT	1	S/B				10 000		1
3.2.6.3.11	10 X tafels - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				10 000		1
3.2.6.3.12	60 X Stoele - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				12 000		1
3.2.6.3.13	1 X Yskas - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				5 000		1
3.2.6.3.14	1 X Stoof - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				6 000		1
3.2.6.3.15	1 X Urn - Seagulls - MHFT	1	S/B				800		1
3.2.6.4.22	1 X Aluminium leer - Stadsaal	3	S/B	2 300					1
3.2.6.4.23	1 X Stoof - MHFT	1	S/B					6 000	1
3.2.6.4.24	50 X Plastiekstoele - MHFT	1	S/B					5 500	1
3.2.6.4.25	5 X Staaltafels - MHFT	1	S/B					4 000	1
3.2.6.4.26	1 X Yskas - MHFT	1	S/B					5 000	1
3.2.6.4.27	Wireless Handheld System - MHFT	1	S/B					3 200	1
3.2.6.4.28	Behringer Pmp 980 - MHFT	1	S/B					5 200	1
3.2.6.4.29	Kas vir Klanktoerusting - MHFT	1	S/B					1 700	1
3.2.6.4.30	Speakers - MHFT	1	S/B					2 800	1
3.2.6.4.31	Wireless Handheld System - Stadsaal	3	S/B					3 200	1
3.2.6.4.32	Behringer Pmp 980 - Stadsaal	3	S/B					5 200	1
3.2.6.4.33	Kas vir Klanktoerusting - Stadsaal	3	S/B					1 700	1
3.2.6.4.34	Speakers & Amplifier- Stadsaal	3	S/B					7 700	1
3.2.6.4.35	1 X Mikrogolfoond - Stadsaal	3	S/B					800	1
3.2.6.4.36	Trolley Mop - Stadsaal	3	S/B					1 800	1
3.2.6.4.37	1 X Stofsuier - Stadsaal	3	S/B					1 000	1
3.2.6.5.13	2 X Kantoorstoele	1	S/B				3 000		1
3.2.6.5.14	Lugversorger	1	S/B				8 000		1
3.2.6.5.15	Gereedskap vir kamp	1	S/B				7 000	10 000	1
3.2.6.5.16	Yskaste	1	S/B				8 000	13 000	1
3.2.6.5.17	Stowe	1	S/B				15 000		1
3.2.6.5.18	Matrasse	1	S/B				15 000		1
3.2.6.5.19	Breekgoed & Eetgerei	1	S/B				8 000		1
3.2.6.5.20	Kantoorstoel	1	S/B				1 500		1
3.2.6.5.21	Lugversorger	1	S/B				8 000		1

3.2.6.5.22	Gereedskap vir kamp	1	S/B				10 000	6 000	1
3.2.6.5.23	Yskaste	1	S/B				18 000	10 000	1
3.2.6.5.24	Tafels & Stoele	1	S/B				10 000	6 000	1
3.2.6.5.25	Matrasse	1	S/B				32 000	35 000	1
3.2.6.5.26	Wasmasjien	1	S/B				5 000		1
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					BIB
3.2.6.7.9	Spoedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			1
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	1
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	1
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	1
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	1
3.2.6.10.40	Randsnyers - Parke	1,3	S/B	13 600	13 600	14 000	14 000	14 400	1
3.2.6.10.41	1 X Hedge Trimmer - Parke	1,3	S/B	7 000					1
3.2.6.10.42	1 X BG66D Blower - Parke	1,3	S/B		6 000				1
3.2.6.10.43	Randsnyers - Preekstoel / MHFT	1	S/B	6 800		7 000			1
3.2.6.10.44	Randsnyer - Ellensrust	1	S/B		6 800			7 200	1
3.2.6.10.45	Hoëdrukspuit - Riool	3	S/B		120 000				1
3.2.6.10.46	Betonmenger - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B			50 000			1
3.2.6.10.47	Teemasjien - Openbare Werke	1,3	S/B				30 000		1
3.2.6.10.48	Kanonspuit - Sport - MHFT	1	S/B				25 000		1
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	1
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				1
3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	1
3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		1
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			2
3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				1
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					2
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoorder - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				1
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			1
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			1

3.3.1.21	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		1
3.3.1.22	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		1
3.3.1.38	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					1
3.3.1.39	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			1
3.5.4.7	Veiligheidsheining Skietbaan - Stilbaai	1,3	S/B				15 000		1
3.5.5.2	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					2
4.5	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	2
5.1.1	Lae Koste Behuising Beplanning - MHFT	1	S\B	220 000					BEH
5.1.3	Lae Koste Behuising - Dienste - MHFT	1	S\B						BEH
5.1.4	Lae Koste Behuising - Tops - MHFT	1	S\B						BEH

## Witsand

### Introduction

Witsand is a coastal town located next to the river mouth of the Breederiver. It is a popular holiday destination during holiday seasons. Witsand also enjoys a rich heritage of being a “whale nursery” and serves as an ideal whale spotting destination for whale watchers. The economy of Witsand is heavily dependent on seasonal visitors and the tourism industry.

Population Group & Gender Totals						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
Male	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	0	16	402	470	1083	2142
Coloured	6	4	4389	4076	14639	17358
Indian or Asian	0	0	9	31	30	100
White	94	145	1848	1808	5622	5766
Other	0	3	0	38	0	158
Total	100	168	6648	6424	21374	25525
Female	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	3	15	247	282	741	1763
Coloured	12	4	4513	4050	16076	18711
Indian or Asian	0	0	6	36	15	99
White	87	135	1459	1659	5933	6467
Other	0	0	0	20	0	76
Total	102	153	6226	6047	22765	27117
Total	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Black African	3	31	650	752	1824	3906
Coloured	18	7	8903	8126	30715	36069
Indian or Asian	0	0	15	67	45	199
White	181	280	3306	3467	11555	12233
Other	0	3	0	59	0	235
Total	202	321	12874	12471	44139	52642

Language Use						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Afrikaans	139	225	12349	11564	42058	47548
English	60	81	243	416	1153	1851
IsiXhosa	3	0	206	177	742	1066
Other	0	15	75	314	186	2177
Total	202	321	12874	12471	44139	52642

Age Groups						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
0 - 14	9	15	3549	3276	11933	12826
15 - 35	15	27	4501	3859	14136	15483
36 - 65	115	176	4232	4595	14499	18952
66 - 120	63	104	592	741	3571	5381
Total	202	321	12874	12471	44139	52642

Education Levels						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No schooling	6	1	1527	773	3683	2181
Grade 1 / Sub A	3	0	517	347	1746	1358
Grade 2 / Sub B	0	1	398	444	1219	1524
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	0	2	605	498	1803	1743
Grade 4 / Std 2	0	1	751	609	2192	2122
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	0	1	841	638	2625	2198
Grade 6 / Std 4	6	4	1248	872	3397	2984
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	0	4	1210	1060	4023	3872
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	6	12	1032	1155	3888	5078
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	3	5	623	791	2539	3689
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	21	25	668	893	3295	4545
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	0	2	287	310	1254	1898
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	91	113	1325	1710	5645	8539
Tertiary	63	129	608	843	2967	3829
Other	3	22	1235	1527	3863	7082
Total	202	321	12874	12471	44139	52642

Official Employment Status						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Employed	60	104	5399	5290	14103	17052
Unemployed	0	10	258	225	2304	2803
Other	65	80	2997	2860	11870	14132
Total	125	194	8655	8376	28277	33987

Dwelling Type						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Formal	121	173	3393	3540	11982	15009
Informal	0	0	102	74	529	772
Other	0	3	25	32	119	91
Total	121	175	3519	3646	12630	15873

Annual Household Income						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
No income	10	12	116	247	793	1248
R 1 - R 4800	0	0	108	28	450	275
R 4801 - R 9600	24	3	688	78	2026	470
R 9601 - R 19 600	37	10	1073	555	2904	2241
R 19 601 - R 38 200	20	12	777	1011	2965	3579
R 38 201 - R 76 400	13	23	375	755	1848	3570
R 76 401 - R 153 800	9	47	235	461	1086	2274
R 153 801 - R 307 600	3	38	71	280	376	1423
R 307 601 - R 614 400	6	19	25	158	64	567
R 614 001 - R 1 228 800	0	7	24	54	55	137
R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600	0	1	18	10	40	47
R 2 457 601 or more	0	4	9	11	24	41
Unspecified	0	0	0	0	0	1
Total	121	175	3519	3646	12630	15873

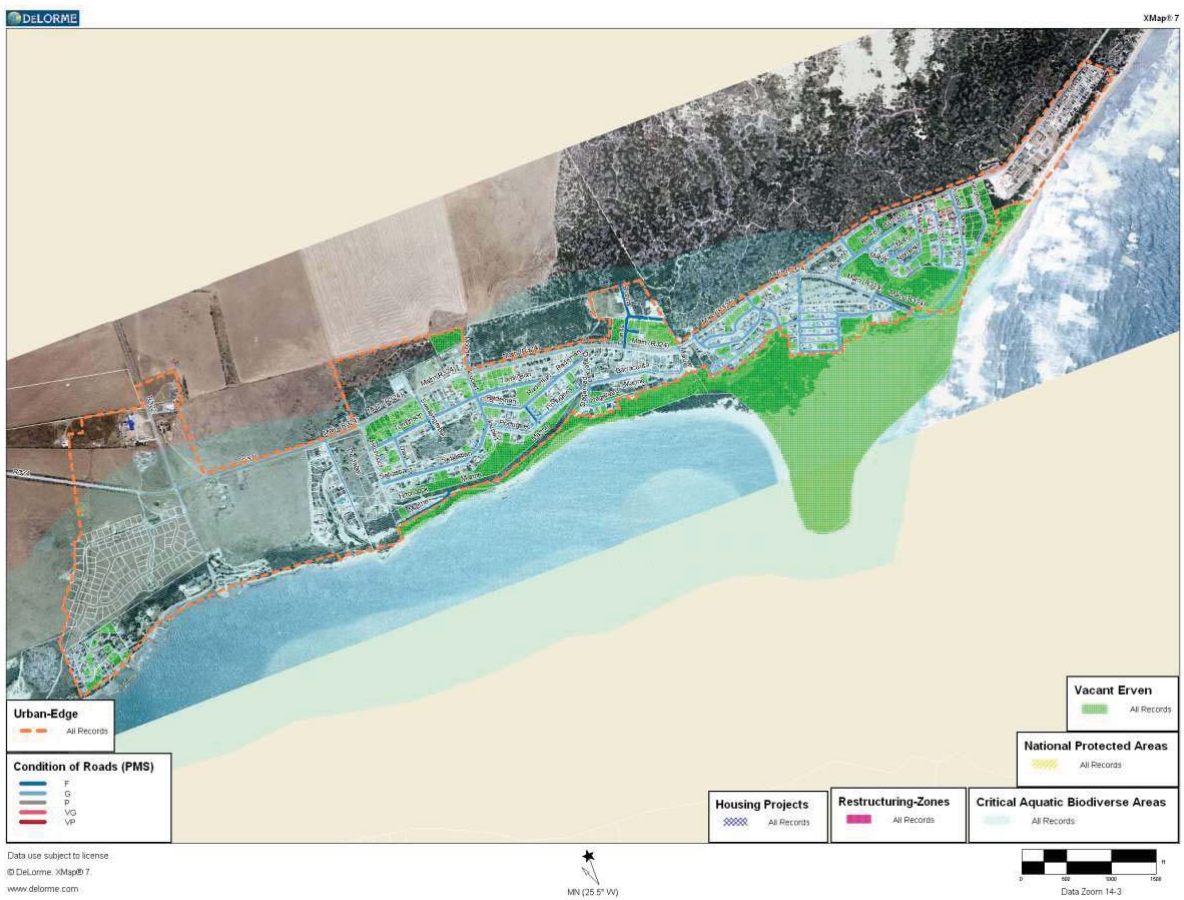
Access to Water Services						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Piped (tap) water <200m	122	175	3084	3370	12010	15508
Piped (tap) water >200m	3	0	127	27	238	46
No access to piped (tap) water	0	0	279	249	306	319
Other	0	0	52	0	76	0
Total	125	175	3543	3646	12631	15873

Toilet Facilities						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	75	40	878	1755	8509	12807
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	50	135	1180	957	1993	1589
Chemical toilet	0	0	31	20	69	23
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	0	0	377	402	468	494
Pit toilet without ventilation	0	0	415	277	487	336
Bucket toilet	0	0	173	38	317	151
None	0	0	490	133	788	299
Other	0	1	0	63	0	173
Total	125	175	3543	3646	12631	15873

Energy Source for Lighting						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Electricity	125	174	2394	3101	10917	15063
Gas	0	0	12	23	21	41
Paraffin	0	0	48	13	78	29
Candles (not a valid option)	0	2	1022	448	1533	617
Solar	0	0	12	52	18	87
Other	0	0	55	9	64	36
Total	125	175	3543	3646	12631	15873

Refuse Removal						
	Witsand		Rural		Total	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Removed by local authority at least once a week	125	174	254	531	9051	12493
Removed by local authority less often	0	0	24	78	27	94
Communal refuse dump	0	1	189	122	239	191
Own refuse dump	0	0	3040	2398	3266	2523
No rubbish disposal	0	0	36	228	48	252
Other	0	0	0	289	0	320
Total	125	175	3543	3646	12631	15873





### ***Integrated Spatial Planning***

The map on the foldout page before this section was developed to show the progress that was made in terms of integrated planning. The following information can be found on this map:

- The complete road network with names have been layered with colour coding of the quality of the road surface according to the municipal pavement management system. All budget priorities in terms of roads are prepared, with consideration to public inputs, from this system. The categories for the quality of the roads are marked VG (Very Good), G (Good), F (Fair), P (Poor) and VP (Very Poor)
- Another layer that is of high importance to all municipal planning is the Fine scale Biodiversity layer that displays aquatic areas that are sensitive and either needs protection or management
- The third layer overlaid on this map is the Urban Edge as identified in the last approved SDF which is currently under review and will be included in the 1<sup>st</sup> IDP Review in coming financial year.

This overlaid information is of utmost importance to any ward councillor, developer, investor or interested resident who wants to know what is going to be done the mapped area and how the Council sees development to take place in the future.

**Planned Capital Budget Programme for Witsand**

Begroting Verwysing	Projek Beskrywing	Wyk	Verw	2013/2014	2014/2015	2015/2016	2016/2017	2017/2018	F
1.1.1.1	Herbou van bestaande strate (PMS - 226,4km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.1.6	- Witsand (13 848m)	4	W/S		500 000	500 000	500 000	550 000	2
1.1.1.2	Herseel van Strate	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3	Nuwe Strate - LED (Gruis tot Plavei - 30,7km)	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.1.3.9	- Witsand (200m)	4	W/S	400 000					1
1.1.1.7	Straatnaamtekens vir dorpe (LED)	H/Q	H/Q	40 000		20 000	20 000	20 000	1
1.1.1.8	Aanbring van Spoedwalle	H/Q	H/Q	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.1.3.2	Stormwater	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.2.3	- Witsand	4	W/S			220 000		300 000	2
1.1.3.3	Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.3.3.3	- Witsand	4	W/S			100 000	150 000	180 000	1
1.1.4.1	Stormwater & Randstene	H/Q	H/Q						
1.1.5.1	Opgradering van Sypaadjes met plavei	H/Q	H/Q	1 000 000			1 000 000	1 000 000	EPWP
1.2.1.1	Voorafbetaalde Watermeters	H/Q	H/Q	500 000	550 000	550 000	600 000	600 000	2
1.2.2.8	Opgradering van Hooftoevoer	4	W/S					3 000 000	1
1.2.3.5	Spaarboorgatpompe	4	W/S	30 000		40 000		40 000	1
1.2.3.6	Kleurverwyderingsaanleg	4	W/S			400 000	450 000		2
1.2.3.12	Voorsiening van Vloeimeters	H/Q	H/Q	150 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	100 000	2
1.3.2	PT shelter	4	W/S				200 000		EPWP
1.4.1.2	Opgradeer 11KV Hoofsubstasie	4	W/S	250 000	250 000	250 000	260 000	300 000	2
1.4.2.3	Opgradeer Substasies	4	W/S	300 000	300 000	300 000	330 000	350 000	2
1.4.4.4	Opgradering van Netwerk	4	W/S	200 000	200 000				2
1.5.3.5	Sludgepomp	H/Q	H/Q	15 000	20 000	22 000			1
1.5.4.2	Opgradering van Rioolwerke	4	W/S				1 000 000		MIG
1.7.1.1	Vullisooraistatie & Add Selle Bourommel	4	W/S		150 000	100 000	150 000		2
1.7.2.1	Opgradeer van stortingsterrein	H/Q	H/Q		1 602 065	1 215 050			MIG
2.1.2	Ontwikkeling van Parke & Rekreasie fasiliteite	H/Q	H/Q	0	55 000	60 000	60 000		2

2.4.1	Opgradering van Jetty's	4	W/S				300 000		2
2.7.2	Opgradering van Getypoel	4	W/S	50 000					1
2.8.2.1	Opgradering van kamp	4	W/S			50 000	50 000	50 000	1
2.8.2.2	Opgradering van kantoor	4	W/S			10 000	20 000		1
2.8.2.3	Rolstoel vriendelike toiletfasiliteite	4	W/S			30 000	30 000		1
2.8.2.4	Ingangshekke	4	W/S	20 000					1
2.8.3.1	Opgradering van kamp	4	W/S				50 000	50 000	1
2.8.3.2	Rolstoel vriendelike toiletfasiliteite	4	W/S				30 000	30 000	1
2.8.3.3	Teel van mure - ablusiefasiliteite	4	W/S	30 000	30 000				1
2.8.3.4	Vervanging van heining	4	W/S				20 000	20 000	1
3.1.3.10	1 X 5m3 Tipper - Openbare Werke	4	W/S				700 000		2
3.1.3.25	Watertrok - Water	H/Q	H/Q		700 000				2
3.1.3.26	1 X Platbaktrok - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	0			1 100 000		2
3.1.3.27	LAW - Mobile Werkswinkel - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q				400 000		2
3.2.2.3	Fiat Trekker 780 - Openbare Werke	4	W/S			0	500 000		2
3.2.4.3	Kudu Grassnyer - Openbare Werke	4	W/S	55 000					1
3.2.6.4.17	80 X Plastiekstoele - De Duine saal	4	W/S					8 000	1
3.2.6.4.18	10 X Staaltafels - De Duine saal	4	W/S				8 000		1
3.2.6.4.19	1 X Yskas - De Duine saal	4	W/S					4 500	1
3.2.6.4.20	1 X Stoof - De Duine saal	4	W/S				5 000		1
3.2.6.4.21	Mikrogolfoond - De Duine saal	4	W/S					800	1
3.2.6.5.6	2 X Kantoorstoele	4	W/S				3 000		1
3.2.6.5.7	Lugversorger	4	W/S				8 000		1
3.2.6.6.11	Boekopsporingsstelsel	H/Q	H/Q	115 000					BIB
3.2.6.7.9	Spoedkamera - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q			70 000			1
3.2.6.8.1	Brandkrane	H/Q	H/Q	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000	1
3.2.6.8.2	Brandblustoerusting	H/Q	H/Q	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	8 000	1
3.2.6.8.3	Brandslange	H/Q	H/Q	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000	1
3.2.6.9.1	Toerusting	H/Q	H/Q	0	10 000	0	10 000	0	1
3.2.6.10.54	Handradio's - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	40 000	42 000	45 000	45 000	48 000	1
3.2.6.10.55	Veiligheidstekens - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	12 000				1
3.2.6.10.56	Gereedskap - Meganies	H/Q	H/Q	10 000	10 000	12 000	15 000	12 000	1

3.2.6.10.57	Nuwe Inligtingstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.58	Nuwe Padverkeerstekens - Verkeer	H/Q	H/Q	50 000	50 000	50 000	55 000	55 000	1
3.2.6.10.59	Mega jet Cleaner - Riool	H/Q	H/Q				300 000		1
3.2.6.10.60	Water Leak Detector - Water	H/Q	H/Q	0		70 000			2
3.2.6.10.61	Wap Kragspuit - Water	H/Q	H/Q		30 000				1
3.2.6.10.62	Hooflynhersteltoerusting - Elektries	H/Q	H/Q	300 000					2
3.2.6.10.63	Kabel- & Foutopspoorder - L/S & H/S	H/Q	H/Q		80 000				1
3.2.6.10.64	Teersnyer - Openbare Werke	H/Q	H/Q			50 000			1
3.3.1.20	4 X MF Printers - Kampe	H/Q	H/Q			16 000			1
3.3.1.21	1 X Laptop & Druker - Kamp JFT	H/Q	H/Q				12 000		1
3.3.1.22	1 X Rekenaarskerm - Beplanning	H/Q	H/Q				2 400		1
3.3.1.38	Industriële Scanner - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q	30 000					1
3.3.1.39	1 X Desktop - Admin Argief	H/Q	H/Q			8 000			1
3.3.2.1	1 X Tafel - Openbare Werke	4	W/S	3 500					1
3.3.2.2	4 X Stoele - Openbare Werke	4	W/S	5 000					1
3.5.2.2	Voertuigstoor	4	W/S	0			200 000		1
3.5.5.2	Aankoop van Transnet grond	H/Q	H/Q	100 000					2
4.4	Suigtenk - Riool	4	W/S					800 000	1
4.5	Vulliskompakteerder	H/Q	H/Q		2 500 000			3 000 000	2